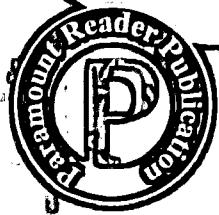


English

for general
competitions

Vol-1
(English)

from
Plinth
to
Paramount



by
Neetu Singh

DOWNLOAD PDF



SSCPOT.COM

Study Material



FREE

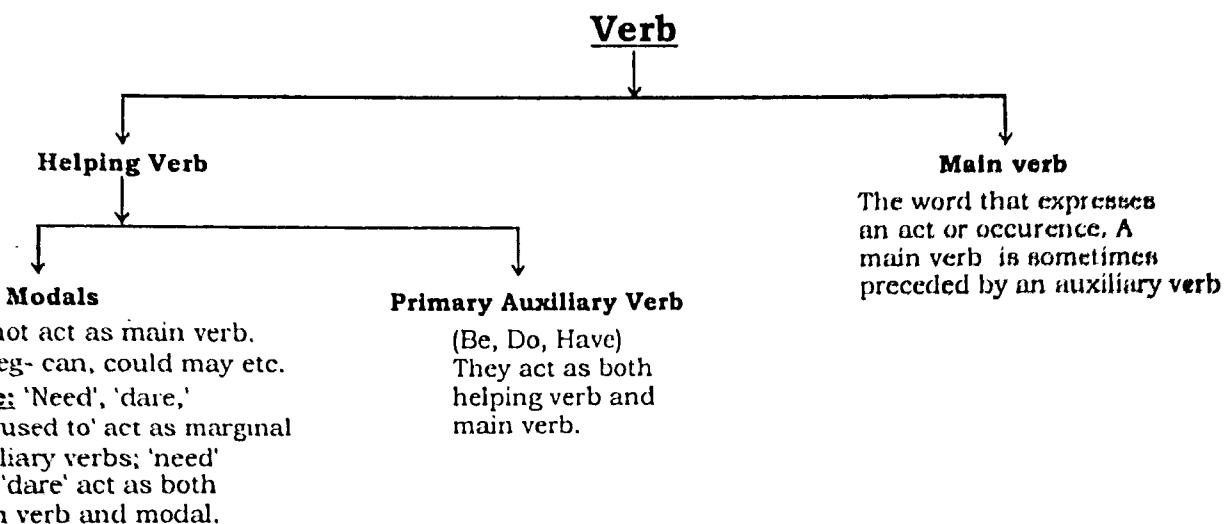
1

VERB (BASIC)

CHAPTER

Any word that denotes an action is **verb**. Hence verb is also called '**doing word**'.

- Verb can be classified into two categories.



- '**Used to**' acts as both '**modal**' and '**adjective**'
- **Auxiliary Verbs:** They are used in addition to other verbs. These are also called helping verbs.
- **Modal Auxiliary Verbs:** They are also called **helping verbs**. **Can, could, may, might, shall, will, would, should, must** and **ought to** are called **Modal Auxiliary Verbs**.

E.g.: 1. (a) She can run fast.
Modal M.V.

(b) You should study English.
Modal M.V.

2. **Marginal Auxiliary Verbs:** **Used to, need and dare** are Marginal Auxiliary verbs. These modals can be used as a **main verb (Need & Dare)** or an **adjective (used to)** in a sentence.

E.g.: 1. I am used to sleeping late at night.
H.V. Adjective Gerund



2. (a) I need you.
M.V.
- (b) You need not come tomorrow.
M.V. Infinitive
3. (a) She does not dare to come home late.
M.V. Infinitive
- (b) I dare not enter his room without permission.
M.V. Infinitive

IMPORTANT POINTS ON AUXILIARY VERBS

Rule 1: Modal Auxiliary verbs are not used as main verbs. They are only used as helping verbs.

E.g.: I can lift this box
M.V. M.V.

He should work hard.
M.V. M.V.

Rule 2: Modal Auxiliary verbs are not used in V₁, V₂, V₃, 'ing' or 's/es' form. Their forms do not change with subject, person or number.

E.g.: She can help you.
V₁

You should understand your friends.
V₁

Rule 3: 'Ought' and 'used' is always followed by Infinitive 'to + V₁'.

E.g.: We ought to respect our parents.
to + V₁

He used to come late.
to + V₁

USE OF MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS

CAN & COULD

Rule 1: Can denotes power, ability and capacity.

Could denotes past ability, power or capacity.

E.g. He can lift the box.
I could not come yesterday.

VERB (BASIC)

Rule 2: Can is also used for taking / giving permission.

E.g.: You can go now.

Rule 3: Can denotes theoretical possibility.

E.g.: Everyone can make a mistake.

Rule 4: Could is used to show remote possibility.

E.g.: There could be a bomb under your seat.

Rule 5: Can shows friendly request; while could shows formal request.

E.g.: (1) Can I take your scooter?

(2) Could I talk to Mr. Shukla?

Note: Both 'able to' and 'could/can' show capacity. Hence they are never used together in a sentence.

E.g.: I cannot be able to come tomorrow. (✗)

(This is a superfluous sentence. The word 'superfluous' means more than required.)

The correct sentence is:-

I cannot come tomorrow. (✓)

I will not be able to come tomorrow. (✓)

MAY, MIGHT & MUST

Rule 1: 'May' shows possibility .

E.g.: It may rain tonight.

Rule 2: May expresses willingness in an optative sentence.

E.g.: May you live long!

Rule 3: We use 'may' in subordinate clause if Principal clause is in present tense, and the subordinate clause starts with that/so that/in order that and the subordinate clause denotes a purpose .

E.g.: We eat so that we may live.

Rule 4: Might shows less possibility. May expresses possibility (neither low nor high).

E.g.: 1. He might pass the exam but seeing his intelligence I do not have much hope.

2. It may rain tonight.

Rule 5: Must shows greater possibility.

E.g.: He stays in five-star hotels and travels by air. He must be rich.

Rule 6: When 'May', shows respect/request, it is always used in interrogative form.

E.g.: May I come in?

English - from Plinth to Paramount

Note:

possibly / may / might / may have used with 'may'

VERB (BASIC)

E.g.

- (a) He **may possibly** come tomorrow. (x)
This sentence is superfluous.
- (b) He **may** come tomorrow.
- (c) He **will possibly** come tomorrow. (✓)

SHALL & WILL

Rule 1: Shall is used with first person 'I' and 'we' in future tense. All the other persons take 'will'.

E.g.

I **shall** go to college tomorrow and he **will** come with me.

In Modern English, 'will' can be used with 'I' and 'we' but in **interrogative sentences**, we must use only 'shall' with 'I' and 'we'.

E.g.

Will I go? (x)

Shall I go? (✓)

Note:

Shall is used with second person (You), third person (He, She, It, They), to denote command, promise, threat, determination, compulsion and advice. Will is used with I and We in similar cases.

E.g.

(a) **Command**

You **shall** leave the room at once.

(b) **Promise**

You **shall** be awarded.

I **will** help you come what may.

(c) **Threat**

Trespassers **shall** be prosecuted.

I **will** punish you.

(d) **Determination**

I **will** work hard and score good marks.

(e) **Compulsion**

You **shall** be here for the meeting.

I **will** finish this work by tomorrow.

Rule (2): Imperative sentence beginning with **let us/let's**, will have '**shall we**' in the question tag.

E.g.: **Let us** dance together, **shall we?**

Rule (3): Shall is used with first person to make a **suggestion** in **interrogative sentences**.

E.g.: **Shall** we talk to the management?



VERB (BASIC)

Note: In the following type of sentences shall/will is not used.

E.g.: If the sentence starts with past.

He hoped that he ~~will~~ would pass.

> If the sentence starts with past then would/should is used.

> This rule is applicable even when modal/verb is used in place of will/shall.

E.g.: He said that he ~~is~~ was coming.

This rule is not applicable if the 2nd part is a universal truth, habitual action, general fact, idiom or phrase.

E.g.: (1) He said that man is not a machine. (✓)

(2) Our teacher said that honesty is the best policy. (✓)

2. If two actions take place in future one after the other, and the first action depends on the second,

(a) The first action will be in simple present tense.

(b) The second action will be in simple future tense.

E.g.: If I will come, I will meet you. (✗)

If I come, I will meet you. (✓)

Those who ~~will~~ work hard, will pass the exam. (✓)

Note: Simple future is never used immediately after the following words. Instead simple present tense is used.

E.g.: If, as soon as, in case, provided, unless, until, before, after, when. (see chapter 'Conditional Sentence')

WOULD

Rule 1: Would is used to express past habit.

E.g.: I ~~would~~ go to school by bus.

Rule 2: Would shows preference / choice when it comes with rather.

E.g.: He ~~would~~ rather die than beg.

Rule 3: If the sentence is in past, it will continue in past.

E.g.: He hoped that he ~~will~~ would pass. (Would is the past of will)

Rule 4: We can use either 'Would', 'used to' or 'Simple Past Tense' to express Past Routine Action.

E.g.: I used to go to school by bus. I would return on foot. We played for hours before returning home.

- Rule 5: Would is used for making a sentence imaginary. *VERB (BASIC)*
- E.g.: If I were a bird, I **would** fly in the sky.
- Note: 'Was' is not used with the following words as they make a sentence imaginary.
- E.g.: 'I wish', 'as though', 'if', 'as if', 'would that' and 'suppose'.
- Rule 6: 'W.' 'd' is used as the past of 'will' in indirect speech.
- E.g.: He said, "He **will** go there." (*Direct*)
He said that he **would** go there. (*Indirect*)
- Rule 7: Would is used for making a 'polite request' in an **interrogative sentence**.
- E.g.: Would you help me?
- Rule 8: Would denotes 'probability'.
- E.g.: He **would** be sleeping.
- Rule 9: Would expresses a 'wish'.
- E.g.: I wish, India **would** become a developed country soon.
- Rule 10: 'Would like to' shows 'wish'.
- E.g.: I **would like** to talk to the manager.

SHOULD

- Rule 1: Should is used to express **suggestion/ advice**.
- E.g.: 1. You **should** study English.
2. You **should** not laugh at his mistake.
- Rule 3: If **should** is used after **lest**, it shows **negative purpose**.
- E.g.: He ran fast, **lest** he **should** miss the train.
- Note: **Lest** can also take 'V₁' but **plural form** even with **singular subjects**.
- E.g.: Take care **lest** you/he fall.
Note: **Lest** doesn't take '**not**' after it.
E.g.: He doesn't take risk **lest** he **should** not lose all his money. (**Remove not**)

OUGHT TO

- Rule 1: "**Ought to**" shows **moral obligation or duty**.
- E.g.: We **ought to** love our country.

MUST

- Rule 1: Must is used to denote **compulsion**.
- E.g.: Candidates **must** write in ink.
- Rule 2: Must also shows **fixed determination**.
- E.g.: India **must** win the World Cup.
- Rule 3: Must expresses **duty**.
- E.g.: A soldier **must** fight for his country.

USED TO

- 'Used to' denotes **past habit/situation**.
- E.g.: He **used to** study till 10 p.m.

VERB (BASIC)



- (ii) 'Use to' or 'Uses to' does not show present routine action. Instead simple present tense is used for such purpose.

E.g.: He uses to study till 10 p.m. and then goes to bed. (x)
He **studies** till 10 p.m. and then goes to bed. (✓)

Note: See the use of 'used to' in affirmative/negative/interrogative sentence.

(a) **Affirmative**

He **used to** come here.

(b) **Negative**

He **used not to** come here.

He **did not use to** come here.

(c) **Interrogative**

Did he use to come here?

Used he to come here?

Note: When $V_1 + ing$, is used after verb + used to, it shows habitual action.

E.g.: I am **used to** $\underbrace{\text{getting}}_{V_1+ing}$ up late in the morning.

Note: In the following cases, **to + V₁**, is not used. Instead '**V + ing**' is used after 'to'. Here 'to' is not a part of infinitive '**to + V₁**'. Here 'to' is a preposition and **after all the prepositions**, if we use a verb, the **verb must be in 'V + ing' form**. Some of the important phrases from which questions are asked in exams are given below.

E.g.: **Be used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, prone to.**

E.g.: He is **addicted to** smoking.

He was **looking forward to** meeting you.

I got **used to** driving on right, when I was in London.

DARE/NEED

- 'Dare' and 'need' are used as both 'main verb' as well as 'modal'.
- **Dare** expresses challenges or courage.
- **Need** expresses requirements.

E.g.: (a) He $\underbrace{\text{needs}}_{M.V}$ me.

(b) She does not $\underbrace{\text{dare}}_{M.V}$ to go there.

(c) You $\underbrace{\text{need}}_{\text{Modal}}$ not come tomorrow.



- > Need/dare is generally not used as modal in positive sense.

E.g.: (1) I need help him. (x)
 Sub. modal V_i Obj

(2) I need to help him. (✓)
 Modal Infinitive

- > To + V_i comes after need and dare, if need and dare are used in a positive sentence

E.g.: (a) He **needs to work** hard.
 (b) He will **not dare** to come here.

- > If **need/dare** is used in -ve sentence, '**not**' is followed by a **bare infinitive**. This means only '**V_i**' and not '**to + V_i**'.

E.g.: I **need not** come tomorrow.
 He **dare not** cheat anyone again.

- > **Following modals are used for making a request**

Modals	Use	E.g.:
Can	Friendly request	Can I take your bike?
Could	Formal request	Could I talk to Mr. Singh?
May	Request with respect	May I come in, Sir?
Would	Polite Request	Would you help me?

- > **Modals are used in the following ways in active and passive voice:-**

MODALS	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Indefinite	Sub+modal+V _i +obj.	Obj + modal + be + V ₃ + by + sub.
Continuous	Sub + modal + be + V _i + ing + obj.	xxxxx
Perfect	Sub + modal + have + V ₃ + obj.	Obj + modal + have + been + V ₃ + by + sub.
Perfect Continuous	Sub + modal + have + been + V _i + ing + obj + for / since + time.	xxxxx

- > In the above mentioned chart you will find that a **modal is always followed by 'V_i'**.
- > See the formula given below, where modal is used in perfect tense.

Sub + modal + have +V₃ + obj

VERB (BASIC)

➤ When **some modals are used in formula 'modal + have + V₃'** (e.g. should have come, could have gone, need not have seen, must have seen etc.), there is a **hidden meaning** in the sentence which is **opposite to the meaning of the sentence.**

(This is **not applicable** in case of **will, would and might**)

- E.g.: (1) I could score good marks. (Meaning- I had the ability)
(2) I could have scored good marks. (Hidden meaning- I did not score, though I had the ability.)
(3) You should work hard. (Just a suggestion)
(4) You should have worked hard. (Hidden meaning- You didn't)

PRIMARY AUXILIARY VERBS

Do, have, be are Primary Auxiliary Verbs. They are used as **helping** as well as **main verbs.**

- E.g.: (1) 'Do' has the following forms:

Do / Does Did Done
V₁ V₂ V₃

(a) I do my work.
M.V.

(b) I did not know him.
H.V. M.V.

(2) The forms of 'Have' are :-

Has / have Had Had
V₁ V₂ V₃

(i) 'Have' demonstrates possession.

I have a car.
M.V.

(ii) 'Have' is used as a helping verb in **Perfect & Perfect Continuous Tense.**

(a) I have not seen him.
H.V. M.V.

(b) I had been waiting for him for a long time.
H.V. M.V.

(iii) **Have + Infinitive** denotes forced action.

- (a) I **have to** work hard.
(b) She **had to** leave her job.

(3) Be has the following forms:

Be, is, am, are was, were been

V₁

V₂

V₃

➤ Now let's see how it is used as helping and main verb.

(a) I am a doctor

M.V

(b) He was working hard.

H.V

M.V

(c) He has been to London.

H.V

M.V

MAIN VERB

MAIN VERBS:-

I. Those verbs that express an action, an occurrence or a state of being and those which have V₁/V₂/V₃/ing or /s/es forms are called Main Verbs.

E.g.: I know you.

V₁

I knew you.

V₂

I have known you for two years.

V₃

➤ The forms of Main Verbs will change if the tense of the sentence changes.

FORMS OF VERBS

1. Present (1st form)
2. Past (2nd form)
3. 3rd form
4. ing form

GROUP - I

Present (1 st Form)	Past (2 nd Form)	3 rd Form	- ing Form	s/es Form
Arise	arose	arisen	arising	arises
Awake	awoke	awaken	awaking	awakes
Be	was, were	been	being	is/was

VERB (BASIC)

Bear	bore	born	bearing	bears
Bear	bore	borne	bearing	bear's
Become	became	become	becoming	becomes
Begin	began	begun	beginning	begins
Bite	bit	bitten	biting	bites
Blow	blew	blown	blowing	blows
Bind	bound	bound	binding	binds
Bid	bade	bidden	bidding	bids
Break	broke	broken	breaking	breaks
Choose	chose	chosen	choosing	chooses
Cling	clung	clung	clinging	clings
Come	came	come	coming	comes
Dig	dug	dug	digging	digs
Do	did	done	doing	does
Draw	drew	drawn	drawing	draws
Drink	drank	drunk	drinking	drinks
Drive	drove	driven	driving	drives
Eat	ate	eaten	eating	eats
Fall	fell	fallen	falling	falls
Find	found	found	finding	finds
Fly	flew	flown	flying	flies
Forbid	forbade	forbidden	forbidding	forbids
Forget	forgot	forgotten	forgetting	forgets
Freeze	froze	frozen	freezing	freezes
Get	got	got	getting	gets
Give	gave	given	giving	gives
Grind	ground	ground	grinding	grinds
Grow	grew	grown	growing	grows
Hang	hung	hung	hanging	hangs
Hide	hid	hidden	hiding	hides
Hold	held	held	holding	holds
Know	knew	known	knowing	knows
Lie	lay	lain	lying	lies
Ride	rode	ridden	riding	rides
Ring	rang	rung	ringing	rings
Rise	rose	risen	rising	rises
See	saw	seen	seeing	sees
Shake	shook	shaken	shaking	shakes
Shine	shone	shone	shining	shines
Shoot	shot	shot	shooting	shoots
Shrink	shrank	shrunk	shrinking	shrinks

				VERB (BASIC)
Sing	sang	sung	singing	
Sink	sank	sunk	sinking	sings
Sit	sat	sat	sitting	sinks
Slay	slew	slain	slaying	sits
Speak	spoke	spoken	speaking	slays
Spit	spat	spat	spitting	speaks
Stand	stood	stood	standing	spits
Steal	stole	stolen	stealing	stands
Stick	stuck	stuck	sticking	steals
Strike	struck	struck	striking	sticks
Swear	swore	sworn	swearing	strikes
Swim	swam	swum	swimming	swears
Swing	swung	swung	swinging	swims
Take	took	taken	taking	swings
Tear	tore	torn	tearing	takes
Wear	wore	worn	wearing	tears
Weave	wove	woven	weaving	wears
Win	won	won	winning	weaves
Wind	wound	wound	winding	wins
Write	wrote	written	writing	winds
Wring	wrong	wrong	wringing	writes
				wrings

GROUP – II

The verbs given below have the same 2nd and 3rd form.

Present (1 st Form)	Past (2 nd Form)	Past. Participle 3 rd Form)	– ing Form	s/es Form
Abuse	abused	abused	abusing	abuses
Act	acted	acted	acting	acts
Add	added	added	adding	adds
Admire	admired	admired	admiring	admires
Advise	advised	advised	advising	advises
Allow	allowed	allowed	allowing	allows
Answer	answered	answered	answering	answers
Appoint	appointed	appointed	appointing	appoints
Appear	appeared	appeared	appearing	appears
Arrive	arrived	arrived	arriving	arrives
Arrest	arrested	arrested	arresting	arrests
Ask	asked	asked	asking	asks
Attack	attacked	attacked	attacking	attacks
Bark	barked	barked	barking	barks
Bathe	bathed	bathed	bathing	bathes

Beg	begged	begged	begging	begs
Believe	believed	believed	believing	believes
Behave	behaved	behaved	behaving	behaves
Bleed	bled	bled	bleeding	bleeds
Bless	blessed	blessed	blessing	blesses
Break	broke	broken	breaking	breaks
Bring	brought	brought	bringing	brings
Boil	boiled	boiled	boiling	boils
Boast	boasted	boasted	boasting	boasts
Borrow	borrowed	borrowed	borrowing	borrowss
Build	built	built	building	builds
Burn	burnt	burnt	burning	burns
Buy	bought	bought	buying	buys
Call	called	called	calling	calls
Carry	carried	carried	carrying	carries
Catch	caught	caught	catching	catches
Clean	cleaned	cleaned	cleaning	cleans
Close	closed	closed	closing	closes
Change	changed	changed	changing	changes
Check	checked	checked	checking	checks
Climb	climbed	climbed	climbing	climbs
Clap	clapped	clapped	clapping	claps
Copy	copied	copied	copying	copies
Collect	collected	collected	collecting	collects
Complain	complained	complained	complaining	complains
Cook	cooked	cooked	cooking	cooks
Count	counted	counted	counting	counts
Confuse	confused	confused	confusing	confuses
Consult	consulted	consulted	consulting	consults
Cover	covered	covered	covering	covers
Crow	crowed	crowed	crowing	crows
Cross	crossed	crossed	crossing	crosses
Creep	crept	crept	creeping	creeps
Cry	cried	cried	crying	cries
Decorate	decorated	decorated	decorating	decorates
Dance	danced	danced	dancing	dances
Deceive	deceived	deceived	deceiving	deceives
Defeat	defeated	defeated	defeating	defeats
Decide	decided	decided	deciding	decides
Desire	desired	desired	desiring	desires

Discover	discovered	discovered	discovering	discovers
Dip	dipped	dipped	dipping	dips
Die	died	died	dying	dies
Divide	divided	divided	dividing	divides
Dream	dreamed	dreamed	dreaming	dreams
Dry	dried	dried	drying	dries
Drown	drowned	drowned	drowning	drowns
Dye	dyed	dyed	dyeing	dyes
Earn	earned	earned	earning	earns
Enter	entered	entered	entering	enters
Employ	employed	employed	employing	employs
Explain	explained	explained	explaining	explains
Face	faced	faced	facing	faces
Fail	failed	failed	failing	fails
Fear	feared	feared	fearing	fears
Feed	fed	fed	feeding	feeds
Feel	felt	felt	feeling	feels
Fell	felled	felled	felling	fells
Flee	fled	fled	fleeing	flees
Fight	fought	fought	fighting	fights
Finish	finished	finished	finishing	finishes
Fine	fined	fined	fining	fines
Float	floated	floated	floating	floats
Graze	grazed	grazed	grazing	grazes
Gather	gathered	gathered	gathering	gathers
Have	had	had	having	has
Hate	hated	hated	hating	hates
Hang	hanged	hanged	hanging	hangs
Hear	heard	heard	hearing	hears
Help	helped	helped	helping	helps
Improve	improved	improved	improving	improves
Invite	invited	invited	inviting	invites
Join	joined	joined	joining	joins
Jump	jumped	jumped	jumping	jumps
Keep	kept	kept	keeping	keeps
Kill	killed	killed	killing	kills
Knit	knitted	knitted	knitting	knits
Kneel	knelt	knelt	kneeling	kneels
Lay	laid	laid	laying	lays
Lie	lied	lied	lying	lies

Laugh	laughed	laughed	laughing	laughs
Learn	learned	learned	learning	learns
Leave	left	left	leaving	leaves
Lend	lent	lent	lending	lends
Lose	lost	lost	losing	loses
Like	liked	liked	liking	likes
Listen	listened	listened	listening	listens
Look	looked	looked	looking	looks
Live	lived	lived	living	lives
Love	loved	loved	loving	loves
Lead	led	led	leading	leads
Marry	married	married	marrying	marries
Make	made	made	making	makes
Mean	meant	meant	meaning	means
Meet	met	met	meeting	meets
Move	moved	moved	moving	moves
Melt	melted	melted	melting	melts
Mend	mended	mended	mending	mends
Mix	mixed	mixed	mixing	mixes
Name	named	named	naming	names
Need	needed	needed	needing	needs
Nip	nipped	nipped	nipping	nips
Obey	obeyed	obeyed	obeying	obeys
Open	opened	opened	opening	opens
Order	ordered	ordered	ordering	orders
Oppose	opposed	opposed	opposing	opposes
Pay	paid	paid	paying	pays
Play	played	played	playing	plays
Pray	prayed	prayed	praying	prays
Praise	praised	praised	praising	praises
Preach	preached	preached	preaching	preaches
Peep	peeped	peeped	peeping	peeps
Plant	planted	planted	planting	plants
Pluck	plucked	plucked	plucking	plucks
Prepare	prepared	prepared	preparing	prepares
Pull	pulled	pulled	pulling	pulls
Prevent	prevented	prevented	preventing	prevents
Punish	punished	punished	punishing	punishes
Prove	proved	proved	proving	proves

				BASIC
Promise	promised	promised	promising	
Push	pushed	pushed	pushing	
Plough	ploughed	ploughed	ploughing	
Quarrel	quarrelled	quarrelled	quarrelling	
Rain	rained	rained	raining	
Reply	replied	replied	replying	
Reach	reached	reached	reaching	
Receive	received	received	receiving	
Refuse	refused	refused	refusing	
Rest	rested	rested	resting	
Resign	resigned	resigned	resigning	
Repair	repaired	repaired	repairing	
Remember	remembered	remembered	remembering	
Return	returned	returned	returning	
Roar	roared	roared	roaring	
Say	said	said	saying	
Seek	sought	sought	seeking	
Sell	sold	sold	selling	
Save	saved	saved	saving	
Saw	sawed	sawed	sawing	
Send	sent	sent	sending	
Select	selected	selected	selecting	
Sleep	slept	slept	sleeping	
Stand	stood	stood	standing	
Stay	stayed	stayed	staying	
Spend	spent	spent	spending	
Stop	stopped	stopped	stopping	
Sweep	swept	swept	sweeping	
Study	studied	studied	studying	
Slip	slipped	slipped	slipping	
Talk	talked	talked	talking	
Tell	told	told	telling	
Teach	taught	taught	teaching	
Think	thought	thought	thinking	
Tie	tied	tied	tying	
Touch	touched	touched	touching	
Try	tried	tried	trying	
Trust	trusted	trusted	trusting	
Use	used	used	using	

VERB (BASIC)

Understand	understood	understood	understanding	understands
Walk	walked	walked	walking	walks
Wash	washed	washed	washing	washes
Wait	waited	waited	waiting	waits
Weep	wept	wept	weeping	weeps
Work	worked	worked	working	works
Watch	watched	watched	watching	watches
Wish	wished	wished	wishing	wishes
Wander	wandered	wandered	wandering	wanders
Waste	wasted	wasted	wasting	wastes
Wed	wedded	wedded	wedding	weds
Wound	wounded	wounded	wounding	wounds
Worship	worshipped	worshipped	worshipping	worships
Wonder	wondered	wondered	wondering	wonders
Wrap	wrapped	wrapped	wrapping	wraps
Yield	yielded	yielded	yielding	yields

GROUP – III

The verbs given below have the same present, past and past participle forms.

Present (1 st Form)	Past (2 nd Form)	P. Participle (3 rd Form)	- ing Form	s/es Form
Bid	bid	bid	bidding	bids
Bet	bet	bet	betting	bets
Burst	burst	burst	bursting	bursts
Cast	cast	cast	casting	casts
Cost	cost	cost	costing	costs
Cut	cut	cut	cutting	cuts
Hurt	hurt	hurt	hurting	hurts
Let	let	let	letting	lets
Put	put	put	putting	puts
Read	read	read	reading	reads
Set	set	set	setting	sets
Shed	shed	shed	shedding	sheds
Shut	shut	shut	shutting	shuts
Spread	spread	spread	spreading	spreads
Thrust	thrust	thrust	thrusting	thrusts
Quit	quit	quit	quitting	quits

CONFUSING PAIR

1. Bear	bore	born	→ to give birth
Bear	bore	borne	→ to tolerate
2. Fall	fell	fallen	→ to descend freely
Fell	felled	felled	→ to bring down
3. Find	found	found	→ to come across
Found	founded	founded	→ to establish
4. Grind	ground	ground	→ to reduce to powder or small pieces
Ground	grounded	grounded	→ to bring to ground
5. Hang	hanged	hanged	→ to suspend by the neck
Hang	hung	hung	→ to suspend from peg etc.
6. Lie	lied	lied	→ to make an untrue statement
Lie	lay	lain	→ to move into a horizontal position
 Lay	 laid	 laid	 To sacrifice To keep in a horizontal position Hens lay eggs
7. Rend	rent	rent	→ to tear or break something violently
Rent	rented	rented	→ to grant possession in exchange of a fixed amount
8. Rise	rose	risen	→ to get up, to progress, to ascend
Raise	raised	raised	→ to uplift, to collect, to set upright
Raze	razed	razed	→ to demolish
9. See	saw	seen	→ to perceive by the eye
Saw	sawed	sawed/sawn	→ to cut with the help of a saw which is a toothed blade used to cut trees etc.
10. Wind	wound	wound	→ to move so as to encircle something
Wound	wounded	wounded	→ to injure
11. Fly	flew	flown	→ to move in air as a bird does
Flow	flowed	flowed	→ to move in a stream just as water does

VERBS CONFUSED WITH VERB/ NOUN/ ADJECTIVE.

All the following words are very easy but meanings are given in Hindi for better understanding as far as their usage is concerned.

1. <u>Practice</u> - <u>Practise</u> <u>Noun</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ अभ्यास - अभ्यास करना	9. <u>Adopt</u> - <u>Adapt</u> - <u>Adept</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Adj.</u> ↓ गोद लेना - ढालना - निपुण
2. <u>Advice</u> - <u>Advise</u> <u>Noun</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ सलाह - सलाह देना	10. <u>Allude</u> - <u>Elude</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ के संदर्भ में उल्लेख करना - से बचना
3. <u>Complain</u> - <u>Complaint</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Noun</u> ↓ शिकायत करना - शिकायत	11. <u>Amend</u> - <u>Emend</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ संशोधन करना - अशुद्धियाँ निकाल देना
4. <u>Affect</u> - <u>Effect</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Noun/ Verb</u> ↓ असर करना- परिणाम/ बदलाव लाना	12. <u>Bought</u> - <u>Brought</u> <u>V₂ & V₃</u> form of buy ↓ <u>V₂ & V₃</u> form of bring ↓ खरीदना - लाना
5. <u>Assure</u> - <u>Ensure</u> - <u>Insure</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ तसल्ली देना - सुनिश्चित करना - बीमा करना	13. <u>Compose</u> - <u>Comprise</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ बनाना - से बना होना
6. <u>Hear</u> - <u>Listen</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ सुनना - ध्यान से सुनना	14. <u>Deface</u> - <u>Efface</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ विकृत करना - मिटा देना
7. <u>Heal</u> - <u>Heel</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Noun</u> ↓ ठीक होना - ऐड़ी (घाव या जख्म का)	15. <u>Deprecate</u> - <u>Depreciate</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ नापसंद करना - मूल्य कम होना
8. <u>Prescribe</u> - <u>Proscribe</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Verb</u> ↓ सलाह देना - पाबंदी लगाना	16. <u>Envelop</u> - <u>Envelope</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ <u>Noun</u> ↓ ढ़कना (आवरण करना) - लिफाफा

17. <u><u>Excite</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Incite</u></u> Verb ↓	26. <u><u>Rout</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Route</u></u> Noun ↓	-	<u><u>Root</u></u> Noun ↓
उत्तेजित करना - भड़काना					आसानी से हराना- रास्ता	- जट्	
18. <u><u>Flout</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Flaunt</u></u> Verb ↓	27. <u><u>Censure</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Censor</u></u> Verb ↓		
उल्लंघन करना - दिखावा करना					निंदा करना	- पार्वंदी लगाना	
19. <u><u>Hoard</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Horde</u></u> Noun ↓	28. <u><u>Wave</u></u> Noun/Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Waive</u></u> Verb ↓		
छिपा कर जमा करना- लोगों का समूह					लहर (N)/ लहराना (V)- छूट देना		
20. <u><u>Loathe</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Loath</u></u> Adj. ↓	29. <u><u>Tow</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Toe</u></u> Noun ↓	-	<u><u>Tiptoe</u></u> Verb ↓
नापसंद करना - अनिच्छुक					खींच कर - पैर की ले जाना	- पैर की अंगुलियाँ	पैर की अंगुलियों पर चलना
21. <u><u>Lose</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Loss</u></u> Noun ↓					
खोना / हारना - घाटा / हानि	-	<u><u>Loose</u></u> Adj. ↓	30. <u><u>Site</u></u> Noun ↓	-	<u><u>Sight</u></u> Noun ↓	-	<u><u>Cite</u></u> Verb ↓
22. <u><u>Mitigate</u></u> Verb ↓		-					
बेहतर करना (कम कर के) - प्रतिकूल होना		<u><u>Militate</u></u> Verb ↓			निर्माण स्थल - नजारा या दृष्टि - उल्लेख करना		
23. <u><u>Pour</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Pore</u></u> Noun ↓	31. <u><u>Defuse</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Diffuse</u></u> Verb ↓		
उड़ेलना	-	छिद्र					
24. <u><u>Proceed</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Precede</u></u> Verb ↓	32. <u><u>Desert</u></u> Noun ↓	-	<u><u>Dessert</u></u> Noun ↓		
आगे बढ़ना	-	से पहले आना					
25. <u><u>Pray</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Prey</u></u> Verb ↓ Noun ↓	33. <u><u>Sever</u></u> Verb ↓	-	<u><u>Severe</u></u> Adj. ↓	-	<u><u>Sewer</u></u> Noun ↓
प्रार्थना करना - शिकार करना		शिकार					
					रोगिस्तान त्याग देना - Meals के बाद का sweet dish		
					काट के अलग कर देना - तीव्र	- नाला	

VERB (BASIC)

34. See - Look - Stare - Peep - Glare / Glower - Glance - Glimpse
 Verb Verb/Noun Verb Verb Verb/Noun Verb/Noun Noun

देखना - ताकना/नजर डालना-घूरना - झाँकना(V) - गुस्से से देखना(V)- एक झलक देखना(V) -एक झलक देखना (V)
 Appearance(N)- चुपके से देखना(V)-गुस्से से भरी नजर(N)-एक झलक (N) - एक झलक(N)

35. Light - Burn
 Adj Noun Verb Verb Noun
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

हल्का रोशनी प्रज्वलित करना जलाना जला हुआ भाग (शरीर का)

36. Catch - Hold
 Verb/Noun Verb/Noun
 ↓ ↓

किसी गतिशील को पकड़ना (V) - ठहरी हुई चीज को थामना (V)
 पकड़ (N) पकड़ (N)

37. Canvass - Canvas
 Verb Noun
 ↓ ↓

घूम-घूम के बोट मांगना - मोटा कपड़ा (जिससे जूते एवं टेंट बनते हैं)

38. Refuse - Deny / Refute - Decline
 Verb Verb Verb
 ↓ ↓ ↓

मना करना - खंडन करना - अस्वीकार करना/ कम होना

39. Peddle - Pedal
 Verb Noun/Verb
 ↓ ↓

घूम-घूम के सामान बेचना - साइकिल में जिस पर पैर रख कर घुमाते हैं। (N). Pedal चलाना (V)

40. Ride - Drive
 Verb/Noun Verb/Noun
 ↓ ↓

सैर (N) / दोपहिये व जानवर की सवारी करना (V) - सैर (N) / चार पहिये की सवारी करना (V)

41. Wither - Weather - Whether - Whither
 Verb N Conj. Adj.
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

मुरझाना - दिन-प्रतिदिन का मौसम - या या ना - Where (कहाँ) [पुराने काल की
 (Whether ... or' Co-relative है) अंग्रेजी भाषा में]

42. Sink - Drown
 Verb Verb
 ↓ ↓

झूबना (निर्जीव का) - झूबाना/झूबना

43. Cease	-	Seize	-	Invent	-	Discover
Verb ↓		Verb ↓		Verb ↓		Verb ↓
रुकना	-	जब्त करना		आविष्कार करना	-	खोज करना

See how the confused words are used in the following sentences-

1. The servant hung ~~hanged~~ the picture on the wall
2. Lay your books aside and lie down to rest.
~~Lay~~
3. Practice makes a man perfect.
Noun
4. Practise the questions given in the assignment.
Verb
5. I need your advice.
Noun
6. Do not advise me.
Verb
7. I have lodged a complaint against him.
Noun
8. He complained against me.
Verb
9. Bad weather affects your health and the effect is cough and cold
Verb Noun
10. Many songs are not worthlistening to.(Remove 'to')
11. He lighted the candle and burnt the papers.
12. The thief eluded arrest.
Verb
13. The earth's atmosphere comprises of three layers. (In active voice, comprise is not followed by 'of')
14. Mirabai composed many songs.
15. I refused to help him.
16. The thief denied the charges.
17. I declined the offer.
18. Silence precedes the storm.
19. This is a good site for a school.
20. Please cite an example.

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) He was so inquisitive / (b) that he rose many / (c) questions in the class ./ (d) No error.
2. (a) He was borne of poor parents, / (b) but brought up / (c) in an affluent family./ (d) No error.
3. (a) The university was/ (b) found in 1950 / (c) when India was not self dependent in many aspects./ (d) No error.
4. (a) I complaint against him/ (b) as in spite of my repeated warnings/ (c) he failed to mend his ways./ (d) No error.
5. (a) Failure must not have/ (b) permanent affect on a person/ (c)because only the tough survive./ (d) No error.
6. (a) I keep my cool/ (b) and never loose my temper/ (c) even when provoked/ (d) No error.
7. (a) He lied on the grass./ (b) for hours/ (c) enjoying the cool breeze./ (d) No error.
8. (a) During the rainy season/ (b) many rivers overflew their banks/ (c) and caused great difficulty./ (d) No error.
9. (a) He lay his luggage,/ (b) aside and lay down / (c) to rest for a while ./ (d) No error.
10. (a) When calamity fell the village./ (b) they faced it/ (c) bravely./ (d) No error.
11. (a) The assassin was convicted/ (b) and ordered to/ (c) be hung./ (d) No error.
12. (a) If I leave now,/ (b) I will not be able to/ (c) return back before 9 p.m ./ (d) No error.
13. (a) When the company offered him a purse on his retirement/ (b) he refused to/ (c) agree it ./ (d) No error.
14. (a) The timid creature was driven/ (b) into a narrow lane/ (c) where it was slewed by the kidnapper./ (d) No error.
15. (a) Being implicated in a murder case,/ (b) he was conclusively suspected/ (c) for all the unsolved murder cases./ (d) No error.
16. (a) My brother thinks/ (b) that somebody must have dared/ (c) him steal the scooter./ (d) No error.
17. (a) When I was young./ (b) I can run / (c) faster than Mohan./ (d) No error.
18. (a) Harish needs not/ (b) come here/ (c) as it is getting dark./ (d) No error.
19. (a) He dare/ (b) not to/ (c) go there./ (d) No error.
20. (a) I use to/ (b) play Hockey/ (c) when I was of ten years./ (d) No error.
21. (a) A soldier/ (b) could fight/ (c) for his country and save his country's honour./ (d) No error.
22. (a) I would rather/ (b) die/ (c) then beg./ (d) No error.
23. (a) Run fast/ (b) lest you/ (c) will miss the train/ (d) No error.
24. (a) He hoped/ (b) that he will/ (c) pass the exam with flying colours./ (d) No error.
25. (a) You need to work hard/ (b) but you need not/ (c) to waste time on unimportant lessons/ (d) No error.
26. (a) She would broke/ (b) a plate every day/ (c) when she came to Delhi last month./ (d) No error.
27. (a) The old lady/ (b) prayed that he/ (c) may live long./ (d) No error.
28. (a) Rama must not to/ (b) have treated his mistress/ (c) like that./ (d) No error.
29. (a) Waste material/ (b) should be recycle/ (c) if possible/ (d) No error.

30. (a) The Government cannot/ (b) be able to contain/ (c) Encephalitis by spending just 1% of GDP on Health sector./ (d) No error.
31. (a) The police think/ (b) that he may be there/ (c) yesterday at the scene of crime./ (d) No error.
32. (a) "He may live long"/ (b) his sad mother/ (c) prayed./ (d) No error.
33. (a) He returned the purse/ (b) though he could keep/ (c) it very easily./ (d) No error.
34. (a) When you were young/ (b) you ought to learn/ (c) good habits./ (d) No error.
35. (a) If you get good marks/ (b) I shall happy/ (c) as much as you./ (d) No error.
36. (a) We ought to/ (b) honest/ (c) in our dealings./ (d) No error.
37. (a) It is very cold here/ (b) I should bring/ (c) my woolen clothes but I didn't./ (d) No error.
38. (a) Are you/ (b) used to get/ (c) up early?/ (d) No error.
39. (a) Our knowledge of history does not come to our help/ (b) and sometimes we even fail to remember/ (c) who invented America./ (d) No error.
40. (a) I think/ (b) the news/ (c) might true./ (d) No error.
41. (a) Very soon/ (b) I realised/ (c) that he is at fault/ (d) No error.
42. (a) He remembered/ (b) that his visa/ (c) will be expired in a month/ (d) No error.
43. (a) I wasn't/ (b) at the last meeting and/ (c) neither was you/ (d) No error.
44. (a) In any case no disciplinary action/ (b) are required/ (c) to be taken/ (d) No error.
45. (a) The capital of Yemen/ (b) is situating/ (c) 2190 metres above the sea level/ (d) No error.
46. (a) Owing to the heavy rains,/ (b) the ship drowned/ (c) in the middle of the ocean./ (d) No error.
47. (a) If your jogging clothes/ (b) were not made of/ (c) permeable fabric you will drown/ (d) in your sweat.

Answers with Explanation

1. (b) 'raised' is the correct word . 'Rose' means to 'get up'
2. (a) V₃ of bear (to produce offsprings) is 'born'. V₃ of bear (to tolerate) is borne.
3. (b) use 'founded' in place of 'found'. V₃ of found (to establish) is 'founded'.
4. (a) V₂/V₃ of complain is complained. Complaint is a noun. 'Complaint' means a grievance or a problem.
5. (b) Use effect (N) in place of affect (Verb).
6. (b) Loose (Adj) is not an appropriate word here. 'Lose'(Verb) is the correct word.
7. (a) Use 'lay' in place of 'lied'.
8. (b) Overflowed is the correct word here which means ' to flow out of a particular space because it has become surplus'.
9. (a) Laid is the correct word and V₂ of 'lay'.
10. (a) 'Besell' is an appropriate word here which means 'to happen (something bad) especially as if by fate'.
11. (c) Use 'Hanged' in place of 'hung'. 'Hanged' means 'to suspend by the neck'.
12. (c) Remove 'back'. The word 'back' makes 'return' superfluous.

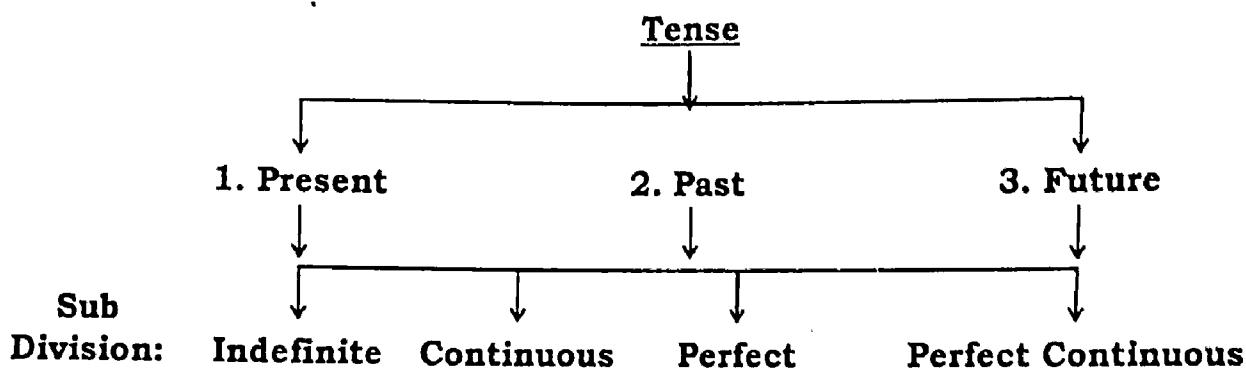
13. (c) Use 'accept' in place of 'agree'.
14. (c) Slain is the V₃ of 'slay'. Slewed is wrong .
15. (b) 'Conclusively' means 'putting an end to a debate, question or doubt'. The word 'Suspect' doesn't go with 'conclusively' as the sentence becomes self contradictory.
16. (c) Add 'to' before 'steal'.
17. (b) Use could (past) as the sentence is in past tense.
18. (a) Use 'need' in place of 'needs'. 'Need' is a modal here and not a main verb.
19. (b) 'dare not' is followed by 'go' and not 'to go'.
20. (a) Use 'I used to' in place of 'I use to'. 'Used to' expresses past routine action.
21. (b) Use 'must' or 'ought to' in place of 'could'.
22. (c) Use 'than' in place of 'then'
23. (c) Use 'should' in place of 'will'. 'Lest' is followed by 'should'.
24. (b) Use would (past) as the sentence is in past tense.
25. (c) 'Need not' is followed by 'V₁'. Hence remove 'to'.
26. (a) V₁ is used after all the modals . Use 'break' in place of 'broke'.
27. (c) Use 'might' (past) in place of 'may' (present) as the sentence is in past.
28. (a) Remove 'to' as the sentence must be in the formula 'must + not + have + V₃'
29. (b) 'Should be" is followed by 'V₃'. 'Recycled' is the appropriate word.
30. (b) 'Cannot' shows ability, remove 'be able to'. If we use both 'able to' and 'can' together in a sentence, the sentence becomes superfluous.
31. (b) Change 'may' into 'might' (past). 'Yesterday' denotes 'past time'. Hence past form of 'may' must be used.
32. (a) 'May he live long' is right. In an optative sentence, 'May' comes at the starting of the sentence.
33. (b) Change 'could keep' to 'could have kept'. From the sentence we understand that the hidden meaning is - 'he did not keep the purse'.
34. (b) 'Ought to learn' should be changed to 'ought to have learnt'. From the sentence we understand that the hidden meaning is - 'he did not learn good habits'.
35. (b) Add main verb 'be' after 'shall'. A modal must be followed by a main verb.
36. (a) Add 'be' after 'ought to'. A modal must be followed by a main verb.
37. (b) Use 'should have brought'. From the sentence we understand that the hidden meaning is - 'he did not bring'.
38. (b) Change 'get' into getting' (Here 'used to' denoted a habitual action)
39. (c) Change 'invented' into 'discovered' as 'to invent' means 'to make something new that was not there before that time. 'To discover' means 'to find out something for the first time which was not in the knowledge of the people'.
40. (c) Use 'be' after 'might'
41. (c) Change 'is' into 'was'.
42. (c) Change 'will be expired' into 'would expire'.
43. (c) Change 'was into 'were'. 'You' takes 'were' and not 'was'.
44. (b) Change 'are' into 'is' because the subject "disciplinary action" is singular.
45. (b) Change 'situating' to 'situated'.
46. (b) Use sank (V₂), in place of 'drowned'. 'Sink' comes for non-living things.
47. (c) Change 'will' into 'would' as the sentence is in past tense.

2

TENSE

CHAPTER

Tense denotes the time of action as well as the state.



Note: Questions are often based on confusing pairs .

CONFUSING PAIRS

- (1) Simple present & Present continuous
- (2) Continuous & Perfect continuous
- (3) Present perfect & Simple past
- (4) Simple past & Past perfect

(1) **Present Indefinite:** Under Present Indefinite we include the following activities:

- (a) **Routine Action:** Regular Action - I come here daily.
Irregular Action - Earthquake comes in Japan.
Habits - He smokes.
Universal Truth - The sun rises in the east.

(2) **Note:** In newspaper headlines and commentary of sports, Simple Present Tense is used.

E.g.: PM signs deal.

Sachin strikes the ball and off it goes across the boundary lines.

(3) Simple Present tense is used to express planned action of near future.

E.g.: PM leaves for China next week.

TENSE

Formulae: + ve → Sub + V₁ + obj. (If the Sub is I, we, they, you or plural)

- ve → Sub + do not (don't) + V₁ + obj.

Ques → Do + Sub + V₁ + obj?

Do + Sub + not + V₁ + obj?

Don't + Sub + V₁ + obj?

+ ve → Sub + V₁ + s/es + obj. (If sub is he, she, it, name or singular)

- ve → Sub + does not (doesn't) + V₁ + obj.

Ques → Does + Sub + V₁ + obj?

Does + Sub + not + V₁ + obj?

Doesn't + Sub + V₁ + obj?

➤ Correct the following sentences:

(1) What he **knows** about you? (x)

What **does** he know about you? (✓)

(2) I do not know what he knows about you. (✓)

(3) The **appeal** of the victims to transfer the cases related to riots to some other states do not affect the merit of the case. (Change 'do' into 'does' as the main subject is 'appeal')

Explanation of sentences 1 & 2:

In the 1st statement 'what' is being used to ask a question. Hence interrogative form should be used after 'what'. In the 2nd sentence 'what' is joining two sentences. Thus a normal sentence should follow 'what'.

Sentence 3: [Explanation]

➤ A verb should always agree with the main subject of the sentence. We often relate the verb with the nearest subject but this is wrong. See **Subject-Verb agreement (Rule 8)**

Simple Past

➤ An action that is over is expressed in Simple Past Tense.

E.g.: I saw you but you did not see me.

Formulae:Sub + V₂ + obj

Sub + did not (didn't) + V₁ + obj

Did + Sub + V₁ + obj ?

Did + Sub + not + V₁ + obj ?

Didn't + Sub + V₁ + obj ?

Note: If the sentence starts with 'It's time', 'It's high time' or 'It's about time' and if it is followed by a subject, the verb that will follow the subject will be in **second (V₂) form**.

E.g.: It's time you should study. (x)

It's time you studied. (✓)

➤ If 'It's time' is followed by 'to', 'V₁' will be used.

E.g.: It's time to study.

➤ Usually in a sentence, 'do', 'does' and 'did' are not used in positive sentences as a helping verb. But to emphasise the main verb, we use 'do', 'does' and 'did' before the main verb. In such sentences main verb should be in 'v₁' form.

(1) You do come here everyday. (✓)
 V₁

(2) He did make a mistake. (✓)
 V₁

➤ If past time is given in a sentence, the sentence must be in Simple Past Tense and never in Present Perfect Tense.

E.g.: (1) I have come yesterday. (x)

(2) I came yesterday. (✓)

Simple Future:

➤ An action to take place in future comes under **Simple Future Tense**.

E.g.: I shall meet you tomorrow.

Formulae:

- + ve → Sub + shall/ will + V₁ + obj
- ve → Sub + shall/ will + not + V₁ + obj
- Sub + shan't/ won't + V₁ + obj

Ques → Shall/will + sub + V₁ + obj ?

Shall/ will + sub + not + V₁ + obj ?

Shan't/ won't + sub + V₁ + obj ?

Note: Use of shall / will is explained in Modals.

PRESENT CONTINUOUS:

➤ An action that is going on at the time of speaking comes in **Present Continuous Tense**.

E.g.: I am studying English now.

➤ Sometimes some events are going on even at the time of speaking but we cannot see them, they too come in **Present Continuous Tense**.

E.g.: (1) Coastal areas are getting submerged.

(2) Population is increasing day by day.

Note: For events that will take place in near future, **Present Continuous Tense** is used.

E.g.: I am going to Mumbai tomorrow.

Formulae: + ve → Sub + is/ am/ are + v₁ + ing+ obj
- ve → Sub + is/ are/ am/ + not + v₁ + ing+ obj
Sub + isn't/ aren't/ am not + v₁ + ing+ obj
Ques → Is/ am/ are + S + v₁ + ing+ obj?
Is/ am/ are + S + not + v₁ + ing+ obj?
Isn't/ aren't + S + v₁ + ing+ obj?

- 'Am not' has **no contracted form**. Hence in question tag aren't is used.

E.g.: I am fine, aren't I ?

- **Use of is / am / are**

Is - he/she/it/name/singular

Am - I

Are - you/we/they/all/plural

Note: My father is working in a bank and my brother is studying in a school. (x)
My father works in a bank and my brother studies in a school. (✓)

- If the statement deals with a routine action, **Simple Present Tense** is used and not Present Continuous Tense. But if the work is just a temporary routine action, Present Continuous Tense is used.

E.g.: I am preparing for competitive exams now-a-days.

PAST CONTINUOUS:

- If an action was in continuation in the past, **Simple Past Tense** is used.

E.g.: I was waiting for you.

Formulae: + Ve → Sub + was/were + V₁ + ing + obj
- Ve → Sub + was/were + not + V₁ + ing + obj
Sub + wasn't/weren't + V₁ + ing + obj
Ques → Was/were + Sub + V₁ + ing + obj ?
Was/were + Sub + not+ V₁ + ing + obj ?
Wasn't/weren't + Sub + V₁ + ing + obj ?

- **Use of was and were.**

Was → He / she / it / name / singular / I

Were → You / we / they / plural / all

- In **imaginary sentence**, 'were' is used with all subjects no matter whether it is used as a helping verb or main verb.

E.g.: 1. I wish, I were a bird.
 M.V.

2. He pretended as if he were sleeping.
 H.V.

FUTURE CONTINUOUS:

An action going on in future comes under Future Continuous Tense.

E.g.: We shall be taking the examination at this time, next month.

Formulae: + Ve → Sub + shall/ will + be + V₁ + ing + obj

- Ve → Sub + shall/ will + not + be + V₁ + ing + obj

Sub + shan't/ won't + be + V₁ + ing + obj

Ques → Will/shall + Sub + be+V₁ + ing + obj ?

Will/shall + Sub + not+ be+ V₁ + ing + obj ?

Won't/shan't + Sub +be+ V₁ + ing + obj ?

Note: Some verbs do not take 'ing' form. Hence they cannot come in continuous tense.

➤ List of such verbs:

- (1) **Verbs of Perception-** See, taste, smell, hear, prefer, please, notice, recognize.
- (2) **Verbs of Thinking Process-** Think, know, mean, mind, remember, suppose.
- (3) **Verbs Showing Possession-** Own, have, belong, comprise, possess, contain, consist.
- (4) **Verbs expressing Feelings or State of Mind-** Believe, like, dislike, love, adore, want, wish, desire, hate, agree, trust, imagine.
- (5) **Verbs in General-** Look, seem, appear, affect, resemble, cost, require, become, hope, refuse.

- E.g.
1. He is owning a car. (x)
He owns a car. (✓)
 2. This house is belonging to me. (x)
This house belongs to me. (✓)
 3. I am not meaning anything wrong. (x)
I don't mean anything wrong. (✓)
 4. I am seeing a man standing there. (x)
I see a man standing there. (✓)

Note: If 'have' denotes 'possession', it is not used in 'ing' form but if 'have' denotes 'to have fun or to eat', 'have' can be used in 'ing' form.

E.g.: I am having a piece of cake. (✓)

I am having a car. (x)

I have a car. (✓)

➤ If think, remember, feel, look, appear etc are used to express emotions or the verbs given above are used in progressive state, they can come in 'ing' form.

- E.g.: 1. I am thinking you are right. (x)
I think you are right. (✓)

TENSE

- 2. I am thinking of you. (✓)
 - 3. It was appearing as if they were going to kill us. (✗)
It appeared as if they were going to kill us.(✓)
 - 4. You are looking good. (✓)
 - 5. Look ! He is smelling the rose. (✓)
- In 'Gerund' & 'Present Participle', verbs are used in 'ing' form.

- E.g.: 1. Being ill, I could not come.
2. Getting a job is easy now-a-days.
3. Seeing is believing.
4. Swimming is a good exercise.

Note: See verb (Advance) for detailed explanation.

- If we use a verb after a preposition, the verb will be in 'ing' form.

E.g.: (1) Bats are capable of hearing ultrasonic waves.
V_i+ing

(2) We must keep away from smoking.
V_i+ing

PRESENT PERFECT:

- An action that has recently finished is expressed in Present Perfect Tense.

E.g.: He has come to Delhi recently.

- If the action is important and not the time of action, and the time of action is not given, we use Present Perfect Tense .

E.g.: We have progressed a lot.

We have reached the moon.

Formulae:

- + Ve → Sub + has/ have + V₃ + obj
- Ve → Sub + has/ have + not + V₃ + obj
- Sub + hasn't/ haven't + V₃ + obj
- Ques → Has/ have + Sub + V₃ + obj ?
- Has/ have + Sub +not+ V₃ + obj ?
- Hasn't/ haven't + Sub + V₃ + obj ?

- Use of Has / Have:

has -With He/ She/ It/ Name/Singular
have- With I/ We/ They/ You/ Plural

See the difference:

- 1. Science has given us many new inventions. (✓)
- 2. We have reached the moon. (✓)

1. Science has given us many new inventions in the 19th century. ()
2. We have reached the moon on 22nd Oct, 2008. (x)

➤ If past time is given, use Simple Past Tense tense and not Present Perfect Tense.

The correct sentences will be:

1. Science gave us many life saving drugs in the 19th century. (✓)
 2. We reached the moon on 22nd Oct, 2008. (✓)

Note: In a sentence, any form of 'have' can be followed by 'had' (Here 'had' will be the main verb). This is because in Perfect Tense , such combinations are used.

1. I have had enough problems here. (✓)
 2. He has had his breakfast. (✓)
 2. 'Usually', 'recently', 'already', 'yet', 'so far' are used in **Perfect Tense**. 'Yet' is generally used in negative sentences of **Present perfect**.

E.g.: He has not reached home **yet**. (present perfect)
He had not done any work **so far**. (past perfect)

3. If 'since' is followed by 'Simple Past Tense' , 'since' is preceded by 'Present Perfect Tense'.

Note: In such sentences the perfect form of any modal can also be used.

- If **since** is used at the beginning of a sentence, the formation of the sentence will be as follows-

E.g.: Since he joined the army, he has not taken any leave.

PAST PERFECT

➤ Look at the sentences given below:

1. I saw him before he stopped his car. (✗)
 2. I had seen him before he stopped his car. (✓)
 3. Before he understood anything the robber fled. (✗)
Before he understood anything the robber had fled. (✓)
 4. I met him after I finished my work. (✗)
I met him after I had finished my work. (✓)
 5. By the time I reached theatre, the show started. (✗)
By the time I reached the theatre, the show had star



6. When Anand reached his village, he found that the news about him had preceded him. (✓)

If two actions take place in the past, one after the other, the 1st action will be in Past Perfect Tense and the 2nd action will be in Simple Past Tense.

Formulae:

- + Ve → Sub + had + V₃ + obj.
- Ve → Sub + had + not (hadn't) + V₃ + obj.

Ques → Had + sub + V₃ + obj ?
Had + sub + not + V₃ + obj ?
Hadn't + sub + V₃ + obj ?

Note: See the 5th sentence .

When Anand reached his village, he found that the news about him had preceded him.

EXPLANATION

- 'Precede' means 'to come before'. The 1st action is 'the coming of the news' which must be in Past Perfect Tense and the 2nd action is 'Anand going to the village' which must be in Simple Past Tense.

FUTURE PERFECT

- An action that will have been completed in future, comes under Future Perfect Tense.

E.g.: You will have finished your syllabus by the end of next month.

Note: Look at the following sentences:

E.g.: By the time I reach the station, the train will have left.
By the time, Simple Present Future Perfect

- By the time, Simple Present, Future Perfect

Formulae:

- + Ve → Sub + will/Shall + have + V₃ + obj
- Ve → Sub + will/Shall + not + have + V₃ + obj

Sub + won't/Shan't + have + V₃ + obj
Ques → Will/Shall + Sub + have + V₃ + obj ?
Will/shall + Sub + not + have + V₃ + obj ?
Won't/Shan't + Sub + have + V₃ + obj ?

Look at the difference:

1. **By the time** I reach the station, the train will have left.
Simple Present Future Perfect

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS:

- An action already started and still going on comes under **Present Perfect Continuous Tense**.

E.g.: I have been living in Delhi for five years.

Formulae:

+ Ve → Sub + has/ have + been + V, + ing + obj+ for/ since + time.

- Ve → Sub + has/ have + not + been + V, + ing + obj+ for/ since + time.

Sub + hasn't/ haven't + been + V, + ing + obj+ for/ since + time.

Ques → Has/ have + Sub + + been + V, + ing + obj + for/ since + time?

Has/have + Sub +not+ been + V.+ing + obj + for/since +time?

Hasn't/ haven't + Sub + been + V, + ing + obj + for/ since + time?

E.g.: I am teaching you since an hour. (x)

I have been teaching you for an hour. (✓)

- **For:** is used for a period of time.

E.g.: For two hours, for last 2 years.

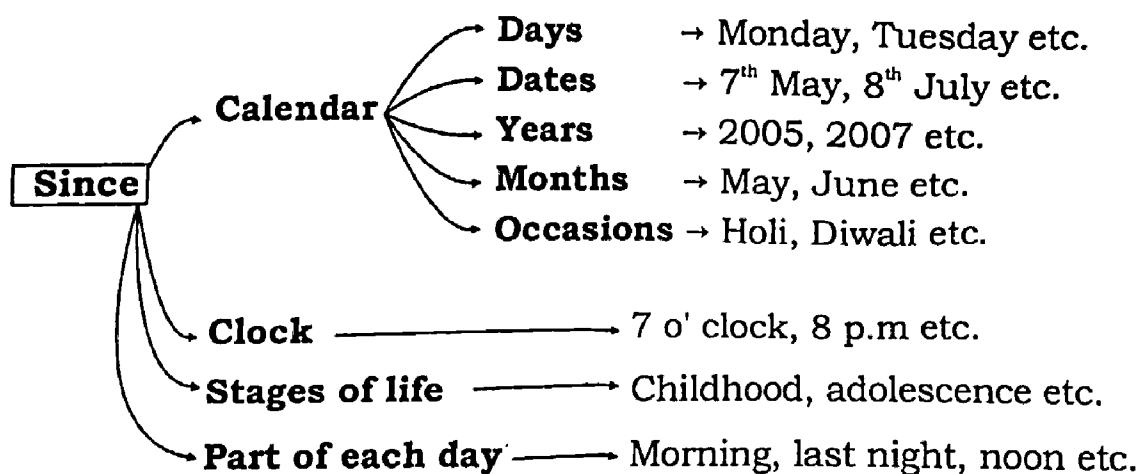
For five years, for last 2 months.

For 10 years, for last 3 weeks.

- **Since:** is used for a **point of time**.

Since Monday, since the beginning.

Since 2008, since time immemorial.



PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS:

An activity that started in the past, continued and finished in past comes under Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

E.g.: I had been waiting for you since morning.

Formulae: + Ve → Sub + had + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ since - time.

-Ve → Sub + had + not (hadn't) + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

Ques → Had + Sub + been + V_i + ing + obj - for/ since - time ?

Had + Sub + not + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?

Hadn't + Sub + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?

FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS:

An action that continues up to some future point of time comes under Future Perfect Continuous.

E.g.: I shall have been living in Delhi for five years by the end of this year.

Formulae: + Ve → Sub + shall/will + have + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ from + time.

-Ve → Sub + shall/will + not + have + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ from + time.

Sub + shan't/won't + have + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ from - time.

Ques → Will/shall + sub + have + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ from + time ?

Will/shall + sub + not + have + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ from + time ?

Won't/shan't + sub + have + been + V_i + ing + obj + for/ from + time ?

Note: Verbs that are not used in 'ing' form are not used in continuous / perfect continuous tense'.

Such verbs should be used in **Indefinite Tense instead of Continuous Tense**.

E.g.: I am knowing you. (x)

I know you. (✓)

Such verbs should be used in **Perfect Tense instead of Perfect Continuous tense**.

E.g.: I have been knowing him for five years. (x)

I have known him for five years. (✓)

For/since is used in both Perfect & Perfect Continuous Tense.

E.g.: I have been living in Delhi for five years. (✓)

I had known him for two years. (✓)

4. If 'for/since + time' is used in a sentence, the sentence will be in **Perfect or Perfect Continuous Tense**.

E.g.: I ate nothing since morning. (x)

I have eaten nothing since morning. (✓)



1. (a) I have not seen him since twenty years / (b) and so I cannot say with certainty/
(c) whether he is alive or dead. / (d) No error
2. (a) When he did not find his cook in the kitchen / (b) he asked his wife / (c) where
had he gone. / (d) No error
3. (a) Although I am playing cricket / (b) for more than three years / (c) I have not
been able to score a century / (d) No error
4. (a) I do not know where could he have gone / (b) so early / (c) in the morning. / (d)
No error
5. (a) By the time / (b) we got our tickets and entered the cinema theatre, / (c) the
show was already begun. / (d) No error
6. (a) By the time / (b) we will get our tickets and enter the cinema theatre, / (c) the
show will have already begun. / (d) No error
7. (a) Gowri told me / (b) his name after / (c) he left. / (d) No error
8. (a) We have been / (b) celebrating many festivals / (c) since centuries. / (d) No error
9. (a) Old age and infirmity / (b) had began to / (c) catch up with him. / (d) No error
10. (a) The passer-by told us / (b) where was the marriage hall / (c) and even led us to
it. / (d) No error
11. (a) I have passed / (b) the examination / (c) two years ago. / (d) No error
12. (a) Since he joined / (b) this post, he did not take / (c) any bribe. / (d) No error
13. (a) Perhaps you know / (b) that I have passed / (c) the examination in 1990. / (d) No
error
14. (a) He has read four plays / (b) written by Shakespeare / (c) by the end of his
vacation. / (d) No error
15. (a) When they stole / (b) the money / (c) and where did they hide it? / (d) No error
16. (a) The teacher / (b) has took / (c) the responsibility. / (d) No error.
17. (a) For time immemorial / (b) sea shells have been used by man / (c) in many
ways. / (d) No error
18. (a) The river is in spate / (b) and it has overflowed / (c) its banks. / (d) No error
19. (a) The little boy / (b) had been waiting for his turn / (c) since a long time. / (d) No
error
20. (a) This T.V. serial / (b) is going on / (c) for 3 years. / (d) No error
21. (a) In the early years of the renaissance of Bharatanatyam, hereditary dancers
have their own set of accompanists / (b) who lived with the dancers and travelled
with them from place to place / (c) when they gave performances. / (d) No error
22. (a) This is turned out to be / (b) one of our most successful projects / (c) and we
have made quite / (d) a large profit from it. / (e) No error
23. (a) He is given me / (b) a lot of documents / (c) to read before / (d) the presentation
tomorrow. / (e) No error
24. (a) Since the trip home / (b) was expensive I / (c) did not went home / (d) during the
holidays. / (e) No error
25. (a) As she is late / (b) for work yesterday she decided / (c) to skip breakfast and / (d)
leave for office. / (e) No error

26. (a) As soon as the CEO entered the office, the / (b) union leaders approached him / (c) and report the matter to him. / (d) No error
27. (a) The college / (b) is running a computer course / (c) since 2007. / (d) No error
28. (a) Did he tell you / (b) why he hasn't / (c) come yesterday? / (d) No error
29. (a) Last night I dream / (b) I was a Sheikh on the 169th floor / (c) of Burj Khalifa. / (d) No error
30. (a) She and her sister / (b) were working here / (c) since 1983. / (d) No error
31. (a) Nobody saw him / (b) since the fire broke / (c) in his locality. / (d) No error
32. (a) By this time next year / (b) Ramesh will take / (c) his degree. / (d) No error
33. (a) The families / (b) are living in Gulmohar Park / (c) for the last two decades. / (d) No error
34. (a) My uncle / (b) has left / (c) for Bombay last Saturday. / (d) No error
35. (a) Good heavens ! / (b) How has she / (c) grown ! / (d) No error
36. (a) I ate / (b) nothing / (c) since morning. / (d) No error
37. (a) He / (b) is having / (c) many friends here / (d) No error
38. (a) When I went there / (b) Charles is playing / (c) a game of chess / (d) No error
39. (a) The vaccine / (b) when hit the market / (c) is dogged by controversy / (d) No error
40. (a) The victim tried to tell us / (b) what has happened but / (c) his voice was not audible. / (d) No error
41. (a) Our history can be seen as a long evolutionary dialectical development / (b) in which there have been / (c) a painstaking forging of rational and moral self. / (d) No error
42. (a) Last year two Italian prisoners of war / (b) escapes from a prison camp / (c) in Kenya during the war. / (d) No error
43. (a) Madhuri Dixit / (b) is having / (c) a large fan following. / (d) No error
44. (a) No one heard anything / (b) ..bout him since / (c) he left India for good. / (d) No error
45. (a) Before the teacher / (b) could finish the question / (c) the students gave the correct answer. / (d) No error
46. (a) She did not prepare / (b) her / (c) breakfast yet. / (d) No error
47. (a) Perhaps you do not know / (b) I am owning / (c) a farm house besides two bungalows. / (d) No error
48. (a) When Anand reached his village / (b) he found that / (c) the news about him preceded him. / (d) No error
49. (a) She will already return / (b) home / (c) when he arrives. / (d) No error
50. (a) Each one of them / (b) has have his share / (c) of joy and sorrow. / (d) No error
51. (a) This custom / (b) has come down / (c) since times immemorial. / (d) No error
52. (a) Since his arrival in India, / (b) he is visiting as many villages as he can / (c) to acquire a firsthand knowledge of rural India. / (d) No error.

53. (a) Believe me, I (b) am believing (c) whatever you have said./ (d) No error.
54. (a) It is time (b) we should have done/ (c) something useful/ (d) No error.
55. (a) Mother said, (b) "Son, (c) you have finished your homework?" / (d) No error.
56. (a) I am going to buy/ (b) a computer/ (c) when the prices comes down./ (d) No error.
57. (a) I wish (b) have learnt swimming (c) when I was young./ (d) No error.

Answers with explanation

1. (a) 'Twenty years' is a period of time. Hence 'for' should be used in place of 'since'.
2. (c) Helping verb comes before the subject in an interrogative sentence. Since this sentence is not an interrogative sentence, 'had' will come after 'he'.
3. (a) 'Am' should be changed into 'have been'. The sentence is in Perfect Continuous Tense.
4. (a) 'Could' will come after 'he', since the sentence is not interrogative.
5. (c) Use 'had' in place of 'was'. If two actions take place in the past one after the other, the first action will be in Past Perfect Tense and the second action will be in Simple Past Tense.
6. (b) Remove 'will'. 'We get our tickets' is correct. If in a sentence two actions will have taken place one after the other in future, the first action will be in Simple Present Tense and the second will be in Future Perfect Tense.
7. (c) 'He had left' is the correct formation.

Simple Past after Past Perfect
 2nd Action 1st Action

8. (c) Use 'for' in place of 'since' because 'centuries' is a period of time.
9. (b) Use V₂ (begun) with 'had'
10. (b) 'Was' will come after 'marriage hall' because sentence is assertive and not interrogative.
11. (a) 'I passed' (simple past) is the correct form. When a past time is mentioned, we use Simple Past Tense and not Present Perfect Tense.
12. (b) Use 'he has not taken' in place of 'he did not take'.
 Since S + V₂ S + has + V₃ (See the last point of Present Perfect Tense.)
 S Past Pres Per:
13. (b) 'I passed' is the correct formation. (See the explanation of question 11).
14. (a) Use 'He will have read, in place of 'he has read'. An action to be completed at certain future point of time will be in Future Perfect Tense.
15. (a) Use 'when did they steal' in place of when 'they stole' as the sentence is in interrogative form.
16. (b) Use V₃ (taken) with 'has'.

TENSE

17. (a) 'Time immemorial' denotes 'point of time' and not 'period of time'. Use 'since' in place of 'for'.
18. (b) V₃ of 'overflow' is 'overflowed'.
19. (c) Use 'for' in place of 'since' because 'a long time' is a period of time.
20. (b) Use 'has been going' in place of 'is going'. The sentence is in Present Perfect Continuous Tense.
21. (a) 'early years of renaissance' shows that the sentence depicts some past time. Hence 'had' will replace 'have'.
22. (a) Change 'this is turned out' into 'this has turned out' as the sentence is of Present Perfect Tense.
23. (a) 'He has given me' should come in place of 'He is given me'.
24. (c) 'did not' is followed by 'V₁'. Use 'go' in place of 'went'.
25. (a) 'Yesterday' depicts past time. Change 'is' into 'was'.
26. (c) Change 'report' into 'reported' as the whole sentence is in past tense.
27. (b) Change 'is running' into 'has been running'. The sentence is of Present Perfect Continuous Tense.
28. (b) Change 'He hasn't' into 'He hadn't'. (See the explanation of question 11).
29. (a) Last night depicts past time. Hence use V₂ of dream i.e 'dreamt' in place of 'dream' .
30. (b) Use 'had been' in place of 'were'. The sentence must be in Past Perfect Continuous Tense as 'since 1983 ' has been used in the sentence .
31. (a) 'Simple Past Tense' is used after 'since' if 'Present Perfect' comes before 'since'. 'Nobody has seen him' must come in place of 'nobody saw him' .
32. (b) Use 'Ramesh will have taken' in place of 'Ramesh will take'. (See the explanation of question 14).
33. (b) Use 'have been' in place of 'are'.
34. (b) Use 'left' in place of 'has left'.(See the explanation of question 11).
35. (b) Use 'she has' in place of 'has she' since the sentence is not a question.
36. (a) 'Since/for + time' can be used in Perfect / Perfect Continuous Tense only. Hence change 'I ate' into 'I have eaten'.
37. (b) Change 'is having' into 'has'. If 'have' means 'to possess', it cannot be used in 'ing' form.
38. (b) Use 'was' in place of 'is'. 'When I went there' depicts that the sentence is in past.
39. (c) 'Vaccine when hit' depicts that the sentence is in past. Change 'is into 'was'.
40. (b) Use 'had' in place of 'has'. Here an experience is being narrated by the victim. Hence the incident that took place before the subject became a victim must be in Past Perfect Tense.
41. (b) 'A painstaking forging' is singular. Hence 'has' will replace 'have'.
42. (b) Use 'escaped' in place of 'escape'.

43. (b) Use 'has' in place of 'is having'. (See the explanation of question 37).
44. (a) Use 'no one has heard' in place of 'no one heard'. (See the explanation of question 12).
45. (c) Use 'the students had given' in place of 'the students gave'.

Before Simple Past, Past Perfect (Past Perfect)

2nd Action

1st Action

46. (a) Use 'she has not prepared' in place of 'she did not prepare'. 'Yet' is generally used in Present Perfect negative Tense.
47. (b) Change 'I am owning' into 'I own'.
48. (c) 'Preceded' will be replaced by 'had preceded'.
49. (a) 'Will have already returned' will replace 'she will already return'. (See the explanation of question 6).
50. (b) 'V, (had) will come after 'has'.
51. (c) 'time' will replace 'times'.
52. (b) 'has been' will come in place of 'is'.
53. (b) Change 'am believing' into 'believe'. 'Believe' is not used in 'ing' form.
54. (b) Change 'we should have done' into 'we did'.
55. (c) Change 'you have' into 'have you' since the sentence is interrogative.
56. (c) Use 'prices comes' will be changed to 'price comes'.
57. (b) The sentence is in past. Hence change 'have' into 'had'.

3

PASSIVE VOICE

CHAPTER

- Those forms of verb that show the '**subject doing an action**' or '**an action done on the subject**' is called voice.

Active Voice:

In active voice, the verb expresses **the action of the subject upon the object**.

General Formula:- [Sub + verb + obj]

Passive Voice:

In passive voice, the verb expresses **the object being acted upon**.

General formula : [Obj + Helping Verb + V₃ + by + sub]
According to Tense

- **Passive Voice is used in the following cases:**

1. **When the subject cannot do an action.**

E.g.: Tea grows both in Assam and Ceylon. (✗)

Tea is grown both in Assam and Ceylon. (✓)

2. **When the action is important and not the doer although the doer is quite known.**

E.g.: He was rushed to the hospital where he was declared brought dead.

- In the above sentence the action is more important. The people and doctor involved in the process are irrelevant.

3. **When the subject or the doer of the action is either unknown or irrelevant.**

E.g.: People were relocated from the flood affected villages.

Different Tense in Active voice & Passive voice :

Indefinite Tense	Active	Passive
Simple Present	Subject + V ₁ + Object	Object + is/am/are + V ₁ + by + subject
Simple Past	Subject + V ₂ + Object	Object + was/were + V ₂ + by + subject
Simple Future	Subject + Shall/will + V ₁ + object	Object + shall/will + be + V ₁ + by + subject
Modal	Subject + modal + V ₁ + object	Object + modal + be + V ₁ + by + subject

Change the voice

Active

- E.g. 1. Police arrested him.
 2. People speak English all over the world.
 3. A teacher teaches English here.
 4. No one desire riots.
 5. I will not tolerate this nonsense.

Passive

1. He was arrested.
 2. English is spoken all over the world.
 3. English is taught here.
 4. Riots are not desired.
 5. This nonsense will not be tolerated by me.

EXPLANATION OF SENTENCES 1, 2 & 3:

- Certain actions are done by a particular subject only. In such cases 'by sub' must not be mentioned in the passive voice (See sentences 1 and 3). And if the sentence is given in Passive Voice without 'by subject', use that subject in active voice that generally does that work.

E.g.- The room was cleaned.

The cleaner cleaned the room.

- If the subject is not clear (Vague noun / indefinite pronoun), the agent (by + subject) need not be mentioned in passive voice . (See sentences 2 & 4).
- If any form of 'be' is used as main verb, the sentence cannot be turned into passive.

E.g.: 1. I am happy. (A.V)
 m.v.

2. He should be polite. (A.V)
 m.v.

- The above sentences cannot be converted into Passive Voice.

CONTINUOUS TENSE

Continuous Tense	Active	Passive
Present Continuous	Sub + is/ am/ are / V ₁ + ing + obj	Obj + is/am/are + being + V ₃ + by + sub
Past Continuous	Sub + was / were + V ₁ + ing + obj	Obj + was/were + being + V ₃ + by + sub
Future Continuous	Sub + shall/will + be + V ₁ + ing + obj	Passive voice not possible
Modal Continuous	Sub + modal + be + V ₁ + ing + obj	Passive voice not possible

Note:- Do not forget to use 'being' in Passive Voice of Continuous Tense.

Change the voice

1. The committee is looking into the matter. (Active)

The matter is **being** looked into by the committee. (Passive)

Note: Do not forget to use the preposition in Passive Voice that follows the verb in Active Voice.

2. They are laughing at you. (Active)

You are being laughed **at** by them. (Passive)

3. The accused is being produced before the court. (Passive)

The police are producing the accused before the court. (Active)

PASSIVE VOICE

4. Right to protest peacefully is being demanded by the revolutionaries. (Passive)
The revolutionaries are demanding right to protest peacefully. (Active)
5. You were not taking the exam seriously. (Active)
The exam was not being taken seriously by you. (Passive)

PERFECT TENSE

Perfect Tense	Active	Passive
Present Perfect	Sub + has/have + V ₃ + obj	Obj + has / have + been + V ₃ + by + sub
Past Perfect	Sub + had + V ₃ + obj	Obj + had + been + V ₃ + by + sub
Future Perfect	Sub + shall/ will + have + V ₃ + obj	Obj + shall / will + have + been + V ₃ + by + sub
Modal Perfect	Sub + Modal + have + V ₃ + obj	Obj + modal + have + been + V ₃ + by + sub

Note: If passive voice is used in perfect tense, there "been" must be used.

CHANGE THE VOICE

- E.g.:1. Who has seen him? (Active)
By whom has he been seen? (Passive)
2. The news has surprised us. (Active)
We have been surprised at the news. (Passive)
 3. He will have understood your ulterior motive by that time. (Active)
Your ulterior motive will have been understood by him by that time. (Passive)
 4. The committee had looked into the matter impartially before he was found guilty.
The matter had been looked into by the committee impartially before it found him guilty.

Note: Certain verbs take fixed preposition after them that replaces the 'by' of 'by + sub'.

known to, surprised at/by, amazed at, astonished at, startled at, vexed at, annoyed with somebody, annoyed at something, contained in, embodied in, crammed with, decorated with, filled with, ornamented with, thronged with, tired of, engulfed in.

Note: 'Surprised' is followed by 'at' when the action was contrary to our expectation.

Eg.: I was surprised at his impudent behaviour.

In all other cases 'surprised by' is used.

Eg.: I was surprised by his result.

E.g.:1. The fire engulfed the building.

The building was engulfed in the fire.

2. This box contains ten cigars.

Ten cigars are contained in this box.

PASSIVE VOICE OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

- In the Passive Voice of Interrogative Sentences, we start the sentence with the helping verb that goes with the object.

- Active:** Have you broken the glass?
- Passive:** Has the glass been broken by you?
- If we want to make an Interrogative sentence of 'WH Family' we add the 'Wh' word before the interrogative form of the sentence.
- Active:** Why have you broken the window pane ?
- Passive:** Why has the window pane been broken by you?
- ↓ ↓
Interrogative word Interrogative form of tense

This rule is only applicable to 'why', 'how', 'when', 'where' and 'what'. In case of who and whom, the rules are different and the Passive Voice is made as illustrated below :-.

- Active:** Who wrote the Ramayana?
- Passive:** By whom was the Ramayana written?
Or
Who was the Ramayana written by?
['Whom was the Ramayana written by ?' is wrong]
- Active:** Whom have you invited?
- Passive:** Who has been invited by you?

IMPERATIVE SENTENCES

1. With obj

- (i) Shut the door (A.V.)
- 1st way Let the door be shut. (P.V.)
Let + obj + be + V₃
- 2nd way You are ordered to shut the door. (P.V.)
You are ordered/ requested/ forbidden etc. + to + V₁ + obj.

2. Without obj

- (i) Go away. (A.V.)
You are ordered to go away. (P.V.)

Moral Suggestion

- (i) Help the poor. (A.V.)
The poor should be helped. (P.V.)

Obj + should + be + V₃

INFINITIVE (TO + V₁)

Active: **To + V₁**

Passive: **To + be + V₃**

1. **Active :** I am to do it.
Passive : It is to be done by me.

PASSIVE VOICE

2. **Active:** You are to write it in ink.

Passive: It is to be written in ink.

Note.: 'To + V₁' is changed into 'to + be + V₃' in Passive Voice but this is not a universal rule. If we change 'to + V₁' into 'to + be + V₃', we open the option of 'by + Sub' and if the same subject is repeated in the sentence that has already come in the sentence earlier, we do not change 'to + V₁' into 'to + be + V₃'

E.g.: **Active:** The teacher gave me a book to read.

Passive: I was given a book by my teacher to read.

'HAVE/HAS/HAD + TO + V₁'

Active: S + have / has/ had + to + V₁ + Obj

Passive: Obj + have / has / had + to + be + V₃ + by + sub.

E.g.: (i) **Active:**
I have to finish this work.

 \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow
 S have to V₁ Obj

Passive:
This work has to be finished by me

 \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow
 Obj has to be V₃ by sub

(ii) **Active:** You have to choose a dress.

Passive: A dress has to be chosen by you.

VERB- LET, BID, HELP, MAKE

> Verb- **Let, bid, help** and **make** are used in **Active Voice** followed by a **Bare Infinitive**.

E.g.: 1. She let me go.

2. I bade him leave the room.

3. They must help me finish the work.

4. I made him wash all the clothes

> **Bid, help and make** are used in **Passive Voice** followed by **Infinitive not Bare Infinitive**

E.g.: 1. He was bidden to leave the room by me.

2. I must be helped to finish the work.

3. He was made to wash all the clothes by me.

Note: '**Let**' is used in different sense in different sentences and the meaning of the sentence determines the Passive Voice.

E.g.: 1. Let me play (Request for permission)

I may be allowed to play.

2. Let him do this work.

Let this work be done by him.

3. Let us organize a party. (suggestion)

A party should be organized.

4. Let us help the poor. (moral suggestion)

The poor should be helped.

YOURSMABHOOBOOK VERBS FOLLOWED BY ADJECTIVES.

Rose smells sweet. (Active)

Rose is sweet when it is smelt. (Passive)

Sub + verb + adjective + when + pronoun + H.V + V₃
 according to tense according to number according to tense and number M.V in V₃ form.

E.g.: 1. Quinine tastes bitter. (Active)

Quinine is bitter when it is tasted. (Passive)

2. Those mangoes tasted sour. (Active)

Those mangoes were sour when they were tasted. (Passive)

PRACTICE SET

Directions: A sentence has been given in Active/Passive Voice. Out of the four alternatives suggested below, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Passive/Active Voice.

1. What amused you?

- (a) What you are made to amuse by?
- (b) By what are you being amused?
- (c) By what were you amused?
- (d) By what have you been amused?

2. Smoke and flames engulfed the area and made rescue operations difficult.

- (a) The area was engulfed in smoke and flames and make rescue operations difficult.
- (b) The area was engulfed in smoke and flames making rescue operations difficult.
- (c) The area has been engulfed in smoke and flames and made rescue operations difficult.
- (d) The area was engulfed in smoke and flames and rescue operations were made difficult.

3. He asked me to finish the work in time.

- (a) I was asked that I should finish the work in time.
- (b) He asked me that I should finish the work in time.
- (c) I was asked to finish the work in time.
- (d) I was asked to finished the work in time by him.

4. Quinine tastes bitter.

- (a) Quinine is bitter when it is tasted.
- (b) Quinine is bitter tested.
- (c) The taste of quinine is bitter.
- (d) Quinine is tasted bitter.

5. The vintage cars hold a special place in the hearts of their owners.

- (a) A special place in the hearts of the vintage car owners is held by them.
- (b) A special place was held by the vintage cars in the hearts of their owners.
- (c) A special place is held by the vintage cars in the hearts of their owners.
- (d) A special place is being held by the vintage cars in the hearts of their owners.

PASSIVE VOICE

6. **The accountant took the cheque from the customer.**
 - (a) The cheque is taken from the customer by the accountant.
 - (b) The cheque was taken from the customer by the accountant.
 - (c) The customer was taken the cheque by the accountant.
 - (d) The cheque had been taken from the customer by the accountant.
7. **The gatekeeper refused him admittance.**
 - (a) He was refused admittance by the gatekeeper.
 - (b) Admittance is refused to him by the gatekeeper.
 - (c) Admittance was refused by the gatekeeper .
 - (d) Admittance is refused him by the gatekeeper.
8. **Sohan was interviewing the political leaders.**
 - (a) The political leaders were being interviewed by Sohan.
 - (b) The political leader was being interviewed by Sohan.
 - (c) The political leaders are being interviewed by Sohan.
 - (d) The political leaders is being interviewed by Sohan.
9. **The builders have built a perfect dam across the stream.**
 - (a) A perfect dam has built by the builders across the stream.
 - (b) A perfect dam has been built by the builders across the stream.
 - (c) A perfect dam have been built by the builders across the stream.
 - (d) A perfect dam was being built by the builders across the stream.
10. **They should follow all the instructions carefully.**
 - (a) All the instructions are carefully followed by them.
 - (b) All the instructions should be carefully followed by them.
 - (c) All the instructions have to be followed by them.
 - (d) All the instructions can be carefully followed by them.
11. **Shut the door and leave.**
 - (a) Let the door be shut and you are ordered to leave.
 - (b) Let the door be shutted and you are ordered to leave.
 - (c) Let the door be shut and you be left.
 - (d) Let be the door shut and you are ordered to leave.
12. **Who knows you?**
 - (a) By whom are you known?
 - (b) Whom are you known by?
 - (c) To whom are you known?
 - (d) Who are you known?
- 13. **Help others but do not expect anything in return.**
 - (a) You are advised to help others and expect anything in return.
 - (b) Let others be helped and expect nothing in return.
 - (c) You were advised to help others and expect anything in return.
 - (d) You are advised to help others but forbidden to expect anything in return.
14. **We are taught English here.**
 - (a) A teacher teaches us English here.
 - (b) English is taught here.
 - (c) A lady teaches us English here.
 - (d) You teach us English here.

15. **The news surprised us.**
(a) We were surprised at the news.
(b) We were surprised by the news.
(c) We were surprised with the news.
(d) We were surprised on the news.
16. **Spain expected to win the world cup.**
(a) The World Cup was expected to be won by Spain.
(b) It was expected by Spain to win the World Cup.
(c) To win the World Cup has been expected by Spain.
(d) Spain expected that the World Cup be won by it.
17. **After taking her to the hospital, I dropped her at her place.**
(a) After being taken to the hospital, she was dropped at her place by me.
(b) After been taken to the hospital, she was dropped at her place by me.
(c) After being taken she was sent to hospital and dropped at her place by me.
(d) After being taken to the hospital, she was dropped on her place by me.
18. **Have this lock broken.**
(a) Break this lock.
(b) Get someone to break this lock.
(c) Let this lock be broken.
(d) Have broken this lock be.
19. **Think before you speak.**
(a) Let thinking be done before you speak.
(b) Let speaking be not done before you think.
(c) You are advised to think before you speak.
(d) You are requested to think before you speak.
20. **The case is being investigated by the police alongwith the CBI.**
(a) The police alongwith the CBI are investigating the case.
(b) The police alongwith the CBI is investigating the case.
(c) The police alongwith the CBI was investigating the case.
(d) The police alongwith the CBI were investigating the case.
21. **He doesn't like people to call him cheat.**
(a) He doesn't like to be called a cheat.
(b) He doesn't like to be call is a cheat.
(c) He doesn't like anyone to call him cheat.
(d) To call cheat is not liked by him.
22. **At Paramount every question is answered as we believe that even Einstein asked questions.**
(a) At Paramount every question is answered as we believe that even questions were asked by Einstein.
(b) At Paramount every question is answered as that is believed by us that Einstein even asked question.
(c) At Paramount we answer every question as it is believed by us that questions were asked by even Einstein.
(d) Every question is answered by Paramount as we believe that Einstein asked even questions.

PASSIVE VOICE



23. You must hit the nail on the head.
(a) The nail must hit on the head.
(b) The nail must be hit on the head.
(c) The nail has to be hit on the head.
(d) The nail on the head must be hit.
24. Those mangoes smell sweet.
(a) Those mangoes are sweet when they are smell.
(b) Those mangoes are sweet when they are smelt
(c) Those mangoes were sweet when those are smelt.
(d) Sweet are smelt by those mangoes.
25. The little boy asked the man the way to Athens.
(a) The man has been asked the way to Athens by the little boy.
(b) The man was asked the way to Athens by the little boy.
(c) The man was being asked the way to Athens by the little boy.
(d) The way to Athens was asked by the man from the little boy.
26. Shut the door and go away.
(a) Let the door be shut and you are ordered to go away.
(b) You are ordered to go away and shut the door.
(c) Let the door be shut and let you be gone.
(d) Shut the door and let you be gone.
27. Your proposal was objected to and everyone laughed at you.
(a) Everyone objected your proposal and laughed at you.
(b) Everyone objected to your proposal and you were laughed at.
(c) Everyone objected to and laughed at you and your proposal.
(d) Your proposal was objected and you were laughed.
28. Let everyone be given a chance.
(a) Give everyone a chance.
(b) Give a chance for everyone.
(c) Let a chance be given to everyone.
(d) I will give up a chance.
29. Do not make a noise.
(a) Let a noise be made not.
(b) You are requested to not make a noise.
(c) You are ordered to not make a noise.
(d) You are forbidden to make a noise.
30. People are raising a hue and cry and are breaking the furniture.
(a) A hue and cry is being raised and the furniture is being broken by the people.
(b) A hue and cry is being raised and the furniture are being broken by the people.
(c) Hue and cry and the furniture is being broken.
(d) A hue and cry has been raised and the furniture has been broke.
31. The fur coats were imported from Sweden by us.
(a) Sweden imported the fur coats.
(b) Sweden was imported the fur coats.
(c) We imported the fur coats from Sweden.
(d) We had imported the fur coats from Sweden.

32. A bullet in the chest is adored by the brave.
- (a) The brave adores a bullet in the chest.
 - (b) The brave adore a bullet in the chest.
 - (c) The brave adored a bullet in the chest.
 - (d) The brave have adored a bullet in the chest.
33. Decisions must be taken.
- (a) Decisions should be taken.
 - (b) We must take decisions.
 - (c) It is good to take decisions.
 - (d) We should take decisions.
34. Are they not cheating us?
- (a) Are we not being cheated?
 - (b) Are not we being cheated?
 - (c) Are we being not cheated?
 - (d) Are we being cheated?
35. The room was cleaned.
- (a) The cleaner cleaned the room.
 - (b) The room should be cleaned.
 - (c) I cleaned the room.
 - (d) Someone cleaned the room.
36. I should have met him yesterday.
- (a) He should have met by me yesterday.
 - (b) He should be meeting me yesterday.
 - (c) He should have been meeting by me yesterday.
 - (d) He should have been met by me yesterday.
37. One could see her lying on the flowerbeds.
- (a) Flowerbeds could be seen lying on her.
 - (b) She could see on lying on flowerbeds.
 - (c) She could be seen lying on flowerbeds.
 - (d) She could be lying on flowerbeds seen.
38. We expect good news.
- (a) Good news is expected by us.
 - (b) Let good news be expected.
 - (c) Let us expect good news.
 - (d) Expecting good news from them.
39. My teacher gave me a journal to read.
- (a) I was given a journal by my teacher to be read.
 - (b) A journal to read was given to me by my teacher.
 - (c) A journal was given me to read by my teacher.
 - (d) I was given a journal by my teacher to read.
40. It is impossible to do this.
- (a) This is impossible to be done.
 - (b) To do this by it is impossible.
 - (c) It is impossible to have done this.
 - (d) It can't be done.

PASSIVE VOICE

41. Physically challenged people should not be laughed at by the public.
- (a) Physically challenged people should not laugh at the public.
 - (b) The public will not be laughing at physically challenged people.
 - (c) The public shall not be laughing at physically challenged people.
 - (d) The public should not laugh at physically challenged people.
42. They say that people live on distant planets .
- (a) It was said that people live on distant planets .
 - (b) It is being said that people live on distant planets .
 - (c) It is said that people live on distant planets .
 - (d) It is saying that people live on distant planets .
43. Can we send the parcel tomorrow?
- (a) Can be the parcel sent by us tomorrow?
 - (b) Can we be sent by the parcel tomorrow?
 - (c) Can the parcel be sent by us tomorrow?
 - (d) Can the parcel sent by us tomorrow?
44. A detective arrested him as soon as he got home.
- (a) An arrest was made by a detective as soon as he got home.
 - (b) He was arrested by a detective as soon as he got home.
 - (c) A detective was arrested by him as soon as he got home.
 - (d) An arrest was detected by him as soon as he got home.
45. They cooked the food and sent it to the orphanage.
- (a) They cooked food was sent to the orphanage by them.
 - (b) The food was cooked and sent to the orphanage by them.
 - (c) The food was sent to the orphanage by them.
 - (d) The food was cooked and sent by them.
46. Where were they playing the cricket match?
- (a) Where was the cricket match played?
 - (b) Where has the cricket match been played?
 - (c) Where will the cricket match be played?
 - (d) Where was the cricket match being played?
47. They say he can teach almost anything in this world.
- (a) It 's said that almost anything in this world can be taught by him.
 - (b) It was said that almost anything could be taught by him.
 - (c) They say almost anything could be taught by him.
 - (d) They say anything almost will be taught by him.
48. Please enter by the left door.
- (a) Let the left door be entered by you.
 - (b) You are requested to enter by the left door.
 - (c) Let it be entered by the left door.
 - (d) The left door is requested to be entered.
49. I would advise you not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
- (a) It would be advised by me not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
 - (b) It would be my advice not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
 - (c) You would be advised by me not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
 - (d) My advice to you would be not to get on the wrong side of your boss.

50. They have done this to defuse the crisis.
- The crisis has been defused by them.
 - This has been done by them to defuse the crisis .
 - To defuse the crisis this was done by them.
 - To defuse the crisis this is done by them.
51. Open the door.
- The door must be opened.
 - The door will be opened.
 - The door is opened.
 - Let the door be opened.
52. I did not trust anybody.
- Nobody was trusted by me.
 - Any body had been trusted by me.
 - Nobody would be trusted by me.
 - Nobody has been trusted by me.
53. Did he remember the date and time?
- Are the date and time remembered by him?
 - Was he remembering the date and time?
 - Were the date and time remembered by him?
 - Did the date and time be remembered by him?
54. The boys were digging a hole in the ground.
- A hole was being dug in the ground by the boys.
 - In the ground, the boys dug a hole.
 - A hole in the ground has been dug by the boys.
 - A hole in the ground has been dug by the boys.
55. We must now deal with these problems.
- These problems must now be dealt with by us.
 - These problems must now be dealing with by us.
 - These problems must now deal with by us.
 - These problems are to be dealt with by us.
56. The audience loudly cheered the leader's speech.
- The leader's speech was loudly cheered by the audience.
 - The leader's speech in loudly cheered by the audience.
 - The audience loudly cheered the leader for his speech.
 - The speech of the leader was loudly cheered by the audience.
57. Someone is following us.
- We are following by someone.
 - We are being followed by someone.
 - We were being followed by someone.
 - We had been followed by someone.
58. He hasn't slept in his bed.
- His bed hasn't been slept in.
 - He had not been slept in his bed.
 - His bed had been slept in.
 - His bed had not been slept in.

PASSIVE VOICE

59. I was recommended another lawyer.
- (a) Somebody recommended another lawyer.
 - (b) Somebody recommended me to another lawyer.
 - (c) Somebody recommended me another lawyer.
 - (d) Somebody recommends me another lawyer.
60. Many a person has been saved from the man-eaters by these hunters.
- (a) These hunters will save many a person from the man-eaters.
 - (b) These hunters save many a person from the man-eaters.
 - (c) These hunters saved many a person from the man-eaters.
 - (d) These hunters have saved many a person from the man-eaters.
61. Must we cut this tree?
- (a) Must this tree will cut?
 - (b) Must this tree be cut?
 - (c) Must this tree was cut?
 - (d) Must this tree is cut?
62. You will be looked after well.
- (a) They will look after you well.
 - (b) They can't look after you well.
 - (c) They may look after well.
 - (d) They shall look after you well.
63. Didn't they tell you to be here by six o'clock?
- (a) Weren't you told to be here by six o'clock?
 - (b) Haven't they told you to be here by six o'clock?
 - (c) You were expected to be here by six o'clock.
 - (d) They expected you to be here by six o'clock.
64. Don't touch this switch.
- (a) This switch does not be touched.
 - (b) This switch must not be touched.
 - (c) This switch don't be touched.
 - (d) This switch need not be touched.
65. One cannot gather grapes from thistles.
- (a) Thistles cannot be gathered from grapes.
 - (b) Grapes cannot be gathered from thistles.
 - (c) Grapes and thistles cannot be gathered by one.
 - (d) Grapes cannot be gathered by them.
66. They will have completed the work by the time we get there.
- (a) The work will be completed by the time we get there.
 - (b) The work will have been completed by the time we get there.
 - (c) The work will have completed by the time we get there.
 - (d) The work will have been completed by the time we have got there.
67. You will have to pull down this sky-scraper as you have not complied with the town planning regulations.
- (a) This sky-scraper will have to be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied with.
 - (b) This sky-scraper will have to be pulled down by you as the town planning regulations have not been complied by you.

- (c) This sky-scraper will be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied with.
(d) This sky-scraper will have to be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied.
- 68. He has written a poem which fascinates every one.**
(a) A poem has been written by him which fascinates every one.
(b) Everyone is fascinated by the poem which has been written by him.
(c) Poem written by him fascinates everyone.
(d) Every one fascinates the poem which is written by him.
- 69. Will those happy days be ever forgotten by me?**
(a) Will I ever forget those happy days?
(b) Shall I ever forget those happy days?
(c) Would I forget these happy days?
(d) Ever shall I forget those happy days?
- 70. You are requested to permit him.**
(a) Please permit him.
(b) I request you to permit me.
(c) He requests to permit him.
(d) I plead you to permit him.
- 71. I am not going to tolerate this nonsense anymore.**
(a) This nonsense is not going to be tolerated by me anymore.
(b) This nonsense is not being gone to be tolerated by me anymore.
(c) This nonsense is not being going to be tolerated by me anymore.
(d) Tolerate is not being going to be done by me of this nonsense.
- 72. The boys were being laughed at by the passers-by on the busy thoroughfare last evening.**
(a) The passers-by laughed at the boys on the busy thoroughfare last evening.
(b) The passers-by were laughing at the boys on the busy thoroughfare last evening.
(c) The boys were laughing at the passers-by on the busy thoroughfare last evening.
(d) None of the above.
- 73. The police are questioning Mr. and Mrs. Sharma.**
(a) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma are questioned by the police.
(b) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma have been questioning the police.
(c) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma have been questioned by the police.
(d) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma are being questioned by the police.
- 74. Before they invented printing, people had to write everything by hand.**
(a) Before printing was invented everything had to be written by hand.
(b) Before printing was invented by them, everything had to be written.
(c) Before printing was invented people had to write everything by hand.
(d) Before printing was invented everything was written by hand.
- 75. Did any one ever make it clear how one operates the machine?**
(a) Was it ever made clear how the machine is operated?
(b) Did any one ever make it by clear how the machine is operated?
(c) Was ever it made clear how to operate the machine?
(d) Was how to operate the machine ever made clear?

PASSIVE VOICE

76. Why did your father refuse to give the money to you?
(a) Why was your father refused money to you?
(b) Why was the money not given to you by your father?
(c) Why was the money refused to be given to you by your father?
(d) Why the money was refused to be given to you by your father?
77. Do you expect your parents to come from Hyderabad today?
(a) Did your parents come today from Hyderabad?
(b) Were your parents expected to come from Hyderabad today?
(c) Are your parents expected to come today from Hyderabad?
(d) Do your parents are expected to come today from Hyderabad?
78. Why are you raising a hue and cry?
(a) Why are a hue and cry being raised by you?
(b) Why is a hue and cry being raised by you?
(c) Why a hue and cry are being raised by you?
(d) Why a hue and cry is being raised by you?
79. They say that there are living beings on Mars.
(a) They say that Mars has living beings.
(b) It is said that there are people living on Mars.
(c) On Mars, there are living beings.
(d) It is said that there are living beings on Mars.
80. A fortnight after he was convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate, the Delhi High Court sentenced him to death on Monday.
(a) A fortnight after he had been convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he had been sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.
(b) A fortnight after he was convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he has been sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.
(c) A fortnight after he was convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he was sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.
(d) A fortnight after he was been convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he was sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.
81. Their dog bit our neighbour yesterday.
(a) Our neighbour bit their dog yesterday.
(b) Our neighbour bitten by their dog yesterday.
(c) Our neighbour was bitten by their dog yesterday.
(d) Our neighbour were bit by their dog yesterday.
82. The MD told us about the new project.
(a) We were told about the new project by the MD.
(b) We are told about the new project by the MD.
(c) We told by MD about the new project.
(d) We had been told by MD about project.
83. The Minister had already informed his Cabinet about his decision.
(a) His Cabinet was already informed about the Minister's decision.
(b) His Cabinet has already informed the Minister about his decision.
(c) His Cabinet had already been informed about his decision by the Minister.
(d) His Cabinet will have already been informed about the Minister's decision.

84. **Sayali gave the beggar an old sari.**
(a) An old sari was given to Sayali by the beggar.
(b) An old sari was given to the beggar by Sayali.
(c) The beggar was being given an old sari by Sayali.
(d) The beggar had to be given an old sari by Sayali.
85. **They are going to perform "Hamlet".**
(a) "Hamlet" is going to be performed by them.
(b) "Hamlet" is going to perform by them.
(c) "Hamlet" is to perform.
(d) "Hamlet" has to be performed.
86. **I was shocked by the letter.**
(a) They shocked me with the letter.
(b) I am shocked.
(c) The letter shocked me.
(d) I shocked with the letter.
87. **Somebody stole my car last week.**
(a) Last week my car was stolen by somebody.
(b) My car was stolen last week by somebody.
(c) My car was stolen that week by somebody.
(d) Somebody last week has stolen my car.
88. **Do they sell construction material?**
(a) Does construction material sold by them?
(b) Is construction material selling by them?
(c) Is construction material sold by them?
(d) Does construction material sell by them?
89. **Sharma was cleaning the house.**
(a) The house was cleaned by Sharma.
(b) The house will be cleaned by Sharma.
(c) The house was being cleaned by Sharma.
(d) The house is being cleaned by Sharma.
90. **I bought a new shirt last week.**
(a) Last week a new shirt was bought by I.
(b) Last week a new shirt is bought by I.
(c) Last week a new shirt was bought by me.
(d) Last week a new shirt had been bought by me.
91. **The plants have been watered by the gardener.**
(a) The gardener is watering the plants.
(b) The gardener has been watering the plants.
(c) The gardener has watered the plants.
(d) The gardener have watered the plants.
92. **The children could use the place always.**
(a) The place can be used by children always.
(b) The place is used by children always.
(c) The place could always be used by children.
(d) The place has been used by children always.

PASSIVE VOICE

93. **They say that the earth is round.**
(a) It has been said that the earth is round.
(b) That the earth is round is said by them.
(c) It is said that the earth is round.
(d) It was said that the earth was round.
94. **This machine must not be used after 5.30 p.m.**
(a) You can't use the machine after 5.30 p.m.
(b) You mayn't use the machine after 5.30 p.m.
(c) You need not you the machine after 5.30 p.m.
(d) You must not use the machine after 5.30 p.m.
95. **Tiny houses dot the landscape.**
(a) The landscape was dotted by tiny houses.
(b) The landscape is being dotted by tiny houses.
(c) The landscape is dotted by tiny houses.
(d) The landscape has been dotted by tiny houses.
96. **Dogs always chase cats.**
(a) Cats are always chasing dogs.
(b) Cats have been always chased by dogs.
(c) Cats are always chased by dogs.
(d) Cats are being always chased by dogs.
97. **The farmer prepared the field.**
(a) The field was prepared by the farmer.
(b) The field was being prepared by the farmer.
(c) The field were prepared by the farmer.
(d) The field were being prepared by the farmer.
98. **Teachers should be respected.**
(a) Teachers deserve respect.
(b) Teachers are to be respected.
(c) We shall respect teaches.
(d) We should respect teachers.
99. **He will do the work tomorrow.**
(a) The work will be done by him tomorrow.
(b) The work would be done by him tomorrow.
(c) The work could be done by him tomorrow.
(d) The work will have been done by him tomorrow.
100. **She gave me a book.**
(a) I was given a book by her.
(b) She was given a book.
(c) A book is given by her to me.
(d) I was given her a book.
101. **I have bought a new car.**
(a) A new car was bought by me.
(b) A new car is bought by me.
(c) A new car has been bought by me.
(d) A new car had been bought by me.

102. **Teachers might have given their students some concessions.**
(a) Their students might have given some concessions to their teachers.
(b) Their students might be given some concessions by their teachers.
(c) Their students might be giving some concessions to their teachers.
(d) Students might have been given some concessions by their teachers.
103. **You should not offer meat to vegetarians.**
(a) Vegetarians should not be offered meat.
(b) Meat should be offered to non-vegetarians.
(c) Vegetarians should not offer meat.
(d) You should offer no meat to non-vegetarians.
104. **You must write off all those bad debts.**
(a) You must be written off by all those bad debts.
(b) All those bad debts must be written off by you.
(c) Write off all those bad debts.
(d) All those bad debts could be written off.
105. **Are they receiving the chief guest at the station ?**
(a) Was the chief guest being received at the station ?
(b) Is the chief guest being received at the station ?
(c) Will they be received by the chief guest at the station ?
(d) Will the chief guest be received at the station ?
106. **We make butter from milk.**
(a) Butter is make from milk by us.
(b) Butter is made from milk by us.
(c) Butter is make with milk by us.
(d) From milk butter is made by us.
107. **I don't like people telling me what to do.**
(a) I don't like being told what to do.
(b) People telling me what to do was not liked by me.
(c) I do not like being told by the people.
(d) People don't like telling me what to do.
108. **The meeting has been called off by the chairman.**
(a) The chairman called off the meeting.
(b) The chairman has called off the meeting.
(c) The chairman is calling off the meeting.
(d) The chairman had called off the meeting.
109. **The police arrested 200 students on the University campus.**
(a) 200 students had been arrested on the University campus by the police.
(b) 200 students has been arrested by the police on the University campus.
(c) 200 students were arrested by the police on the University campus.
(d) 200 students are arrested on the University campus by the police.
110. **Why do you like him so much ?**
(a) Why has he been liked so much by you ?
(b) Why was he liked by you so much?
(c) Why is he liked by you so much ?
(d) Why he is liked by you so much ?

111. **The invitation cards will be sent today.**
(a) They will sent the invitation cards today.
(b) They will have sent the invitation cards today.
(c) They will send the invitation cards today.
(d) They will be sending the invitation cards today.
112. **She has baked several cakes for her friends.**
(a) She has several cakes to be baked for her friends.
(b) Her friends had several cakes baked by her.
(c) Several cakes have been baked by her for her friends.
(d) Her friends baked several cakes for her.
113. **We believe that God gives us misery.**
(a) It was believed that God gave us misery.
(b) It has been believed that God gives us misery.
(c) It is believed that God gives us misery.
(d) It is a belief that God gives us misery.
114. **A lot of saplings have been planted by the chief guest.**
(a) The chief guest is planting a lot of saplings.
(b) The chief guest has planted a lot of saplings.
(c) The chief guest have planted a lot of saplings.
(d) The chief guest has been planting a lot of saplings.
115. **The Prime Minister has discussed the matter with the other ministers.**
(a) The matter was discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
(b) The matter is discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
(c) The matter had been discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
(d) The matter has been discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
116. **The Principal will meet the students this evening.**
(a) The students will be met by the Principal this evening.
(b) The students could be met by the Principal this evening.
(c) The students would be met by the Principal this evening.
(d) The students will be meeting the Principal this evening.
117. **The Chief Justice of India is appointed by the President.**
(a) The President of India appointed the Chief Justice.
(b) The President appoints the Chief Justice of India.
(c) The President appointed the Chief Justice of India.
(d) The appointment order of the Chief Justice of India was given by the President.
118. **A meeting was convened by the Principal.**
(a) The Principal convened a meeting.
(b) The Principal was convening a meeting.
(c) The Principal has convened a meeting
(d) The Principal is convening a meeting.
119. **Someone has stolen my suitcase.**
(a) My suitcase is stolen by someone.
(b) Someone has been stolen my suitcase.
(c) My suitcase has someone been stolen.
(d) My suitcase has been stolen by someone.

120. **Anu is interviewing Radhika and Sarath Kumar.**
(a) Radhika and Sarath Kumar are being interviewed by Anu.
(b) Radhika and Sarath Kumar are interviewing Anu.
(c) Radhika and Sarath Kumar were interviewed by Anu.
(d) Radhika is being interviewed by Sarath Kumar and Anu.
121. **Our task had been completed before sunset.**
(a) We completed our task before sunset.
(b) We have completed our task before sunset.
(c) We complete our task before sunset.
(d) We had completed our task before sunset.
122. **The boy laughed at the beggar.**
(a) The beggar was laughed by the boy.
(b) The beggar was being laughed by the boy.
(c) The beggar was being laughed at by the boy.
(d) The beggar was laughed at by the boy.
123. **The government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme in Jharkhand.**
(a) A massive tribal welfare programme is launched by the government in Jharkhand.
(b) A massive tribal welfare programme has been launched by the government in Jharkhand.
(c) Jharkhand government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme.
(d) The government in Jharkhand has launched a massive tribal welfare programme.
124. **The boys were playing cricket.**
(a) Cricket had been played by the boys.
(b) Cricket has been played by the boys.
(c) Cricket was played by the boys.
(d) Cricket was being played by the boys.
125. **They drew a circle in the morning.**
(a) A circle was being drawn by them in the morning.
(b) A circle was drawn by them in the morning.
(c) In the morning a circle have been drawn by them.
(d) A circle has been drawing since morning.
126. **They will demolish the entire block.**
(a) The entire block is being demolished.
(b) The block may be demolished entirely.
(c) The entire block will have to be demolished by them.
(d) The entire block will be demolished by them.
127. **The burglar destroyed several items in the room. Even the carpet has been torn.**
(a) Several items destroyed in the room by the burglar. Even the carpet he has torn.
(b) Several items in the room were destroyed by the burglar. He has torn even the carpet.
(c) Including the carpet, several items in the room have been torn by the burglar.
(d) The burglar, being destroyed several items in the room, also carpet has torn.

PASSIVE VOICE

128. **We must respect the elders.**
(a) The elders deserve respect from us.
(b) The elders must be respected.
(c) The elders must respected by us.
(d) Respect the elders we must.
129. **We have warned you.**
(a) You have been warned.
(b) We have you warned.
(c) Warned you have been.
(d) Have you been warned.
130. **Has anybody answered your question ?**
(a) Your question has been answered ?
(b) Anybody has answered your question ?
(c) Has your question been answered ?
(d) Have you answered your question ?
131. **The shopkeeper lowered the prices.**
(a) The prices lowered the shopkeeper.
(b) The prices were lowered by the shopkeeper.
(c) Down went the prices.
(d) The shopkeeper got down the prices.
132. **One must keep one's promises.**
(a) One's promises are kept.
(b) One's promises must kept.
(c) One's promises were kept.
(d) Promises must be kept.
133. **The government has not approved the new drug for sale.**
(a) The government approval for the sale of the new drug has not been given.
(b) The new drug has not been approved for sale by the government.
(c) For the sale of the new drug we have not been given the approval.
(d) The new drug was not approved by the government.
134. **They have published all the details of the invention.**
(a) All the details of the invention have been published by them.
(b) The publication of the details of invention was done by them.
(c) All the details have been invented by the publishers.
(d) All the inventions have been detailed by them.
135. **He teaches us grammar.**
(a) Grammar was taught to us by him.
(b) We are taught grammar by him.
(c) Grammar will be taught to us by him.
(d) We were teached grammar by him.
136. **The manager could not accept the union leader's proposals.**
(a) The union leader's proposals could not be accepted by the manager.
(b) The union leader's proposals were not accepted by the manager.
(c) The union leader's proposals will not be accepted by the manager.
(d) The union leader's proposals would not be accepted by the manager.

137. **Prepare yourself for the worst.**

- (a) You be prepared for the worst.
- (b) The worst should be prepared by yourself.
- (c) Be prepared for the worst.
- (d) For the worst, preparation should be made by you.

138. **Please shut the door and go to sleep.**

- (a) The door is to be shut and you are to go to sleep.
- (b) Let the door be shut and you be asleep.
- (c) You are requested to shut the door and go to sleep.
- (d) The door is to be shut and you are requested to sleep.

139. **Small strokes fell great oaks.**

- (a) Great oaks are fallen by small strokes.
- (b) Great oaks are felled by small strokes.
- (c) Great oaks are sell by small strokes.
- (d) Great oaks were fallen by small strokes.

140. **We must take care of all living species on Earth.**

- (a) All living species on Earth are taken care of by us.
- (b) All living species on Earth must be taken care of by us.
- (c) All living species on Earth had been taken care of by us.
- (d) All living species on Earth will be taken care of by us.

141. **People call him a fool.**

- (a) He has been called a fool.
- (b) He is called a fool by the people.
- (c) The people have been calling him a fool.
- (d) We all people have called him a fool.

142. **It is being read by us.**

- (a) We are reading it.
- (b) It will be read by us.
- (c) We can read it.
- (d) We have to read it.

143. **He had committed a mistake.**

- (a) A mistake had committed by him.
- (b) A mistake was committed by him.
- (c) A mistake had been committed by him.
- (d) A mistake has been committed by him.

144. **The most useful training of my career was given to me by my boss.**

- (a) My boss has been giving me the most useful training of my career.
- (b) My boss gives me the most useful training.
- (c) My boss is giving me the most useful training.
- (d) My boss gave me the most useful training of my career.

145. **We have decided to open a new branch.**

- (a) To open a new branch was decided by us.
- (b) To be opened a new branch has been decided.
- (c) It has been decided to open a new branch.
- (d) It may be decided to open a new branch by us.

PASSIVE VOICE

146. **The loan will be sanctioned by the bank.**
(a) The bank sanctioned the loan.
(b) The bank is going to sanction the loan.
(c) The bank would sanction the loan.
(d) The bank will sanction the loan.
147. **Paint the windows.**
(a) Windows should be painted.
(b) Let the windows be painted.
(c) Let be the windows painted.
(d) Windows are let to be painted.
148. **The traitors should be shot dead.**
(a) They should have shot the traitors dead.
(b) They shall shoot the traitors dead.
(c) They should shoot the traitors dead.
(d) They shot the traitors dead.
149. **Rahul is teaching the children in the slum areas.**
(a) The children in the slum areas are taught by Rahul.
(b) The children are taught by Rahul in the slum area.
(c) In the slum areas the children are learning from Rahul.
(d) The children in the slum areas are being taught by Rahul.
150. **One cannot expect children to understand these problems.**
(a) Children cannot be expected to understand these problems.
(b) Children to understand these problems cannot be expected.
(c) Children cannot be expected to be understood these problems.
(d) To understand these problems cannot be expected from children by one.
151. **Why did she break the garden wall ?**
(a) Why the garden wall was broken by her?
(b) Why had the garden wall been broken by her ?
(c) Why was the garden wall broken by her?
(d) Why will the garden wall be broken by her ?
152. **The students were laughing at the old man.**
(a) The old man was being laughed at by the students.
(b) The old man was laughed at by the students.
(c) The old man was being laughed by the students.
(d) The old man is laughing at the students.
153. **He admonished her for the error.**
(a) She was admonished by him for the error.
(b) She has been admonished by him for the error.
(c) She would be admonished by him for the error.
(d) She is admonished by him for the error.
154. **Can we send this big parcel by air ?**
(a) Can this big parcel be sent by air?
(b) Can this big parcel sent by air ?
(c) Could this big parcel be sent by air?
(d) Could this big parcel sent by us by air?

155. **The boys saved many elders from drowning.**

- (a) Many elders are saved from drowning by the boys.
- (b) Many elders are being saved from drowning by the boys.
- (c) Many elders were saved from drowning by the boys.
- (d) Many elders have been saved from drowning by the boys.

156. **He was refused admittance.**

- (a) The guards refuse him admittance.
- (b) The guards refused him for admittance.
- (c) The guards have refused him admittance.
- (d) The guards refused him admittance.

157. **You will be taken care of by me.**

- (a) I will be taking care of you.
- (b) I would take care of you.
- (c) I will take care of you.
- (d) I will being take care of you.

158. **Promises should be kept.**

- (a) You must keep the promises.
- (b) We must keep their promises.
- (c) Kept the promises.
- (d) One should keep one's promises.

159. **Circumstances forced him to resign his post.**

- (a) Circumstances make him to resign his post.
- (b) He was forced to resign his post.
- (c) He is forced to resign his post.
- (d) He is forced and resigned his post.

160. **He would have written this essay in time.**

- (a) The essay was written on time.
- (b) This essay would have been written by him in time.
- (c) The essay was written by him in time.
- (d) He wrote the essay on time.

161. **I give alms to the poor on Saturdays.**

- (a) Alms are given to the poor by me on Saturdays.
- (b) Alms is given to the poor by me on Saturdays.
- (c) Alms are given to the poors by me on Saturdays.
- (d) Alms were given to the poor by me on Saturdays.

162. **God helps the brave.**

- (a) The brave is helped by God
- (b) The brave are helped by God
- (c) The brave are help by God
- (d) The brave helped by God

163. **I haven't read Three Musketeers.**

- (a) Three Musketeers have not been read by me.
- (b) Three Musketeers has not been read by me.
- (c) Three Musketeers has been not read by me.
- (d) Three Musketeers has not been readed by me.

PASSIVE VOICE

164. I am going to buy new spectacles tomorrow.

- (a) New spectacles are going to be bought by me tomorrow.
- (b) New spectacles is going to be bought by me tomorrow.
- (c) New spectacles are being bought by me tomorrow.
- (d) New spectacles are to be bought by me tomorrow.

165. Our mothers use tongs while making chapatis.

- (a) Tongs are used by our mothers while making chapatis.
- (b) Tongs is used by our mothers while making chapatis.
- (c) Tongs are used by our mothers while chapatis are being made.
- (d) Tongs are use by our mothers while making chapatis.

166. I play Billiards during my free time.

- (a) Billiards are played by me during my free time.
- (b) Billiards were played by me during my free time.
- (c) Billiards are being played by me during my free time.
- (d) Billiards is played by me during my free time.

167. Have the car painted black.

- (a) Paint the car black.
- (b) I have painted the car black.
- (c) Get someone to paint the car black
- (d) Black has been painted by the car.

168. Who has stolen my binoculars?

- (a) By whom my binoculars have been stolen?
- (b) By whom have my binoculars been stolen?
- (c) By whom has my binoculars been stolen?
- (d) By whom my binoculars has been stolen?

169. He has been arrested and sent to jail.

- (a) The police arrested him and the court sent him to jail.
- (b) The police has arrested him and the court have sent him to jail.
- (c) The police have arrested him and the court has sent him to jail.
- (d) The police has arrested him and the court has sent him to jail.

170. Anna and his team hope to fight corruption with Jan Lokpal Bill.

- (a) It is hoped by Anna and his team that they would fight corruption by Jan Lokpal Bill.
- (b) To fight corruption is been hoped by Anna and his team by Jan Lokpal Bill.
- (c) To fight corruption was being hoped by Anna and his team by Jan Lokpal Bill.
- (d) To fight corruption is being hoping by Anna and his team by Jan Lokpal Bill.

171. The Greeks expected to conquer Carthage.

- (a) People expected the Greeks to conquer Carthage.
- (b) It was expected by the Greeks to conquer Carthage.
- (c) To conquer Carthage was expected by the Greeks.
- (d) Carthage was expected to be conquered by the Greeks.

172. Rome was not built in a day.

- (a) They did not build Rome in a day.
- (b) They could not build Rome in a day.
- (c) The Romans did not build Rome in a day.
- (d) They have not built Rome in a day.

173. **The ship is being taken to safe water by the Captain and not his crew.**
(a) The Captain and not his crew is taking the ship to safe water.
(b) The Captain and not his crew are taking the ship to safe water.
(c) The Captain and not his crew have taken the ship to safe water.
(d) The Captain and not his crew is being taking the ship to safe water.
174. **Strong Anti-Corruption law is liked by neither the Central Government nor the State Governments.**
(a) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments likes strong Anti-Corruption law.
(b) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments like strong Anti-Corruption law.
(c) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments liked strong Anti-Corruption law.
(d) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments are liking strong Anti-Corruption law.
175. **If you cannot change the master, you cannot change the destiny.**
(a) The destiny cannot be changed if masters cannot change.
(b) The destiny could not be changed if masters cannot be changed.
(c) The destiny cannot change if masters cannot be changed.
(d) The destiny cannot be changed if masters cannot be changed.
176. **The curd smelt sour.**
(a) The curd is sour when smelt.
(b) The curd was sour when it was smelling.
(c) The curd was sour when it was smelt.
(d) The curd is sour when it was smelt.
177. **People are not going to tolerate Government's despotism.**
(a) Government's despotism is not going to be tolerated by people.
(b) Government's despotism was not going to be tolerated by people.
(c) Government's despotism is not being tolerated by people.
(d) Government's despotism is not to be tolerated by people.
178. **He is writing a letter.**
(a) A letter is being written by him.
(b) A letter is written by him.
(c) A letter has been written by him.
(d) Let a letter be written by him.
179. **The man cut the tree into thin strips.**
(a) The tree was cut into thin strips by the man.
(b) The tree cut itself into thin strips by the man.
(c) The tree has cut into thin strips by the man.
(d) The tree can be cut into thin strips by the man.
180. **My father gave me a hundred rupee note yesterday.**
(a) A hundred rupee note was given to me by my father yesterday.
(b) A hundred rupee note was being given to me by my father.
(c) A hundred rupee note had been given to me by my father.
(d) Yesterday, my father was given a hundred rupee note by me.

PASSIVE VOICE

181. **The pilot landed the plane safely.**
(a) The plane had been landed safely by the pilot.
(b) The plane was landed safely by the pilot.
(c) The plane has been landed safely by the pilot.
(d) The plane was to be landed safely by the pilot.
182. **Abha sent me a card.**
(a) A card will be send to me by Abha.
(b) A card was sent to me by Abha.
(c) A card will be sent to me by Abha.
(d) A card is sent to me by Abha.
183. **He will never forget it.**
(a) It will never be forgotten by him.
(b) It can never be forgotten by him.
(c) It should never be forgotten by him.
(d) It may never be forgotten by him.
184. **Let not his insulting words be minded.**
(a) Don't be insulted his words.
(b) Don't mind his insulting words.
(c) Don't insult him with his words.
(d) Do mind his insulting words.
185. **The students have been punished by the teacher for negligence of duty.**
(a) The teacher has punished the students for negligence of duty.
(b) The teacher had punished the students for negligence of duty.
(c) The teacher punished the students for negligence of duty.
(d) The teacher have punished the students for negligence of duty.
186. **The storm has destroyed twelve houses.**
(a) Twelve houses had been destroyed by the storm.
(b) Twelve houses have been destroyed by the storm.
(c) Twelve houses were destroyed by the storm.
(d) Twelve houses have been stormed.
187. **She is reading a novel.**
(a) A novel is being read by her.
(b) A novel has been read by her.
(c) A novel is read by her.
(d) A novel was being read by her.
188. **The whole village was ravaged by the man-eater.**
(a) The man-eater ravages the whole village.
(b) The whole village is ravaged by the man-eater.
(c) The man-eater ravaged the whole village.
(d) The whole village is being ravaged by the man-eater.
189. **The purity of justice is maintained by the reports of proceedings in the law courts.**
(a) The law courts maintain purity of justice in the reports of the proceedings.
(b) The reports of the proceedings in the law courts maintain the purity of justice.
(c) Pure justice is maintained in the proceedings of the law courts.
(d) The maintenance of justice is pure in the proceedings of the law courts.

190. **Newton wrote this letter yesterday.**

- (a) Yesterday was written letter by Newton.
- (b) This letter is written by Newton yesterday.
- (c) This letter was written by Newton yesterday.
- (d) This letter was wrote by Newton yesterday.

191. **An awareness is being created among the people by the Government about the importance of trees.**

- (a) The Government is creating an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.
- (b) The Government are creating an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.
- (c) The Government creates an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.
- (d) The Government created an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.

192. **Ads on TV increase the sale of any commodity.**

- (a) The sale of any commodity is being increased by ads on TV.
- (b) The sale of any commodity are increased by ads on TV.
- (c) The sale of any commodity are being increased by ads on TV.
- (d) The sale of any commodity is increased by ads on TV.

193. **The Indian Government is encouraging the Europeans to visit India.**

- (a) The Europeans are encouraged by the Indian Government to visit India.
- (b) The Europeans are encouraging by the Indian Government to visit India.
- (c) The Europeans are being encouraged by the Indian Government to visit India.
- (d) The Europeans is being encouraged by the Indian Government to visit India.

194. **He handed her a chair.**

- (a) She was handed a chair by him.
- (b) He handed a chair to her.
- (c) He will hand a chair to her.
- (d) A chair will be handed to her by him.

195. **Call the police at once.**

- (a) Let the police be called at once.
- (b) The police was to be called at once.
- (c) The police is to be called at once.
- (d) Let the police called at once.

196. **Post the letter.**

- (a) The letter is posted.
- (b) The letter was posted.
- (c) Let the letter be posted.
- (d) The letter will be posted.

197. **Who painted it?**

- (a) It was painted?
- (b) Was it painted?
- (c) Had it been painted by?
- (d) By whom was it painted?

Answer key

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (c) 6. (b) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (b)
11. (a) 12. (c) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (b) 16. (b) 17. (a) 18. (b) 19. (c) 20. (a)
21. (a) 22. (c) 23. (b) 24. (b) 25. (b) 26. (b) 27. (b) 28. (a) 29. (d) 30. (a)
31. (c) 32. (b) 33. (b) 34. (a) 35. (a) 36. (b) 37. (b) 38. (a) 39. (d) 40. (a)
41. (d) 42. (c) 43. (c) 44. (b) 45. (b) 46. (b) 47. (a) 48. (b) 49. (c) 50. (b)
51. (d) 52. (a) 53. (c) 54. (a) 55. (a) 56. (a) 57. (b) 58. (a) 59. (c) 60. (d)
61. (b) 62. (a) 63. (a) 64. (b) 65. (b) 66. (b) 67. (a) 68. (b) 69. (b) 70. (a)
71. (a) 72. (b) 73. (d) 74. (a) 75. (a) 76. (b) 77. (c) 78. (b) 79. (d) 80. (c)
81. (c) 82. (a) 83. (c) 84. (b) 85. (a) 86. (c) 87. (b) 88. (c) 89. (c) 90. (c)
91. (c) 92. (c) 93. (c) 94. (d) 95. (c) 96. (c) 97. (a) 98. (d) 99. (a) 100. (a)
101. (c) 102. (d) 103. (a) 104. (b) 105. (b) 106. (b) 107. (a) 108. (b) 109. (c) 110. (c)
111. (c) 112. (c) 113. (c) 114. (b) 115. (c) 116. (a) 117. (b) 118. (a) 119. (d) 120. (a)
121. (d) 122. (d) 123. (b) 124. (d) 125. (b) 126. (b) 127. (b) 128. (b) 129. (a) 130. (c)
131. (b) 132. (d) 133. (b) 134. (a) 135. (b) 136. (a) 137. (b) 138. (a) 139. (b) 140. (b)
141. (b) 142. (a) 143. (c) 144. (d) 145. (c) 146. (c) 147. (b) 148. (c) 149. (d) 150. (a)
151. (c) 152. (a) 153. (a) 154. (a) 155. (c) 156. (c) 157. (b) 158. (d) 159. (b) 160. (b)
161. (a) 162. (b) 163. (b) 164. (a) 165. (a) 166. (c) 167. (a) 168. (b) 169. (c) 170. (a)
171. (b) 172. (c) 173. (a) 174. (b) 175. (d) 176. (c) 177. (a) 178. (a) 179. (a) 180. (a)
181. (b) 182. (b) 183. (a) 184. (b) 185. (a) 186. (b) 187. (a) 188. (c) 189. (b) 190. (c)
191. (a) 192. (d) 193. (c) 194. (a) 195. (a) 196. (c) 197. (d)

EXPLANATION:-

16. (b) Option (a) cannot be the answer as it will mean that 'it was expected by the people' but in the question it is mentioned that 'Spain expected to win'. Hence option (b) is a better option.
18. (b) 'Have' is a Causative Verb here. Hence we need a subject ' someone' here.
32. (b) 'The brave' is a plural common noun. If we add 'the' before adjectives like brave, poor, rich etc, they become plural common nouns and will take plural verb.
35. (a) If the sentence is given in Passive voice without 'by subject', use that subject in active voice that generally does that work.
39. (d) If we change 'to + V₁' into 'to + be + V₃', we open the option of 'by+Sub' and if the same subject is repeated in the sentence that has already come in the sentence earlier, we do not change 'to + V₁' into 'to + be + V₃'

161. (a) 'Alms' is a Plural Noun. Hence use plural verb 'are'.
164. (a) 'Spectacles' is a Plural Noun. Hence use plural verb 'are'.
165. (a) 'Tongs' is a Plural Noun. Hence use plural verb 'are'.
166. (d) 'Billiards' is plural in form but singular in meaning as it is the name of a game.
Hence use singular verb 'is'.
167. (c) 'Have' is a Causative Verb here. Hence we need a subject 'someone' here.
168. (b) Binoculars is a Plural Noun. Hence use plural verb 'are'.
169. (c) Police is a Plural Noun. Hence use plural verb 'are'.
171. (b) See the explanation of question 16.
173. (a) When we join two subjects by using 'and not', the verb agrees with the first
subject.'The captain' will take 'is' with it.
174. (b) When two sub are joined by using 'neither.....nor', the verb agrees with the
second subject.'State Governments' (Plural noun) will take a plural verb..

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) The officers/ (b) who were on inspection in this factory / (c) were discovered many discrepancies. / (d) No error.
2. (b) The teacher asked / (b) the students whether they could/(c) tell the name of the man who had been invented steam engine. / (d) No error.
3. (a) He held a bomb / (b) in his hand which was totally hiding / (c) in the long cloak that he was wearing. / (d) No error.
4. (a) I was surprise / (b) at his brazenness/ (c) as he was considered an obedient student / (d) No error.
5. (a) Had the police not/ (b) reached here / (c) on time, the traders would have robbed . / (d) No error.
6. (a)He seriously wounded / (b) during the cross fire and / (c) was rushed to hospital / (d) No error.
7. (a) Police Officers sent / (b) to the theatre and every nook and corner / (c) was thoroughly checked. /(d) No error.
8. (a) When the minister was shot dead,/ (b) people were run here and there / (c) to save themselves. /(d) No error.
9. (a) Mother's milk / (b) cannot substituted by / (c) any thing else. /(d) No error.
10. (a) When the thief broke into their house / (b) they raised a hue and cry / (c) and the thief caught immediately by the people. / (d) No error
11. (a)The city / (b) was tore / (c) by riots. /(d) No error.

PASSIVE VOICE

12. (a) It was suggested / (b) by him that the baby / (c) should be immediately taken care. / (d) No error.
13. (a) The truck driver was accused / (b) the lady for walking / (c) in the middle of the road./ (d) No error.
14. (a) Some passengers / (b) were flew/ (c) to Paris on the last trip./ (d) No error.
15. (a) By the time he arrived, / (b) everybody had / (c) been gone./ (d) No error.
16. (a) I am extremely annoyed / (b) by/ (c) the mismanagement./ (d) No error.
17. (a) The mall was / (b) engulfed/ (c) by the fire/ (d) No error.
18. (a) It believed earlier / (b) that the sun/ (c) revolved round the earth./ (d) No error.
19. (a) As she was wearing / (b) skimpy clothes/ (c) she was stared./ (d) No error.
20. (a) You behave in such / (b) a weird manner that / (c) everybody disgusted with you./ (d) No error.
21. (a) Ten mangoes / (b) are contained / (c) by this box./ (d) No error.
22. (a) A gang of robbers were arrested/ (b) by the police / (c) last night near the island./ (d) No error.
23. (a) The streets of Rome / (b) were thronged/ (c) by the common people./ (d) No error.
24. (a) Everyone says that/ (b) he born / (c) of poor parents./ (d) No error.
25. (a)The ship sank / (b) and everyone / (c) aboard drowned./ (d) No error.
26. (a) If motorists do not observe the traffic regulations, (b) they will be stopped, ticketed / (c) and have to pay a fine. / (d) No error
27. (a) There will be no more supplies/ (b) unless all arrears of payment / (c) were cleared by next Monday. / (d) No error
28. (a) The news of his father's death / (b) was not declared / (c) so far. / (d) No error

Answers with explanation

1. (c) Remove 'were'. Since the sentence is in Active Voice of Past Indefinite Tense 'V₂' will be used in place of 'were + V₃'.
2. (c) Remove 'been'. The sentence is in Active Voice. Hence 'had + V₃' will be used and not 'had + been + V₃' which is used in Passive Voice of Past Perfect Tense .
3. (b) Turn 'hiding' into 'hidden'.
4. (a) Change 'surprise' into 'surprised'. In Passive voice, the main verb is in 'V₃' form.
5. (c) 'Would have' will be followed by 'been'. 'Traders would have robbed' means 'the traders would have performed the act of robbing'.
6. (a) 'He seriously wounded' means 'he performed the act of harming someone grievously'. Change 'he seriously wounded' into 'he was seriously wounded'.
7. (a) Add 'were' before 'sent'.

8. (b) Change 'were run' into 'ran'. Here 'people' (the subject) performed the act of running. Hence the sentence will be in active voice.
9. (b) Use 'be' after 'cannot'. In Passive Voice 'cannot + be + V₃' is used.
10. (c) Change 'thief caught' into 'thief was caught'. 'Thief caught' means 'thief is the doer of the action'.
11. (b) Use 'V₃' after 'was' ('torn' is the 'V₃' form of 'tear')
12. (c) Use 'of' after 'car'. Do not forget to use the preposition in Passive Voice that follows the verb in Active Voice.
13. (a) 'Truck driver' is the subject here. Hence remove 'was'. The sentence is not in passive voice.
14. (b) Use 'V₃' after 'were'. V₃ of 'fly' is 'flown'.
15. (c) Remove 'been'. The sentence is not in Passive Voice.
16. (b) Change 'by' into 'at'.

Note: (a) Annoyed at something

(b) Annoyed with someone

17. (c) Use 'in', in place of 'by'. 'Engulfed' takes preposition 'in'.
18. (a) Change 'it believed' into 'It was believed'.
19. (c) 'stared' takes preposition 'at'.
20. (c) Change 'everybody disgusted' into 'everybody is disgusted' .
21. (c) 'Contained' takes preposition 'in'.
22. (a) 'Gang' is a collective noun. Hence it will take singular verb 'was'.
23. (c) 'Thronged' takes preposition 'with'.
24. (b) Change 'he born' into 'he was born'.
25. (c) Add 'was' before 'drowned'.
26. (c) "and will have to" is the correct formation. The sentence is in 'Active Voice' after 'and'.
27. (c) Use 'are' in place of 'were'. Sentence is of 'Future Conditional'. If two actions take place one after the other in future, the second depending on the first, the 1st action will be in Simple Present Tense and the 2nd action will be in Simple Future Tense.
28. (b) Change 'was not declared' into 'has not been declared'. 'Yet' or 'so far' is used in the sentence . Present Perfect Tense is preferred to Simple Past Tense when 'yet' or 'so far' is used in the sentence.

4

NARRATION

CHAPTER

- We study 'Direct' and 'Indirect Speech' under Narration.

Direct Speech:

- If the sentence spoken by the speaker is written without any change, the sentence is said to be in the direct speech.

E.g.: Ram says, "I work hard."
Reporting Verb Reported Speech

Indirect Speech:

- If the sentence spoken by the speaker is changed by the narrator following certain rules, it is called the Indirect Speech.

E.g.: Ram says that he works hard.

ASSERTIVE SENTENCES

E.g.: He says, "I work hard". (Direct Speech)

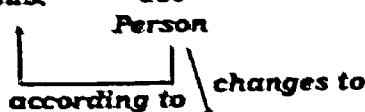
He says that he works hard. (Indirect Speech)

Rules For Converting Direct into Indirect Speech:

- (1) 'Comma' and 'inverted commas' are removed and conjunction 'that' is used while changing the sentence into Indirect Speech.
- (2) Pronoun changes according to the following rule -

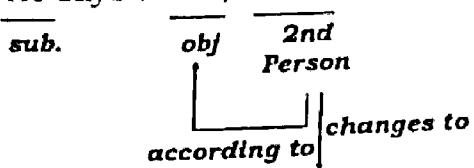
S O N	Sub	Obj	No
1 2 3	1 st Person I, we	2 nd Person you	3 rd Person he, she, it, they

E.g.: 1. He says, "I work hard"



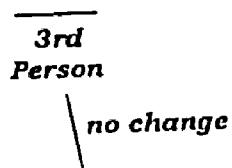
He says that he works hard.

2. He says to me, " **You** work hard."



He tells me that I work hard

3. He says to me, " **She** works hard."



He tells me that **she** works hard.

➤ (3) **Say/Said remains unchanged in Indirect Speech.**

'Say to' changes into 'tell' and 'said to' changes into 'told'.

E.g.: He **says to** me, "You work hard".

He **tells** me that I work hard.

Note: 'to' is not used after 'tell' and 'told'. (See page 228. The list of verbs that takes 'to' and that does not take 'to' is given.)

➤ (4) If the **reporting verb is in 'present' or 'future tense'**, there shall be **no change in the tense of the reported speech**.

E.g.: He **says**, "I come here".

He **says** that he comes here.

➤ (5) If the **reporting verb is in 'past'**, and the **reported speech is a 'universal truth' / 'phrase' / 'idiom' / 'habitual action' or 'historical fact'**, the **tense of the reported speech does not change**.

E.g.: He **said**, "The Sun is a star".

He **said** that the Sun is a star.

➤ (6) If the **reporting verb is in 'past'**, and the **reported speech is not an idiom/ phrase etc**, the **reported speech changes according to the rules given below-**

E.g.: He **said**, "I **came** here yesterday".

He **said** that he **had come** there the previous day.

(1) Change in Tense

➤ **Simple present** → **Simple past** → **Past perfect** → **No change**
 $V_1 / \text{do} / \text{does}$ → V_2 / did → $\text{had} + V_3$

➤ **Present continuous** → **Past continuous** → **Past perfect continuous** → **No change**
 $\text{is} / \text{am} / \text{are}$ → was / were → had been

NARRATION-

- Present perfect / present perfect continuous → Past perfect / past perfect continuous → No change
has / have → had

(2) CHANGE OF MODALS

shall/will → **should / would**

may → *might*

can → **could**

(3) CHANGE IN TIME AND PLACE

today → that day, tomorrow → the next day, yesterday → the previous day/
the day before, tonight → that night, Last → the previous, here → there,
this → that, these → those, ago → before, now → then.

Examples

1. She said, "I cannot help you at this time."
She said that she couldn't help me at that time.
 2. He said to me, "I shall come to meet you tomorrow."
He told me that he would come to meet me the next day.
 3. Ram said, "I haven't taken any exam this year but I intend to take two exams the next year"
Ram said that he hadn't taken any exam that year but he intended to take two exams the next year.
 4. He said, "Virtue is its own reward"
He said that virtue is its own reward (Sentence is a phrase)
 5. Our teacher said, "We have to finish this work today as we know that tomorrow never comes."
Our teacher said that we had to finish that work that day as we know that tomorrow never comes.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

Questions

He said to me, "Are you coming?"

He said to me, "when are you coming?"
(Question is of wh family)

He asked me whether I was coming.

He asked me when I was coming.

➤ Rules

1. Change 'Said to' into **asked, questioned, inquired or interrogated**.
 2. 'Question Mark (?)' should be changed into 'full stop'.
 3. The sentences will not be in interrogative form in Indirect Speech. This means that helping verb is used after the subject.
 4. Tense and pronoun shall be changed according to the rules.
 5. If the question can be answered in yes/no, conjunction if / whether will be used.
If the question is of 'wh family' no conjunction will be used.

Examples-

1. He said to me, "Do you know me?"
He asked me if I knew him.
2. She said to him, "What are you doing now?"
She asked him what he was doing then.
3. He said to him, "Did you intend to come with me?"
He asked him if he had intended to come with him.
4. He said to her, "Haven't you seen this movie?"
He asked her if she hadn't seen that movie.
5. He said to her, "Madam, can I help you?"
She said, "No"
He asked her respectfully if he could help her.
She answered in the negative.
6. He said to me, "When will the train arrive?"
He enquired of me when the train would arrive.

Explanation of Sentence 5:

- If we use 'Sir'/'Madam'/'Your Honour' or any other word of respect in the Direct Speech, such word should be replaced by word 'respectfully' in the Indirect Speech.
- If we use 'Darling'/'Dear'/'My beloved' or any other word of affection in the Direct Speech, such word should be replaced by word 'lovingly/ affectionately' in the Indirect Speech.
- If the answer is in 'yes' or 'no', they must be changed into 'answered in the affirmative/ answered in the negative' respectively.

IMPERATIVE SENTENCES:

He said to me, "Go away".

He ordered me to go away.

➤ **Rules -**

1. Change '**Said to**' into **ordered / respected / forbade/ suggested etc.**
2. Conjunction '**to**' will replace comma and inverted commas.
3. '**To**' is followed by '**V₁**'.
4. **Tense and Pronoun** change according to rules.

Examples-

1. She said to me, "Do not come here"
She forbade me to come there.
or
She ordered me not to come there.
2. He said, "call the first witness now."
He ordered them to call the first witness then.
3. She said, "Spread the clothes in the sunlight and do not wash anything else."
She ordered him to spread the clothes in the sunlight and not to wash anything else.
4. The captain said to the soldiers, "Stand at ease."
The captain commanded the soldiers to stand at ease.



NARRATION

5. My mother said to me, "Help others but do not expect anything in return." My mother advised me to help others but not to expect anything in return."

EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES

She said, "Alas! I am undone".

She exclaimed with sorrow that she was undone.

Rules

1 Said + Alas ! changes to exclaimed with sorrow.

Said + Hurray ! changes to exclaimed with joy.

Said + Fi ! / Ugh ! changes to exclaimed with despise/dispust.

Said + Wow ! changes to exclaimed with joy.

Said + Oh ! changes to exclaimed with surprise / regret.

2. Conjunction 'that' will replace comma and inverted commas.

3. **Tense and pronoun** change according to rules.

Examples:

1. She said, "Hurray ! we have won this match."

She exclaimed with joy that they had won that match.

2. She said, "How beautiful is the rain!"

She exclaimed with joy that the rain was very beautiful.

3. He said, "Bravo ! you have done well."

He applauded him saying that he had done well.

4. She said, "What a pleasant surprise!"

She exclaimed that it was a pleasant surprise.

OPTATIVE SENTENCES

He said, "May God bless you."

He prayed that God might bless me.

Rules

1. Change 'Said' into 'wished' or 'prayed'.

2. Conjunction 'that' is used.

3. **Tense and Pronoun** are changed according to rules.

Examples:

1. She said, "May God pardon him".

She prayed that God might pardon him.

2. They said, "Long live the king".

They prayed that the king might live long.



> Some important points:

1. **Need not, used to, would rather, would better, had rather, had better, are not changed** when Direct Speech is changed into Indirect Speech.

E.g.: He said, "I used to go to school by bus".

He said that he used to go to school by bus.

2. If **Past Continuous** is used with **time clause**, the **tense does not change**.

E.g.: He said to me, "While I was studying, you were playing".

He told me that while he was studying, I was playing.

3. If the **time clause** is mentioned, in **Past Indefinite Tense**, the **tense does not change**.

E.g.: He said, "When I met him, she was playing".

He said that when he met him, she was playing.

4. If two simultaneous actions are given in past indefinite tense, the tense does not change when the speech is changed from direct to indirect.

E.g.: She said, "I prepared the tea and he fried the chips".

She said that she prepared the tea and he fried the chips.

5. In case of historical event, the tense does not change.

E.g.: He said, "Gandhi started the Quit India Movement".

He said that Gandhi started the Quit India Movement.

6. **Will/shall** is changed into **would/should** but the statement **will/shall**, should be changed into '**should**' if the statement is suggestive. (See example 2)

E.g.: 1) He said, "I shall come tomorrow".

He said that he would come the next day.

2) She said to me, "What shall I do after the exam?"

She asked me what she should do after the exam.

7. **Modals will be changed according to the meaning of the sentence.**

E.g. 1. She said, "If I get selected, I need not take any exam further".

She said that if she got selected, she would not have to take any exam further.

2. He said, "Need I send an e-mail?"

He asked me if he had to send an e-mail.

3. He said, "When I was a kid, I could not go out alone".(here 'could' is for 'permission')

He said that when he was a kid, he was not allowed to go out alone.

4. She said, "Rohit, you must be prudent".

She ordered Rohit to be prudent. (here 'must' is used for 'order')

NARRATION

PRACTICE SET

Directions: A sentence has been given in direct/Indirect form. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct form.

1. "Call the first witness", said the Judge.
 - (a) The judge commanded to call the first witness.
 - (b) The judge commanded them to call the first witness.
 - (c) The judge commanded that the first witness be called.
 - (d) The judge commanded the first witness to be called.
2. The queen said to her son, "You must go to the forest and remain there till your father calls you back."
 - (a) The queen ordered her son to go to the forest and remain there till his father calls him back.
 - (b) The queen told her son that he must go to the forest and remain there till his father called him back.
 - (c) The queen told his son that you must go to the forest and remain there till your father called you back.
 - (d) The queen told her son to go to the forest and remained there till his father called him back.
3. I said to her, "All your faults will be pardoned if you confess them."
 - (a) I told her that all her faults will be pardoned if you confess them.
 - (b) I told her that all her faults would be pardoned if she confessed them.
 - (c) I told her that all her faults will have to be pardoned if she confessed them.
 - (d) I told her that all her faults would have to be pardoned if she confessed them.
4. He said to Sita, "When do you intend to pay back the money you borrowed from me?"
 - (a) He enquired Sita when did she intend to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
 - (b) He enquired Sita when she intended to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
 - (c) He enquired Sita when she intended to pay back the money she had borrowed from him.
 - (d) He enquired when Sita intended to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
5. "Let's give a party", said Jaya.
"Let's not", said her husband.
 - (a) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband answered in the negative.
 - (b) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband opposed the idea.
 - (c) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband contradicted her.
 - (d) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband refused.
6. The old man of Latur said, "Alas! my only son is dead."
 - (a) The old man of Latur exclaimed with sorrow that his only son was dead.
 - (b) The old man of Latur told with pain that his only son was dead.
 - (c) The old man of Lature expressed with anguish that his only son was dead.
 - (d) The old man of Latur sorrowfully narrated that his only son was dead.

7. **She said to the girl, "Did you do this?"**
(a) She asked the girl that she did that.
(b) She asked the girl if she did that.
(c) She asked the girl if she had done that.
(d) She told the girl that she had done that.
8. **"Many happy returns of your birthday", we said.**
(a) We greeted him on his birthday.
(b) We said that many happy returns of your birthday.
(c) We wished him many happy returns of his birthday.
(d) We prayed for many happy returns of his birthday.
9. **"Doctor", the patient cried, "please tell me how much time I have."**
(a) The patient pleaded the doctor how much time he will have.
(b) The patient exclaimed to the doctor that how much time he had.
(c) The patient pleaded with the doctor to tell him how much time he had.
(d) The patient cried to the doctor that how much time had he.
10. **"So help me Heaven!" he cried, "I will never steal again."**
(a) He wanted Heaven to help him so that he would never steal again.
(b) She exclaimed to heaven that he would never steal again.
(c) He exclaimed heaven to help him that he would never steal again.
(d) He called upon heaven to witness his resolve never to steal again.
11. **She said, "I'll give you Rs. 100/- to keep your mouth shut."**
(a) She said that she would give him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.
(b) She offered him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.
(c) She suggested to him that she would give him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.
(d) She proposed that she would give him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.
12. **From one of the windows of my flat I can see the Qutub Minar', said my friend.**
(a) My friend told that from one of the windows of his flat he could see the Qutub Minar.
(b) My friend said that from one of the windows of his flat he can see the Qutub Minar.
(c) My friend said that from one of the windows of his flat he could see the Qutub Minar.
(d) My friend told that from one of the windows of his flat he can see the Qutub Minar.
13. **The teacher said to the student, "Why were you absent yesterday?"**
(a) The teacher asked the student why had been he absent the previous day.
(b) The teacher asked the student why had he been absent the previous day.
(c) The teacher informed the student that why he had been absent the next day.
(d) The teacher asked the student why he had been absent the previous day.
14. **The teacher said to Ashok, "I shall report the matter to the Principal if you misbehave again."**
(a) The teacher told Ashok that he would be reporting the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
(b) The teacher warned Ashok that he would report the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
(c) The teacher threatened Ashok to report the matter to the Principal if he misbehave again.
(d) The teacher cautioned Ashok about reporting the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.



5. **"You! A soldier and afraid of fighting!" said Babar.**
 (a) Babar was surprised that a soldier should be afraid of fighting.
 (b) Unconscious a soldier, Babar cursed him that he should be afraid of fighting.
 (c) Babar cursed the soldier who was afraid of fighting.
 (d) Babar cursed and exclaimed that a soldier should not be afraid of fighting.
6. **The teacher said to Ram, "Would you like to go on a trip to Kashmir?"**
 (a) The teacher asked if Ram would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied yes.
 (b) The teacher asked Ram if he would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied yes.
 (c) The teacher asked Ram if he would have like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied in the affirmative.
 (d) The teacher asked Ram if he would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied in the affirmative.
7. **Everyone said, "How well she sings!"**
 (a) Everyone told us that she sings very well.
 (b) Everyone exclaimed that she sings very well.
 (c) Everyone exclaimed that she sang very well.
 (d) Everyone told us that how she sang very well.
8. **"Suggest your children go out for a nice long walk", she said.**
 (a) She suggested that his children went out for a nice long walk.
 (b) She advised that his children go out for a nice long walk.
 (c) She suggested that his children go out for a nice long walk.
 (d) She suggested that his children should go out for a nice long walk.
9. **"Wait it gets dark, light the lantern and hang it out."**
 (a) She said when it get dark he light the lantern and hung it out.
 (b) She suggested that when it got dark he may light the lantern and hang it out.
 (c) I said that when it got dark he should light the lantern and hung it out.
 (d) I said that when it got dark he should light the lantern and hang it out.
10. **"He is free with, but doesn't come and ask me for help if you get into difficulties.",**
He said to me
 (a) He will me to do as he wished or he wouldn't come and help me if I got into difficulties.
 (b) He will me to do as I wished, but not to come and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.
 (c) He ordered me to do as I wished, but not to come and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.
 (d) He told me that unless I did as I wished he would not come and help me if I got into difficulties.
11. **"May you live long and prosper", said the old lady to her son.**
 (a) The old lady blessed her son with long life and wished him prosperity.
 (b) The old lady prayed for her son's long life and prosperity.
 (c) The old lady prayed for her son and said that he might live long and prosper.
 (d) The old lady blessed her son and prayed for his long life and prosperity.



- 22. Socrates said, "Virtue is its own reward."**
- (a) Socrates said that virtue had its own rewards.
 - (b) Socrates says that virtue is its own reward.
 - (c) Socrates said that virtue is its own reward.
 - (d) Socrates said that virtue was its own reward.
- 23. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question?"**
- (a) He requested the interviewer if he could please repeat the question.
 - (b) He requested the interviewer to please repeat the question.
 - (c) He requested the interviewer to repeat the question.
 - (d) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.
- 24. He said, "It used to be a lovely, quiet street."**
- (a) He said that it used to be a lovely, quiet street.
 - (b) He pointed out that it had used to be a lovely, quiet street.
 - (c) He said that there used to be a lovely, quiet street.
 - (d) He inquired whether there was a lovely, quiet street.
- 25. The Prime Minister said that no one would be allowed to disturb the peace.**
- (a) The Prime Minister said, "We shall not allow any one to disturb the peace."
 - (b) The Prime Minister said, "We would not allow any one to disturb the peace."
 - (c) The Prime Minister said, "No one will disturb the peace."
 - (d) The Prime Minister said, "No one can disturb the peace."
- 26. The spectators said, "Bravo ! Well done, players."**
- (a) The spectators shouted that the players were doing very well.
 - (b) The spectators exclaimed with joy that the players were doing very well.
 - (c) The spectators applauded the players saying that they had done well.
 - (d) The spectators applauded the players joyfully to do well.
- 27. I said to my friend, "Good Morning. Let us go for a picnic today."**
- (a) I told good morning to my friend and asked to go for a picnic that day.
 - (b) I wished my friend good morning and proposed that we should go for a picnic that day.
 - (c) I wished my friend good morning and proposed that they should go for a picnic that day.
 - (d) I told good morning to my friend and suggested to go for a picnic today.
- 28. The new student asked the old one, "Do you know my name?"**
- (a) The new student asked the old one if he knew his name.
 - (b) The new student asked the old one that whether he knew his names.
 - (c) The new student asked the old one did he know his name.
 - (d) The new student asked the old one if he knows his name.
- 29. I warned her that I could no longer tolerate her coming late.**
- (a) I said to her, "You can no longer tolerate my coming late."
 - (b) I said to her, "I can no longer tolerate your coming late."
 - (c) I said to her, "He can no longer tolerate her coming late".
 - (d) I said to her, "I can no longer tolerate she coming late."
- 30. I said to my mother, "I will certainly take you to Bangalore this week."**
- (a) I told my mother he would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.
 - (b) I told my mother that I would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.
 - (c) I told my mother that she would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.
 - (d) I told to my mother that I would take you to Bangalore that week.

NARRATION

31. "How clever of you to have solved the puzzle so quickly!" said the mother.
- (a) The mother exclaimed admiringly that it was very clever of him to have solved the puzzle so quickly.
 - (b) The mother expressed that he was so clever to have solved the puzzle quickly.
 - (c) The mother told that he was very clever in solving the puzzle so quickly.
 - (d) The mother exclaimed with joy that he was clever enough to solve the puzzle so quickly.
32. He said that he went for a walk every morning.
- (a) He said, "I went for a walk every morning".
 - (b) He said, "I go for a walk every morning".
 - (c) He said, "I will go for a walk morning".
 - (d) He said, "he went for a walk every morning".
33. I reiterated, "I don't care about the job".
- (a) I reiterated I didn't care about the job.
 - (b) I said again and again I didn't care about the job.
 - (c) I reiterated that I did not care about the job.
 - (d) I repeatedly said that I cared about the job.
34. I said to my brother, "Let us go to some hill station for a change."
- (a) I suggested to my brother that they should go to some hill station for a change.
 - (b) I suggested to my brother that we should go to some hill station for a change.
 - (c) I suggested to my brother that let us go to some hill station for a change.
 - (d) I suggested to my brother that let them go to some hill station for a change.
35. I wondered how many discoveries went unheeded.
- (a) I said, "How many discoveries have gone unheeded?"
 - (b) I said, "How many discoveries went unheeded?"
 - (c) I said, "Do discoveries go unheeded?"
 - (d) I said, "How many discoveries go unheeded?"
36. Gopan said to me, "Can you do these sums for me?"
- (a) Gopan asked me if I could do those sums for him.
 - (b) Gopan asked me if I can do those sums for him.
 - (c) Gopan asked me if I can do those sums for him.
 - (d) Gopan asked if I could do these sums for him.
37. The boss said, "It's time we began planning our work".
- (a) The boss said that it was time they had begun planning their work.
 - (b) The boss said that it was time we had began planning our work.
 - (c) The boss said that it was time they began planning their work.
 - (d) The boss said that it was time we began planning his work.
38. He said to the judge, "I did not commit this crime."
- (a) He told the judge that he did not commit the crime.
 - (b) The told the judge that he had not committed the crime.
 - (c) He told the judge that he had not committed that crime.
 - (d) He told the judge that he had not committed this crime.
39. Rahul said, "I will do it now or never".
- (a) Rahul said that he will do it now or never.
 - (b) Rahul said that he will now or never do it.
 - (c) Rahul said that he would do it then or never.
 - (d) Rahul said that he would now or never do it.

40. My father once said to me, "If I can't trust my people, then I don't want to be doing this."
- (a) His father once told him that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing that.
 - (b) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing that.
 - (c) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust my people then he didn't want to be doing that.
 - (d) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing this.
41. Deshi said to his wife, "Please select one of these necklaces."
- (a) Deshi requested his wife to select one of these necklaces.
 - (b) Deshi said to his wife to please select one of these necklaces.
 - (c) Deshi told his wife to please select one of these necklaces.
 - (d) Deshi requested his wife to select one of those necklaces.
42. He wrote in his report, "The rainfall has been scanty till now."
- (a) He reported that the rainfall has been scanty till now.
 - (b) He reported that the rainfall had been scanty till now.
 - (c) He reported that the rainfall has been scanty till then.
 - (d) He reported that the rainfall had been scanty till then.
43. "Govind," said the manager sternly, "I command you to tell me what the old man said."
- (a) The manager sternly commanded Govind to tell him what the old man had said.
 - (b) The manager commanded sternly to Govind to tell him what the old man had to say.
 - (c) The manager commanded Govind to tell him what the old man said.
 - (d) The manager told Govind to tell him what the old man said.
44. He says, "I am going to the market now."
- (a) He says that he is going to the market now.
 - (b) He said that he was going to the market then.
 - (c) He says that he was going to the market then.
 - (d) He said that he was going to the market now.
45. She said to Rita, "Please help me with my homework."
- (a) She requested Rita to help her in her homework.
 - (b) Rita requested her to help her with her homework.
 - (c) She requested Rita to help her with her homework.
 - (d) She requested Rita to help her homework.
46. He said to me, "Do not run after money and then you will see money running after you."
- (a) He told to me that I did not run after money and then I would see money running me.
 - (b) He advised me not to run after money and then I would see money running after me.
 - (c) He warned me not to run after money and then I will see money running after me.
 - (d) He warned me not to run after money and then money would run after me.

NARRATION

47. He said to me, "Do you know English?"
(a) He asked me if I did know English.
(b) He asked me if I knew English.
(c) he asked me that if I knew English.
(d) He asked me if I knew English.
48. My father said to me, "Bravo! You have done well."
(a) My father applauded me saying that I had done well.
(b) My father applauded me saying that I have done well.
(c) My father applauded me saying that I did well.
(d) My father applauded me saying that you had done well.
49. Tom said that he had had a strange experience the day before.
(a) Tom said, "I have a strange experience yesterday."
(b) Tom said, "I have had a strange experience yesterday."
(c) Tom said, "I had a strange experience yesterday."
(d) Tom said, "I haad had a strange experience yesterday."
50. Our teacher said to us, "I am not going to tolerate your nonsense anymore."
(a) Our teacher warned us that she is not going to tolerate our nonsense anymore.
(b) Our teacher warned us that she was not going to tolerate our nonsense anymore.
(c) Our teacher told us that she was not going to be tolerate our nonsense anymore.
(d) Our teacher said that she was not going to tolerate our nonsense anymore.
51. Sheela said, "I am going to finish this work now before I start a new work tomorrow."
(a) Sheela told me that she was going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
(b) Sheela said that she was going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
(c) Sheela said that she is going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
(d) Sheela told that she was going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
52. "Do you suppose you know better than your own father?" shouted her angry mother.
(a) Her angry mother shouted and asked that she supposed whether she knew better than her own father.
(b) Her angry mother shouted and asked that she supposed that she knew better than her own father.
(c) Her angry mother shouted whether she supposed that she known better than her own father.
(d) Her angry mother shouted and asked her whether she supposed that she knew better than her own father.

53. "So help me, Heaven!" he cried "I will never drive recklessly".
(a) He called upon Heaven to see his resolve never to drive recklessly.
(b) He called upon Heaven to witness his resolve never to drive recklessly.
(c) He called upon Heaven to witness his resolved never to drive recklessly.
(d) He ordered Heaven to witness his resolve never to drive recklessly.
54. The dwarf said to her, "Promise me that when you are a queen you will give me your first-born child."
(a) The dwarf advised her to promised that when she was a queen she would give him her first born child.
(b) The dwarf requested her to promise that when she had been a queen she would give him her first born child.
(c) The dwarf requested her to promise that when she is a queen she would give him her first born child.
(d) The dwarf asked her to promise him that when she was a queen she would give him her first born child.
55. "Dear bird", she said, stroking its feathers, "have you come to comfort me in my sorrow?"
(a) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately that she had come to comfort her in her sorrow.
(b) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately whether it had come to comfort in her sorrow.
(c) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately whether they had come to comfort her in her sorrow.
(d) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately whether it had come to comfort her in her sorrow.
56. He said, "My God ! I am ruined."
(a) He exclaimed sadly that he was ruined.
(b) He exclaimed that he was ruined.
(c) He exclaimed sadly that he had been ruined.
(d) He exclaimed sadly that he ruined.
57. "Ah me!" exclaimed the man, "What a rash and bloody deed you have done!"
(a) The man exclaimed that he had done a very rash and bloody deed.
(b) The man exclaimed sadly that he had done a very rash and bloody deed.
(c) The man exclaimed with sorry that you had done a very rash and bloody deed.
(d) The man exclaimed with sorrow that they had done a very rash and bloody deed.
58. Bhishma said, "Boys! Boys! Remember you are playing a game. If it be Arjuna's turn let him have it."
(a) Bhishma asked the boys to remembered that they were playing a game. If it was Arjuna's turn he must have it.
(b) Bhishma asked the boys to remembered that they were playing a game. If it is Arjuna's turn he must have it.
(c) Bhishma asked the boys to remember that they were playing a game. If it was Arjuna's turn he must have it.
(d) Bhishma asked the boys to remember that we were playing a game. If it was Arjuna's turn he must have it.

NARRATION

59. "What are you doing, grandma?" said the little boy. "I'm planting saplings, my little prince." "Ah, how interesting! Let me try , if I can also do so."
- (a) The little boy said to his grandma what she was doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.
 - (b) The little boy asked his grandma what she was doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.
 - (c) The little boy asked his grandma that she was doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.
 - (d) The little boy asked his grandma what was she doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.
60. "You say," said the judge, "that the bag you lost contained one hundred and ten pounds". "Yes, your honour," replied the cheat. "Then as this one contains one hundred pounds it cannot be yours."
- (a) The judge asked the cheat if the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied respectfully in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded that as that one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
 - (b) The judge ordered the cheat if the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied respectfully in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded that as that one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
 - (c) The judge ordered the cheat that the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied respectfully in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded that as that one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
 - (d) The judge asked the cheat that the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded as this one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
61. The child said, 'Mommy, can you bring the moon for me?' Mommy said, 'No.'
- (a) The child asked his mommy if she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied in the negative.
 - (b) The child told his mommy if she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied in the negative.
 - (c) The child asked his mommy if she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied no.
 - (d) The child said to his mommy that she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied in the negative.
62. He said, "Fil!" and vomited
- (a) He exclaimed with disgust and had vomited
 - (b) He exclaimed with disgust and vomited
 - (c) He exclaimed with sorrow and vomited
 - (d) He exclaimed with disgust and then had vomited

- 63. The captain said to the soldiers, "Stand at ease."**
- (a) The captain commanded the soldiers to stand at ease.
 - (b) The captain said the soldiers to stand at ease.
 - (c) The captain told the soldiers to stand at ease.
 - (d) The captain commanded the soldiers that they stand at ease.
- 64. "I can show no mercy," said the king, "except permitting you to choose what kind of death you wish to die."**
- (a) The king asked that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
 - (b) The king advised that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
 - (c) The king ordered that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
 - (d) The king said that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
- 65. Kaushalya said to Rama, "Do not desire, O my child, to possess the stars, because they are thousands of miles off."**
- (a) Kaushalya forbade her child Rama to desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
 - (b) Kaushalya requested her child Rama to desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
 - (c) Kaushalya ordered her child Rama to not desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
 - (d) Kaushalya said to her child Rama not to desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
- 66. "What a stupid fellow you are!" she remarked.**
- (a) She exclaimed that what a stupid fellow he was.
 - (b) She exclaimed that he was a very stupid fellow.
 - (c) She exclaimed in disgust how he could be so stupid.
 - (d) She asked him what a stupid fellow he was.
- 67. The police said to the thief, "Don't move."**
- (a) The police ordered the thief not to move.
 - (b) The police ordered the thief that he should not move.
 - (c) The police told the thief that he did not move.
 - (d) The police ordered to the thief to not move.
- 68. He said, "I am going to college just now."**
- (a) He said that he was going to college just now.
 - (b) He asked that he was going to college just then.
 - (c) He said that he was going to college just then.
 - (d) He asked that he was going to college just now.
- 69. The teacher said to the student "Can you explain this?"**
- (a) The teacher asked the student whether he can explain this.
 - (b) The teacher asked the student whether he can explain that.
 - (c) The teacher asked the student whether he could explain this.
 - (d) The teacher asked the student whether he could explain that.

QUESTION

70. Ram said, "My master is planning to build a huge house in Khandala."
(a) Ram said that his master planned to build a huge house in Khandala.
(b) Ram said that a master is planning to build a huge house in Khandala.
(c) Ram said that his master's plan is to build a huge house in Khandala.
(d) Ram said that his master was planning to build a huge house in Khandala.
71. Nedra said to Ned, "Can you solve this sum?"
(a) Nedra asked Ned if he could be solve this sum.
(b) Nedra asked Ned if he could be solve that sum.
(c) Nedra asked Ned if he could solve this sum.
(d) Nedra asked Ned if he could solve that sum.
72. He said, "How lovely the scene is!"
(a) He said that the scene is very lovely.
(b) He said that how the scene was lovely.
(c) He said that the scene was very lovely.
(d) He said that that the scene is indeed lovely.
73. Bill said, "I am here to help you all."
(a) Bill said that he is here to help you all.
(b) Bill said that he was there to help us all.
(c) Bill said that he was here to help us all.
(d) Bill said that he is there to help us all.
74. The kids yelled in a loud voice, "We love our family."
(a) The kids yelled loudly that they love our family.
(b) The kids yelled in a loud voice that they loved their family.
(c) The kids yelled in a loud voice that they loved our family.
(d) The kids were shouting loudly that they loved their family.
75. He said to me, "Please visit my company tomorrow".
(a) He said to me to visit his company tomorrow.
(b) He requested me to visit his company tomorrow.
(c) He requested me to visit his company the next day.
(d) He said to me to visit his company the next day.
76. He said, "My parents are arriving tomorrow".
(a) He said that his parents are arriving the next day.
(b) He said that his parents were arriving the next day.
(c) He said that his parents are arriving tomorrow.
(d) He said that his parents have arrived the next day.
77. He said, "How cruel of him!"
(a) He remarked that it was very cruel of him.
(b) He remarked on his great cruelty.
(c) He remark that it was very cruel of him.
(d) He remarked that it is very cruel of him.
78. "How did it get here?" she wanted to know.
(a) She wanted to know how did it get here.
(b) She wanted to know how it had got there.
(c) She wanted to know how did it get there.
(d) She wanted to know how it get there.

79. **The author said, "It took me three years to finish the work."**
(a) The author said that it took him three years to finish the work.
(b) The author said that it had taken me three years to finish the work.
(c) The author said that it would take him three years to finish the work.
(d) The author said that it had taken him three years to finish the work.
80. **"Go away!" she said to the man, "do not trouble your family anymore."**
(a) She asked the man to go away and not trouble the family any more.
(b) She asked the man not to trouble the family that was away, any more.
(c) She asked the man not to trouble your family any more and go away.
(d) She asked the man to go away and not to trouble his family any more.
81. **He asked me, "Have you finished reading the magazine?"**
(a) He asked me whether I had finished reading the magazine.
(b) He asked me if had I finished reading the magazine.
(c) He asked me if I have finished reading the magazine.
(d) He asked me whether I finished reading the magazine.
82. **He said, "We have done our work."**
(a) He said that he had done his work.
(b) He said that they have done their work.
(c) He said that they had done their work.
(d) He said that they should do their work.
83. **"I'm sorry I'm unable to repay the loan in time," said the customer.**
(a) The customer regrets that he was unable to repay the loan in time.
(b) The customer regretted that he is unable to repay the loan in time.
(c) The customer regretted that he was unable to repay the loan in time.
(d) The customer said that he could be unable to repay the loan in time.
84. **"Please, take me to the officer," said the visitor.**
(a) The visitor requested them to take him to the officer.
(b) The visitor told them to take him to the officer.
(c) The visitor requested for the officer to be taken.
(d) The visitor wanted the officer to take him there.
85. **Nitin said, "What a pleasant atmosphere this place has!"**
(a) Nitin exclaimed with joy that that place was a pleasant atmosphere.
(b) Nitin exclaimed with joy that was a pleasant atmosphere in that place.
(c) Nitin exclaimed with joy that that place had a pleasant atmosphere.
(d) Nitin exclaimed with joy that what a pleasant atmosphere that place had.
86. **Aarti said, "I am in a hurry today."**
(a) Aarti said that she was in a hurry that day.
(b) Aarti said that I am in a hurry today.
(c) Aarti said that she is in a hurry today.
(d) Aarti said that she is in a hurry that day.
87. **They said, "We are practising for the next match."**
(a) They said that they are practising for the next match.
(b) They said that they practised for the next match.
(c) They said that they were practising for the next match.
(d) They said they were going to practise for the next match.

NARRATION

88. He said, " May you live long."
- (a) He suggested that my life might be long.
 - (b) He prayed that my life might be long.
 - (c) He prayed that my life may be longer.
 - (d) He declared that my life is longer.
89. "When did you meet my brother?" she asked me.
- (a) She wanted to know when did I meet her brother.
 - (b) She asked when did I meet my brother.
 - (c) She asked me when I had met her brother.
 - (d) She wants to know when I had met my brother.
90. Ruby requested me to lend her Rs. 1000 the next day.
- (a) Ruby said to me, "Please lend me Rs. 1000 the next day."
 - (b) Ruby said to me, "Please lend her Rs. 1000 the next day."
 - (c) Ruby said to me, "Please lend her Rs. 1000 tomorrow."
 - (d) Ruby said to me, "Please lend me Rs. 1000 tomorrow."
91. "You'd better leave the dog alone," the man said.
- (a) The man said to me to leave the dog alone.
 - (b) The man told me to better leave the dog alone.
 - (c) the man warned me to leave the dog alone.
 - (d) The man said I should leave the dog alone.
92. "I'd have enjoyed the journey more if the man next to me hadn't snored all the time," said John.
- (a) John said that he enjoyed the journey but the man next to me snored.
 - (b) John said that he would have enjoyed the journey more if the man next to him hadn't snored all the time.
 - (c) John said that he would have enjoyed the journey if the next man hadn't snored all the time.
 - (d) John said that he would have enjoyed the journey if the man next to him did not snore.
93. A poet said, "The night is dark and I am far from home."
- (a) A poet said that the night was dark and he was far from home.
 - (b) A poet told his friend that the night is dark and that he is far from home.
 - (c) The friend was told by the poet that the night was dark and he was far from home.
 - (d) A poet said that the night is dark and he is far from home.
94. The players reported that the spectators were cheering while they were playing.
- (a) "The spectators have been cheering while we played", said the players.
 - (b) "The spectators cheered while we were playing", said the players.
 - (c) "The spectators were cheering while we were playing", said the players.
 - (d) "The spectators played while we cheered", said the players.
95. She requested the boys to listen to what she was saying.
- (a) She said to the boys, "Please listen to what I am saying."
 - (b) I said to the boys, "Listen to what I am saying."
 - (c) She said, "Boys, listen to what I was saying."
 - (d) She said, "I requested you to listen to what I am saying."

96. "Do you want balloons ?" he said to the child.
(a) He asked the child if it wanted balloons.
(b) He asked the child whether it had wanted balloons.
(c) He asked the child did it want balloons.
(d) He asked the child if it would want balloons.
97. She said, "How ugly I look in this dress!"
(a) She said that how ugly she was looking in that dress.
(b) She exclaimed how ugly she looked in that dress.
(c) She expressed how ugly she looked in that dress.
(d) She exclaimed that she looked very ugly in that dress.
98. She said "You can leave the books here."
(a) She said that they can leave the books there.
(b) She said that they could leave the books there.
(c) She said that they can leave the books here.
(d) She said that they could leave the books here.
99. My friend said, "I am leaving today."
(a) My friend said that he is leaving today.
(b) My friend said that he was leaving today.
(c) My friend said that he leaves today.
(d) My friend said that he was leaving that day.
100. Mukta said to Puneet, "My mother is a good cook."
(a) Mukta told Puneet that her mother was a good cook.
(b) Mukta told Puneet that my mother was a good cook.
(c) Mukta told to Puneet that her mother is a good cook.
(d) Mukta asked Puneet that her mother is a good cook.
101. The commander said to the army, "March forward".
(a) The commander asked the army march forward.
(b) The commander ordered the army to march forward.
(c) The commander requested the army to go forward.
(d) The army requested the commander to march.
102. He promised, "I will do it tomorrow."
(a) He promised that he will do it tomorrow.
(b) He promised that he will do it the next day.
(c) He promised that he would do it tomorrow.
(d) He promised that he would do it the next day.
103. Geeta said, "I did not do this deliberately."
(a) Geeta said that I had not done that deliberately.
(b) Geeta said that she had not done that deliberately.
(c) Geeta said that she has not done this deliberately.
(d) Geeta said that I have not done this deliberately.
104. She said, "I'm afraid we are rather late!"
(a) She exclaimed that they were frightened of being late.
(b) She exclaimed that she was afraid that they were rather late.
(c) She shouted that they were scared that they would be late.
(d) She screamed that she was worried that they would all be late.

105. She said to me, "What can I do for you?"
(a) She asked me what she could do for me.
(b) She asked me what can she do for me.
(c) She asked me what she can do for me.
(d) She asked me whether she can do anything for me.
106. He said, 'Alas! I am undone !'
(a) He said that it was his undoing.
(b) He exclaimed pathetically that he was undone.
(c) He stated that he was undone.
(d) He cried that he was being undone.
107. "I shall unlock the secrets of their success," he said.
(a) He said that he shall unlock the secrets of their success.
(b) He said that he should unlock the secrets of their success.
(c) He said that he would unlock the secrets of their success.
(d) He said that he will unlock the secrets of their success.
108. "I wonder what he wants of us," said Quint.
(a) Quint said that he was wondering what he wanted of them.
(b) Quint said that he wondered what he wanted of us.
(c) Quint said he wondered what he wants of them.
(d) Quint said that he wondered what he wanted of them.
109. Dinesh said, "I want to eat a good mango one of these days."
(a) Dinesh said he wants to eat a good mango one of these days.
(b) Dinesh said that he wanted to eat a good mango one of these days.
(c) Dinesh said that he wants to eat a good mango one of these days.
(d) Dinesh said that he wanted to eat a good mango one of these days.
110. He said, "I intend to leave for Delhi tonight."
(a) He said that he will intend to leave for Delhi tonight.
(b) He said that he should intend to leave for Delhi that night.
(c) He said that he intended to leave for Delhi that night.
(d) He said that his intention is to leave for Delhi tonight.
111. He said, "The Sun rises in the east."
(a) He said that the Sun rised in the east.
(b) He said that the Sun rises in the east.
(c) He said that the Sun will rise in the east.
(d) He said that the Sun may rise in the east.
112. Ram asked Krishna, "Where are you going today?"
(a) Ram asked Krishna where he was going that day.
(b) Ram asked Krishna as to where he was going on the previous day.
(c) Ram asked Krishna where was he going the next day.
(d) Ram asked Krishna where was he going the day before.
113. He said, "What a fool Tom is!"
(a) He exclaimed that he was a big fool.
(b) He exclaimed that Tom was a big fool.
(c) He wondered what kind of a fool Tom was.
(d) He claimed that Tom was a big fool.

- 114. "What kind of scheme do you have?" Amit said to the insurance agent.**
- (a) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she had.
 - (b) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she has.
 - (c) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she is having.
 - (d) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she was having.
- 115. The doctor said to the patient, "Take complete rest."**
- (a) The doctor told to the patient that take complete rest.
 - (b) The doctor advised the patient to take complete rest.
 - (c) The doctor suggested the patient to take complete rest.
 - (d) The doctor asked the patient take complete rest.
- 116. Mini said to me, "I have bought this flat for my mother."**
- (a) Mini told that she had bought that flat for her mother.
 - (b) Mini said that she bought that flat for her mother.
 - (c) Mini said she has bought that flat for her mother.
 - (d) Mini told me that she had bought that flat for her mother.
- 117. He said, "I will come again."**
- (a) He said that he will come again.
 - (b) He says he is coming again.
 - (c) He says he'll come again.
 - (d) He said that he would come again.
- 118. "Don't do any more work until you have had a rest," her mother said to her.**
- (a) Her mother advised her not to do any more work until she has had a rest.
 - (b) Her mother advised her not to do any more work until she had had a rest.
 - (c) Her mother advised her that she not do any more work until she had had a rest.
 - (d) Her mother advised her that she need not do any more work until she had had a rest.
- 119. "Make me another suit like this," he said to the tailor.**
- (a) He asked the tailor to make him another suit like this.
 - (b) He asks the tailor to make him another suit like this.
 - (c) He told the tailor to make him another suit like that.
 - (d) He told the tailor to make me another suit like this.
- 120. My Principal told me, "Don't conduct any test tomorrow."**
- (a) My Principal told to me not to conduct any test tomorrow.
 - (b) My Principal told me not to conduct any test tomorrow.
 - (c) My Principal ordered me don't conduct any test.
 - (d) My Principal ordered me not to conduct any test the next day.
- 121. Kiran said to me, "Did you see the cricket match on television last night?"**
- (a) Kiran asked me if I saw the cricket match on television the earlier night.
 - (b) Kiran asked me if I had seen the cricket match on television the previous night.
 - (c) Kiran asked me did I see the cricket match on television last night.
 - (d) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night.
- 122. David said to Anna, "Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow."**
- (a) David told Anna that Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow.
 - (b) David told Anna that Mona left for her native place the next day.
 - (c) David told to Anna that Mona would be leaving for her native place tomorrow.
 - (d) David told Anna that Mona would leave for her native place the next day.

123. **I said to him, "Why are you working so hard ?"**
(a) I asked him why he was working so hard.
(b) I asked him why was he working so hard.
(c) I asked him why he had been working so hard.
(d) I asked him why had he been working so hard.
124. **Pooja said, "Ridhi, do you want another cake?"**
(a) Pooja asked Ridhi do you want another cake.
(b) Pooja asked Ridhi if she wanted another cake.
(c) Pooja said to Ridhi you wanted another cake.
(d) Pooja said if you wanted another cake.
125. **The tailor said to him, "Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow evening?"**
(a) The tailor asked him that he will have the suit ready by the next evening.
(b) The tailor asked him that he would had the suit ready by the next evening.
(c) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening.
(d) The tailor asked him if he will like to have the suit ready by the next evening.
126. **He ordered his servant to do as he was told.**
(a) He ordered his servant, "Do as you are told."
(b) He said to his servant, "Do as you are told."
(c) He said to his servant, "Do as I told you."
(d) He said to his servant, "Do as you were told."
127. **He said, "Be quiet and listen to my words."**
(a) He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words.
(b) He urged them and said be quiet and listen to words.
(c) He said they should be quiet and listen to his words.
(d) He said you should be quiet and listen to my words.
128. **He said to me, "I have often told you not to play with fire."**
(a) He said that he has often been telling me not to play with fire.
(b) He told me that he had often told me not to play with fire.
(c) He reminded me that he often said to me not to play with fire.
(d) He said to me that he often told me not to play with fire.
129. **"I have seen the film before" Sunita says.**
(a) Sunita said that she had seen the film before.
(b) Sunita says that she has seen the film before.
(c) Sunita said that the film was seen by her before.
(d) Sunita said that she saw the film earlier.
130. **Pawan said to me, "If I hear any news, I'll phone you."**
(a) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he will phone me.
(b) Pawan told me that if he will hear any news, he will phone me.
(c) Pawan told me if he had heard any news, he would phone me.
(d) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me.
131. **The teacher said to Mahesh, "Congratulations ! Wish you success in life."**
(a) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and said wish you success in life.
(b) The teacher wished congratulations and success in life to Mahesh.
(c) The teacher said congratulations to Mahesh and wished him success life.
(d) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and wished him success in life.

188. **The poor examinee said, "O God! take pity on me."**
(a) The poor examinee prayed God to take pity on him.
(b) The poor examinee, invoking God, implored him to take pity on him.
(c) The poor examinee exclaimed that God take pity on him.
(d) The poor examinee asked God to take pity on him.
189. **"Where will you be tomorrow," I said, "in case I have to ring you ?"**
(a) I asked where you will be the next day in case I will ring him.
(b) I asked where he would be the next day in case I had to ring him.
(c) I said to him where he will be in case I have to ring him.
(d) I enquired about his whereabouts the next day in case I would have to ring up.
190. **Seeta said to me, "Can you give me your pen ?"**
(a) Seeta asked me can I give her my pen.
(b) Seeta asked me if I can give me your pen.
(c) Seeta asked me if I could give her my pen.
(d) Seeta asked me if I gave her my pen.
191. **The father warned his son that he should be beware of him.**
(a) The father warned his son, "Beware of him !"
(b) The father warned his son, "Watch that chap !"
(c) The father warned his son, "Be careful about him."
(d) The father warned his son, "Don't fall into the trap."
192. **Manna said to Rohan, "Have you sat in a trolley bus before ?"**
(a) Manna asked Rohan whether he had sat in a trolley bus earlier.
(b) Manna asked Rohan had he sat in a trolley bus before.
(c) Manna asked Rohan-if he sat on a trolley bus before.
(d) Manna asked Rohan if he has ever sat in a trolley bus
193. **Farhan said to Geeta, "Could you lend me a hundred rupees until tomorrow ?"**
(a) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until tomorrow.
(b) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until the next day.
(c) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.
(d) Farhan asked whether Geeta could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.
194. **"What about going for a swim," he said, "It's quite fine now."**
(a) He asked me what about going for a swim as it was quite fine then.
(b) He proposed going for a swim as it was quite fine.
(c) He suggested going for a swim as it was quite fine.
(d) He advised me to go for a swim as it was quite fine.
195. **"You can't bathe in this sea," he said to me, "it's very rough."**
(a) He said that I can't bathe in this sea because it's very rough.
(b) He said that you couldn't bathe in that sea if it was very rough.
(c) He said that I couldn't bathe in that sea as it was very rough.
(d) He said that you can't bathe in this sea since it was very rough.

NARRATION

140. Jagdish said, "We passed by a beautiful lake when we went on a trip to Goa."
(a) Jagdish said that they passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.
(b) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.
(c) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.
(d) Jagdish said they passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.
141. He said to me, "I expect you to attend the function."
(a) He told me that he had expected me to attend the function.
(b) He told me that he expected me to attended the function.
(c) He told me that he expected me to have attended the function.
(d) He told me that he expected me to attend the function.
142. He said, "Why didn't you send your application to me ?"
(a) He enquired why I had not sent my application to him.
(b) He enquired why I did not send my application to him.
(c) He enquired why had I not sent my application to him.
(d) He enquired why did I not send my application to him.
143. Dinesh asked, "Are you going to the party tomorrow, Eliza ?"
(a) Dinesh asked whether Eliza was going to the party the next day.
(b) Dinesh asked Eliza whether you are going to the party the next day.
(c) Dinesh asked Eliza whether she was going to the party the next day.
(d) Dinesh asked Eliza are you going to the party tomorrow.
144. John said, "How long will it take to travel from Germany to South Africa?"
(a) John asked how long it will take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
(b) John asked how long would it take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
(c) John asked how long it would take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
(d) John was asking how long must it take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
145. "What did you see at the South Pole ?" Ashok asked Anil.
(a) Ashok asked Anil if he saw anything at the South Pole.
(b) Ashok asked Anil what he had seen at the South Pole.
(c) Ashok asked Anil what did he see at the South Pole.
(d) Ashok asked Anil that he saw anything at the South Pole.
146. "Do you want some more sweets ?" asked my friend.
(a) My friend asked me if I want some more sweets.
(b) My friend said to me if I wanted some more sweets.
(c) My friend asked me whether I wanted some more sweets.
(d) My friend asked me that I wanted some more sweets.
147. I said to my sister, "I brought you a doll yesterday."
(a) I told my sister that I brought you a doll the previous day.
(b) I told my sister that I had brought her a doll the previous day.
(c) I told my sister that I had brought her a doll yesterday.
(d) I told my sister that I brought her a doll yesterday.

148. The captain said to the army, "March forward, now."
- (a) The captain said to the army that march forward now.
(b) The captain ordered the army to march forward then.
(c) The captain ordered the army to march on that day.
(d) The captain ordered the army to attack the enemy.
149. They said, "We've lived here for a long time."
- (a) They said that they have lived there for a long time.
(b) They said that they lived here for a long time.
(c) They said that they had lived there for a long time.
(d) They said that they have lived for a long time.
150. "Would you open the door please ?" She said'
- (a) She asked me to please open the door.
(b) She requested me to open the door.
(c) She requested me to please open the door.
(d) She asked me open the door.
151. The teacher said, "Gandhiji was born in India."
- (a) The teacher said that Gandhiji had been born in India.
(b) The teacher says that: Gandhiji was born in India.
(c) The teacher said that Gandhiji had born in India.
(d) The teacher said that Gandhiji was born in India.
152. "Where do you live ?" asked the stranger.
- (a) The stranger asked where I lived.
(b) The stranger enquired where I was living.
(c) The stranger questioned where did live.
(d) The stranger wanted to know where I live.
153. I said to him, "How do you know this ?"
- (a) I asked him how I knew that.
(b) I asked him that how he knew that.
(c) I told him how I knew that.
(d) I asked him how he knew that.
154. He said, "We are all sinners."
- (a) He said that we are all sinners.
(b) He said they were all sinners.
(c) He said that he was a sinner.
(d) He said all were sinners.
155. "Would you mind taking off your shoes before entering the house ?" he said to the foreigner.
- (a) He requested the foreigner to take off his shoes before entering the house.
(b) He told the foreigner that he must take off his shoes before entered the house.
(c) He said the foreigner that to take off his shoes before entered the house.
(d) Before entering the house he said that shoes must be taken off.

NARRATION

155. "I lost my book yesterday", she said to her teacher.
(a) She admitted to her teacher that she had lost her book the previous day.
(b) To her teacher she was admitted that she has lost her book the previous day.
(c) She admitted losing her book to her teacher yesterday.
(d) She said to her teacher that I have lost my book the previous day.
157. They said, "The boy will soon be found and we will bring him."
(a) They said that boy would be found and brought.
(b) They said that the boy would soon be found, and that they would bring him.
(c) They informed him that the boy would soon be found, and they ought to bring him.
(d) They told that the boy will be found soon and they will bring him.
158. "Stop talking children," said the teacher.
(a) The teacher ordered the children to stop talking.
(b) The teacher asked the children to stop talking.
(c) The teacher told to the children to stop talking.
(d) The teacher said the children to stop talking.
159. The teacher said that the Earth moves round the Sun.
(a) The teacher stated: "The Earth has been moving round the Sun.
(b) The teacher said, "The Earth is moving round the Sun."
(c) The teacher said, "The Earth will move round the Sun."
(d) The teacher said, "The Earth moves round The Sun."
160. The lady said that they had been witnessing the programme.
(a) The lady said, "We were witnessing the programme."
(b) The lady says, "We are witnessing the programme."
(c) The lady said, "We witnessed the programme."
(d) The lady says, "We had witnessed the programme."
161. The Principal told us, "Wait here till I return."
(a) The Principal told us wait here till her return.
(b) The Principal told us to wait there till he returned.
(c) The Principal told us to wait there till I return.
(d) The Principal told us please wait here till he returned.
162. My mother said to me, "Who is your best friend?"
(a) My mother questioned me as to who my best friend was.
(b) My mother asked me who was my best friend.
(c) My mother asked me who my best friend was.
(d) My mother asked me who my best friend is.
163. The teacher said to the boys, "If you do your best you will surely pass."
(a) The teacher asked the boys to work hard so that they can pass.
(b) The teacher told the boys that unless they work hard they will not pass.
(c) The teacher requested the boys that if they work better, they will surely pass.
(d) They teacher told the boys that if they did their best they would surely pass.

164. **The boy pleaded that he had not stolen the book.**

- (a) The boy said, "I don't steal the book."
- (b) The boy said, "I didn't steal the book."
- (c) They boy said, "I hadn't stolen the book."
- (d) The boy said, "I haven't stolen the book."

165. **Kavitha said, "I saw the photograph."**

- (a) Kavitha told that she saw the photograph.
- (b) Kavitha said that she had seen the photograph.
- (c) Kavitha said that the photograph was seen by her.
- (d) Kavitha said that she has seen the photograph.

166. **The king said to his men, "Put the men in prison."**

- (a) The king implored his men to put the man in prison.
- (b) The king commanded his men to put the man in prison.
- (c) The king requested his men to put the man in prison.
- (d) The king informed his men to put the man in prison.

167. **He said, "I have made a kite."**

- (a) He says that he made a kite.
- (b) He will say that he had made a kite.
- (c) He said that I had made a kite.
- (d) He said that he had made a kite.

168. **David's neighbour said, "Do you like to play golf?"**

- (a) David's neighbour questioned him and said if he liked to play golf.
- (b) David's neighbour asked him to like golf.
- (c) David's neighbour asked him if he would like to play golf.
- (d) David's neighbour asked him if he liked to play golf.

169. **She announced that they had selected Pradeep as their leader.**

- (a) She said, "Pradeep is our leader."
- (b) She announced, "We have selected Pradeep as our leader."
- (c) She announced, "Let us select Pradeep as our leader."
- (d) She declared, "Pradeep had been selected as our leader."

170. **He told the boy not to sit there.**

- (a) "Didn't sit here," he said to the boy.
- (b) "Don't sit there," he said to the boy.
- (c) "Didn't sit there," he said to the boy.
- (d) "Don't sit here," he said to the boy.



ANSWER KEY

-
1. (b) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (b) 6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (c) 9. (c) 10. (d)
11. (a) 12. (c) 13. (d) 14. (b) 15. (d) 16. (d) 17. (c) 18. (a) 19. (d) 20. (b)
21. (c) 22. (c) 23. (c) 24. (a) 25. (a) 26. (c) 27. (b) 28. (a) 29. (b) 30. (b)
31. (a) 32. (a) 33. (c) 34. (b) 35. (d) 36. (a) 37. (a) 38. (c) 39. (c) 40. (b)
41. (d) 42. (d) 43. (a) 44. (a) 45. (c) 46. (b) 47. (b) 48. (a) 49. (c) 50. (b)
51. (b) 52. (d) 53. (b) 54. (d) 55. (d) 56. (a) 57. (b) 58. (c) 59. (b) 60. (a)
61. (a) 62. (b) 63. (a) 64. (d) 65. (a) 66. (b) 67. (a) 68. (c) 69. (d) 70. (d)
71. (d) 72. (c) 73. (b) 74. (b) 75. (c) 76. (b) 77. (a) 78. (b) 79. (d) 80. (d)
81. (a) 82. (c) 83. (c) 84. (a) 85. (c) 86. (a) 87. (c) 88. (b) 89. (c) 90. (d)
91. (c) 92. (b) 93. (a) 94. (c) 95. (a) 96. (a) 97. (d) 98. (b) 99. (d) 100. (a)
101. (b) 102. (d) 103. (b) 104. (b) 105. (a) 106. (b) 107. (c) 108. (d) 109. (b) 110. (c)
111. (b) 112. (a) 113. (b) 114. (a) 115. (b) 116. (d) 117. (d) 118. (b) 119. (c) 120. (d)
121. (b) 122. (d) 123. (a) 124. (b) 125. (c) 126. (b) 127. (a) 128. (b) 129. (b) 130. (d)
131. (d) 132. (b) 133. (b) 134. (c) 135. (a) 136. (a) 137. (b) 138. (a) 139. (c) 140. (c)
141. (d) 142. (a) 143. (c) 144. (c) 145. (b) 146. (c) 147. (b) 148. (b) 149. (c) 150. (b)
151. (d) 152. (a) 153. (d) 154. (a) 155. (a) 156. (a) 157. (b) 158. (a) 159. (d) 160. (a)
161. (b) 162. (c) 163. (d) 164. (d) 165. (b) 166. (b) 167. (d) 168. (d) 169. (b) 170. (d)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) He said/ (b) that / (c) he will come. / (d) No error
2. (a) He said/ (b) that / (c) I shall work hard if I want to pass. / (d) No error
3. (a) He asked me/ (b) that if / (c) I was fine./ (d) No error
4. (a) He asked me/ (b) that what / (c) had happened./ (d) No error
5. (a) He asked me/ (b) what / (c) did I say about him./ (d) No error
6. (a) He told to me / (b) that / (c) the Sun is a star./ (d) No error
7. (a) The king commanded to / (b) call the/ (c) first witness./ (d) No error
8. (a) The judge asked me / (b) if I knew the / (c) accused or not./ (d) No error
9. (a) Ram was telling / (b) that everyone / (c) was happy with the bonus./ (d) No error
10. (a) My teacher said that / (b) a bad carpenter / (c) fights with his tools./ (d) No error
11. (a) She ordered the servant shut / (b) the door /(c) and leave the room./ (d) No error
12. (a) She exclaimed with surprise / (b) that / (c) how tall has she grown./ (d) No error
13. (a)The teacher asked the little boy/(b) if he knows the / (c) correct answer to the question./ (d) No error

14. (a) Mother allowed me to / (b) go wherever/ (c) I want./ (d) No error
15. (a) The father forbade his son / (b) not to make the / (c) same mistake again,/ (d) No error
16. (a) He exclaimed with sorrow / (b) that his father died just two / (c) months before, / (d) No Error.
17. (a) She requested him/ (b) to take her to the doctor / (c) as she has very high fever. / (d) No Error
18. (a) When my boss said / (b) that he was coming to see / (c) me the next day, I wondered what problems he will have with me. / (d) No Error
19. (a) I suggested that she should / (b) stay at home if it / (c) rained but she does not give any answer. / (d) No Error
20. (a) He asked me / (b) why had I gone to office / (c) when I knew there would be fewer buses on road that day. / (d) No Error
21. (a) My friend asked me / (b) what could she do/ (c) for me in that critical situation. / (d) No Error
22. (a) The Government warned the multiplexes that if / (b) they continue charging prices higher than MRP , their / (c) licences would be cancelled. / (d) No Error
23. (a) My father told me / (b) that if I work for the / (c) betterment of mankind, God would certainly do good to me . / (d) No Error
24. (a) My teacher wanted to know / (b) if I had done / (c) the homework or not. / (d) No Error
25. (a) She says, "I studied / (b) hard so that I / (c) may get good marks/ (d) No Error
26. (a) She said that she was going to / (b) theatre and wanted to know that I could / (c) accompany him. / (E) No Error
27. (a) She requested me / (b) to wait for her / (c) until she returns from school. / (d) No Error
28. (a) The players exclaimed / (b) with joy that / (c) they have won the match / (d) No Error
29. (a) The Principal said / (b) that the gates should / (c) be locked as the classes have started. / (d) No Error
30. (a) He told us / (b) that / (c) he has not read the book. / (d) No Error

Answers with explanation

1. (c) Change 'will' into 'would'. Said (reporting verb) is in past. Hence the reported speech is also in past.
2. (c) Change 'shall' into 'should' and 'want' into 'wanted'. (Explanation is given in 1).
3. (b) Remove 'that'. If an interrogative sentence is not of 'Wh' family, conjunction 'if/whether' is used.
4. (b) Remove 'that'. If an interrogative sentence is of 'Wh' family, no conjunction is used.
5. (c) In reported speech, an interrogative form is not used. Hence 'did I say' will change into 'I said'.
6. (a) 'To' doesn't come with 'tell/told'.
7. (a) 'Commanded' must be followed by an object.

NARRATION

8. (b) Change 'if' into 'whether'. 'Whether or' is the correct correlative . 'If..... or' is not the correct correlative.
9. (a) 'Telling' must be followed by an object.
10. (d) The sentence is correct. The reported speech given here is an idiom. Hence tense will not change.
11. (a) Add 'to' before 'shut'. In an imperative sentence conjunction 'to' is used.
12. (c) 'How tall has she grown' is interrogative form of a sentence as 'has' has come before subject 'she'. Change 'How tall has she grown' into 'she had grown very tall'.
13. (b) Change 'knows' into 'knew'.
14. (c) Change 'I want' into 'I wanted'. The sentence is in past tense.
15. (b) Remove 'not'. 'Not' is not used with 'forbade'. Other words that do not take 'not' with them are - unless, until, deny, prohibit, lest, hardly, barely, rarely, scarcely and both.

Note: Not is not used with both as in place of 'both....not', we use 'neither of'.

E.g.: Both of them did not go. (x)

Neither of them went. (✓)

16. (b) 'Had' will come before 'died'. 'Simple Past Tense' changes into 'Past Perfect Tense'.
17. (c) Replace 'has' with 'had'. In indirect speech 'Simple Present Tense' changes into 'Simple Past Tense'.
18. (c) Change 'will' into 'would'. In indirect speech 'will/shall' changes into 'would/should'.
19. (c) Change 'does not' into 'did not'. 'Simple Present Tense' changes into Simple Past Tense'..
20. (b) Use 'had' after 'I'. In indirect speech a sentence is in assertive form and not in interrogative form.
21. (b) 'could' will come after 'she'. In indirect speech a sentence is in assertive form and not in interrogative form.
22. (b) Past of 'continue' is 'continued'. In Indirect Speech 'Simple Present Tense' changes into 'Simple Past Tense'.
23. (b) Change 'work' to 'worked'. In Indirect Speech 'Simple Present Tense' changes into Simple Past Tense'.
24. (b) Change 'if' into 'whether'. 'Whether or' is the correct pair . 'If..... or' is not the correct correlative.
25. (c) Change 'may' into 'might'.
26. (b) Change 'that' into 'if'.
27. (c) Change 'returns' into 'returned'.
28. (c) Change 'have' into 'had'.
29. (c) Change 'have' into 'had'.
30. (c) Change 'has' into 'had'.

Ram works hard, doesn't he ?

He is not coming, is he ?

- A short question following a sentence is called a question tag.

Rules for making Question Tag

1. The sentence and the question tag must be in the same tense .
2. If the sentence is positive, the question tag must be negative and vice versa.
3. Always use pronoun in the question tag.
4. For negative question tag, use the contracted form of 'helping verb' and 'not' .
E.g. didn't, hadn't, won't etc.

SOME IMPORTANT RULES:

- (1) There is no contracted form of 'am not' but 'aren't' is used in question tag.

E.g.: I am fine, aren't I ?

- (2) Each, every, everyone, everybody, no one, nobody, none are singular and hence will take singular verb/singular pronoun/ Singular adjective with them but their question tag will take plural verb and plural pronoun.

E.g.: a. Everyone has come, hasn't he ? (x)

Everyone has come, haven't they ? (✓)

b. None of your friends likes her, do they ? (✓)

Everyone can speak English, can't they ? (✓)

- (3) Collective noun takes singular verb and singular pronoun in question tag.

E.g.: The jury has taken its decision, hasn't it?
 S.V. S.P.

- (4) If we talk about the individual members of the collective noun or if there is a difference in opinion among the members of the collective noun, plural verb and plural pronoun are used.

E.g.: a. The committee are divided in their opinion, aren't they?
 P.V. P.P.

QUESTION TAG

b. The audience have taken _{P.V.} their _{P.P.} seats, haven't they?



(S) Some words are **negative in meaning**. For e.g.- **hardly, seldom, scarcely, rarely, barely** etc. Hence they will **take positive question tag after them**.

E.g.

- (a) He hardly does any work, **does he ?**
- (b) He found barely anything to eat, **did he ?**
- (c) He is seldom absent, **is he ?**

(e) If the sentence starts with '**let us/let's**' , '**shall we**' is used in the question tag.

E.g.: Let us go to party tonight, **shall we ?**

(7) (a) In **imperative sentences**, question tag '**won't you**' is used.

E.g.: Come in, **won't you?**

- (b) If in a imperative sentence, somebody is being offered anything, or if someone is being asked to do something, '**will you/would you**' is used in the question tag.

E.g.: (i) Open the door, **would you?**

(ii) Have some more tea, **would you?**

(c) '**Can't you**' is used in the question tag to express **impatience**.

E.g.: Shut your mouth, **Can't you?**

(d) In **negative imperative** sentence, '**will you ?**' is used in the question tag .

E.g.: Do not worry, **will you?**

(S) If a **sentence starts with 'There'**, the question tag will have '**there**' in the place of **pronoun**.

E.g.: There is no water, **is there?**

There were no good schools in the town, **were there?**

(9) Question tag is always **made in accordance with the main part of the sentence**.

E.g.: I think, he is right, **isn't he?** (Here 'I think' is not important and hence it is not the main part of the sentence)

PROVIDE SUITABLE QUESTION TAG FOR THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES

Find the meaning of the difficult words and learn them by heart

- 1. I am happy,
- 3. I didn't go to college yesterday,
- 5. You haven't eaten anything,
- 7. I have called him up,
- 9. My friend Ram is an egoist,

- 2. I don't write letters,
- 4. It is very cold,
- 6. She doesn't drive carelessly,
- 8. The boys are quite boisterous,
- 10. God is omnipotent, omnipresent and omniscient,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 11. The mob killed the District Magistrate, | 12. Bhim was a glutton, |
| 13. We see somnambulists in movies
very often, | 14. Bhagat Singh was a martyr, |
| 15. We see conjurors in circus, | 16. Asthma is not a contagious disease, |
| 17. We used to see epidemic in
villages earlier. | 18. Sanjivini was considered to be a
panacea, |
| 19. We find too many monologues in
Shakespeare's plays, | 20. We hadn't got any remuneration, |
| 21. Polygamy has been banned in
many countries, | 22. Charles Shobraj was an imposter, |
| 23. Hindus practise idolatry, | 24. My nephew is an ambidextrous, |
| 25. He is a pessimist, | 26. Everyone has come late today, |
| 27. The mob has lynched the thief, | 28. The audience have taken their
seats, |
| 29. Have some more tea, | 30. Wait for me, |
| 31. Let's go out for a walk, | 32. He has barely anything to wear, |
| 33. Somebody entered the room, | 34. I think, you are right, |
| 35. I feel, he is hungry, | 36. There are many boys in this school, |
| 37. Nobody bothers, | 38. It hardly rains here, |
| 39. The jury was unanimous in its decision, | 40. I am tired, |

Answers

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. aren't I? | 2. do I? | 3. did I? |
| 4. isn't it? | 5. have you? | 6. does she ? |
| 7. haven't I? | 8. aren't they? | 9. isn't he? |
| 10. isn't he? | 11. didn't it? | 12. wasn't he? |
| 13. don't we? | 14. wasn't he? | 15. don't we? |
| 16. is it? | 17. didn't we? | 18. wasn't it? |
| 19. don't we? | 20. had we? | 21. hasn't it? |
| 22. wasn't he? | 23. don't they? | 24. isn't he? |
| 25. isn't he? | 26. haven't they? | 27. hasn't it? |
| 28. haven't they? | 29. will /would you? | 30. will you?/can you? |
| 31. shall we? | 32. has he? | 33. didn't they? |
| 34. aren't you? | 35. isn't he? | 36. aren't there? |
| 37. do they? | 38. does it? | 39. wasn't it? |
| 40. aren't I? | | |

6

SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

CHAPTER

- In a sentence, the **verb must agree with the subject**. In other words we can say that the **verb used is according to person and number**. This is called subject – verb agreement.
- 1. He comes. (If the **subject** is **singular**, the **verb** must also be **singular**.)
 s.s s.v
- 2. They come. (If the **subject** is **plural**, the **verb** must also be **plural**.)
 p.s p.v
- We need to be familiar with singular and plural verb:

Singular Verb	Plural Verb	Singular Verb	Plural Verb
is	are	was	were
has	have	V ₁ +s/es (plays, goes etc.)	V ₁ (play, go etc.)

Difference between verb and noun:

Noun + s/es → Plural Noun (noun become plural when s/es is added)
 Verb + s/es → Singular Verb (verb becomes singular when s/es is added)

Rule - 1

- If two subjects are joined by 'and', **plural verb** will be used .

E.g.: Ram **and** Shyam are coming.
 P.V

Rule - 2

- If two or more than two **nouns or adjectives** are joined by 'and' but **only person or thing or idea is discussed**, **singular verb** is used.
- E.g.: My friend, philosopher and guide **have** come. (change 'have' into '**has**')
 Slow and steady **win** the race. (change 'win' into '**wins**')
 Fish and chips **is** my favorite dish.(✓)
- If **two uncountable nouns** are joined by 'and' and if **two different subjects** are discussed, **plural verb** will be used.

E.g.: Poverty and misery come together. (✓)
 U.N U.N P.V

Rule - 3

- If the subject is joined by 'as well as', 'with', 'alongwith', 'together with', 'and not', 'In addition to', 'but', 'besides', 'except', 'rather than', 'accompanied by', 'like', 'unlike', 'no less than', 'nothing but', the verb will agree with the first subject.

E.g.: (1) Ram as well as his parents is coming.
S. S. S. V.

(2) The Captain along with the sailors was drowned.
S.S. S.V.

(3) My father **unlike** my uncles is very strict.
S.S. S.V.

Rule - 4

- If an **article** is placed just **before the 1st subject**, it means the **person/thing is the same** for which two nouns are used. Hence **singular verb** will be used.

E.g.: 1. A white and black gown was bought by her.
S. V.

2. Churchill was a great orator and a great politician of his time. (x)

Churchill was a great orator and politician of his time. (✓)

- But if an **article** is used **before every subject**, it refers to **different people/things**. Hence **plural verb** will be used.

E.g.: The director and the producer have come.(✓)
P.V.

Rule - 5

- If two subjects are joined by 'neither.....nor', 'either.....or', 'not only'.....'but also', 'nor', 'or', 'none-but' ,the verb will agree with the nearest subject.

E.g.:

(1) Neither Ram nor Shyam has come.
 S. S. S. V.

1

(2) Either Ram or his friends have come.
P.S. P.V.

P. S. P. V.

1

(3) Has Ram or Shyam come?
S. V. S.S.

S.V. S.S.

1

Rule - 6

- 'Neither of' means 'not either of the two things or people'.
Neither of the judges of the division bench knew about the facts of the case. (✓)
- 'None of' means 'not one of the group of things or people'.

E.g.: Neither of his four sons looked after him. (✗)
None of his four sons looked after him. (✓)

- 'Either of' means 'one of the two things or people'.
- E.g.: Either of the five members is at fault. (✗)
One of the five members is at fault. (✓)
Either of the twins will be made the trustee. (✓)

Note: 'Not' is not used with 'both'. For this purpose 'neither of' is used.

E.g.: Both of them did not take the exam. (✗)
Neither of them took the exam. (✓)

Rule - 7

- Certain nouns are plural in form but singular in meaning. Hence they take singular verb.

E.g.: (a) Names of diseases: Measles, Mumps, Rickets, Shingles etc.
(b) Names of games: Billiards, Darts, Draughts etc.
(c) Names of countries: The United States, The West Indies etc.
(d) Names of books: The Arabian Nights, Three Musketeers etc.
(e) Names of subjects: Physics, Economics, Civics, Statistics, Politics, Linguistics.

E.g.: (1) Mathematics is an interesting subject.
S.V.

(2) Politics is not my cup of tea.
S.V.

Note: If 'Statistics' means 'data', 'Mathematics' means 'Calculations' and 'Politics' means 'Political thoughts', plural verb is used.

E.g.: Statistics have revealed multiple scams in the organisation of the Commonwealth Games.

Rule - 8

- Usually we match the verb with the nearest subject but this is wrong. Match the verb with the main subject of the sentence.

E.g.: (1) The quality of apples is good.

(2) He and not his parents is guilty.

(3) The appeal of the victims for the transfer of the cases related to riots to some other States has

been accepted.

Rule - 9

➤ Collective nouns always take singular verb.

E.g.: (1) The herd of cows is grazing in the field.
 S.S. S.V.



(2) The committee has unanimously taken its decision.
 S.S. S.V. S.A.

➤ If there is a **division** among the members of the collective noun or we **talk about the members** of the collective noun, **plural verb and plural pronoun** are used.

E.g.: (1) The jury are divided in their opinion.
 P.V. P.P.

(2) The audience have taken their seats.
 P.V. P.A.

Rule - 10

➤ Plural numbers always take plural verb.

E.g.: Hundred boys are in my class.
 P.V.

Note:- If plural noun is used after cardinal adjectives (one, two, three, four etc.) and if plural noun denotes certain amount, weight, height or period, singular verb will be used.

In other words we can say that **plural number** used as a **singular unit** will take **singular verb**.

E.g.: (1) Hundred rupees is in my pocket.
 S.V.

(2) Ten miles is a long distance to cover on foot.
 S.V.

➤ **Note the difference:**

Five thousand rupees is a handsome amount.
 Numeral (Adj.) P.N. S.V.

Five thousand rupees have been spent on different useful commodities.
 Numeral (Adj.) P.N. P.V.

Rule - 11

➤ If a subject and the verb are joined by a relative pronoun, the verb used will agree with the antecedent to the relative pronoun.

E.g.: (1) She is one of the noblest women that has ever lived on this earth.
 R.P. have

(2) I am not one of those who will trust everyone whom I meet.
 R.P. they meet

Note: Try to understand the meaning of the sentence in this type of questions.

SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT-

Rule - 12

- **Each, Every, Everyone, Someone, Somebody, Nobody, None, One, Any, Many a, More than one** are singular. Hence they will take singular verb, singular noun and singular pronoun..

E.g.: (1) Each student has come.

(2) Each boy and each girl has come.

(3) One must tolerate one's friend as well as his enemy.
one's

(4) Many a student have not done their home work.
 has his

(5) More than one man was present there.
S.N S.V

Note: Many is used in the following ways:

(1) Many a man has come.
S.N. S.V.

(2) Many men have come.
P.N. P.V.

(3) A great/ A good many men have come.
P.N. P.V.

Rule - 13

- If 'of' is used after each, every, one etc, the noun or pronoun that comes immediately after 'of' will be plural in form. However the verb, pronoun, adjective etc that comes in the latter part of the sentence will be singular in form.

E.g.: One of the boys/ them has done his work.
Noun/ Pronoun (Plural) S.V. S.A.

Rule - 14

- If 'each' is used after plural noun or plural pronoun, plural verb is used.
We each have a duty towards our nation. (✓)

Rule - 15

- If Indefinite Pronoun '**One**' comes as the **subject** of a sentence, it takes **singular** verb and singular pronoun '**one**', '**one's**', and '**oneself**' and not '**he**', '**him**', '**his**' or '**himself**'.

E.g.: **One** should keep his promise. (x)

One should keep one's promise. (✓)

Rule - 16

- If a sentence states an **imaginary position**, it starts with **if, as if, as though, suppose, I wish, in case, would that** etc. In such sentences '**were**' is used as the verb irrespective of the number of the subject.

E.g.: I wish. I **were** a bird.

If he **were** rich, he would help others.

Rule - 17

- In Optative Sentences, singular subject takes plural verb.

E.g.: (1) Long live the Queen .
 P.V. S.S.

Rule - 18

- 'A number of / 'a large number of / 'a great number of is used with plural countable noun. Hence they will take plural verb .

E.g.: A number of students were present. (✓)
 P.S. P.V.

Note: 'The number of' denotes the number of plural countable noun. It will take singular verb.

E.g.: The number of boys are fifty. (✗)
 P.S. P.V.

The number of boys is fifty. (✓)
 P.S. S.V.

Rule - 19

- With uncountable nouns we use 'Amount of / Quantity of followed by a singular verb .

E.g.: The amount of money are not sufficient.(✗)
 U.N. P.V.

The amount of money is not sufficient. (✓)
 U.N. S.V.

Rule - 20

- 'All' can be used in both **countable** and **uncountable** sense. When used as **uncountable**, it takes **singular verb** and when used as **countable**, it takes **plural verb**.

E.g.: (1) All is well that ends well.
 S.V. S.V.

(2) All are well at home. (✓)
 P.V.

Rule - 21

- Scenery, Poetry, Furniture, Advice, Information, Hair, Business, Mischief, Bread, Stationery, Crockery, Luggage, Baggage, Postage, Knowledge, Wastage, Jewellery, Breakage, Equipment, Evidence, Work (works means literary pieces), News, Percentage, Dirt, Dust, Traffic, Electricity, Music, Confectionery, Pottery, Bakery, Behaviour, Word (when used in sense of discussion) Fuel and Cost are uncountable nouns and hence will take **singular verb**. These nouns will not take article 'A/An', 'many', 'few', 'number of' and 'plural form'.

Eg.: (1) The scenery of Kasmir has enchanted us.
S.N. S.V.

(2) I passed the exam but the percentage of marks was not good.
S.N. S.V.

(3) The mischief committed by him is unpardonable.

(4) His hair is black.

(S) I have some equipment that I needed for the project.

- Such nouns have no plural form but sometimes we need the singular/plural form of some of these nouns. The **singular/ plural form is made by adding certain words before the uncountable nouns.**

E.g. : (a) He gave me **a piece of** information.
(b) **All pieces of** information given by her were reliable.
(c) **Many kinds of** furniture are available in that shop.
(d) I want **a few articles of** jewellery.
(e) He ate **two slices of** bread.

(i) Please show me some items of office stationery.

(g) The police have found a strand of hair in the car.

Monies is the plural of **money** which means amount.

Monies have been collected and handed to the women's welfare committee.

Rule - 22 All collected and handed to the women's welfare society.

25

Certain nouns exist in plural forms only. Thus, 's' cannot be removed from such nouns to make them singular. They take plural verb with them.
Scissors, tongs, pliers, pincers, etc.

E.g.: Scissors, tongs, pliers, pincers, bellows, trousers, pants, pajamas, shorts, spectacles, goggles, binoculars, sunglasses, gallows, fangs, alms, amend, archives, arrears, auspices, congratulations, embers, fireworks, lodgings, outskirts, particulars, proceeds, regards, riches, remains, savings, shambles, surroundings, tidings, troops, tactics, thanks, valuables, wages, belongings, braces, etc.

E.g.: (a) Where are my **pants**?
(b) Where are the **tongs**?
(c) The **proceeds** were deposited in the bank.
(d) All his **assets** were seized.
(e) **Alms** were given to the beggars.

➤ (i) The **embers** of the fire were still burning.
Note:- Wages can be used in both singular & plural form. See the following sentences:

	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Form</u>	<u>E.g.:</u>
<u>Wages</u>	Labour	Plural	Wages <u>are</u> paid in cash.
	Result	Singular	Wages of hard work <u>is</u> sweet.

Rule - 23

► News, innings, politics, summons, physics, economics, ethics, mathematics, mumps, measles, rickets, shingles, billiards, athletics are certain nouns that are plural in form but singular in meaning. They take singular verb.

English - from Pharaoh to Permanent

- E.g.:
- (a) No news is good news.
 - (b) Politics is a dirty game.
 - (c) Economics is an interesting subject.
 - (d) Ethics demands honesty.

Rule - 24

➤ Cattle, cavalry, infantry, poultry, peasantry, children, gentry, police and people are certain nouns that are singular in form but plural in meaning. They take plural verb.

's' is never used with these nouns.

- E.g.:
- (a) Cattle are grazing in the field.
 - (b) Our infantry have marched forward.
 - (c) Police have arrested the thieves.

Note: 'People' means 'a number of men' while 'peoples' means 'people of different races'.

E.g. The Greek peoples were brave. (Here we are talking about only one race. Therefore the use of 'peoples' is wrong)

Rule - 25

➤ Deer, sheep, series, species, fish, crew, team, jury, air craft, counsel are certain nouns that are used in both singular and plural form. If they are used in singular sense, they take singular verb and if they are used in plural sense, they take plural verb.

- E.g.:
- (a) Our team is the best.
 - (b) Our team are trying their new uniform.
 - (c) There are two fish in the pond.
 - (d) There are many fishes in the aquarium. (Here the word 'fishes' refers to different species of fish)

Look at the table given below:

Rule - 26

S.N	WORDS	+NOUN/PRONOUN	VERB
1.	No	+ U. N	Singular Verb
2.	No	+ S. C. N	Singular Verb
3.	One-third of / Three-fourths of / The rest of / A quarter of / Part of / Ten percent of / Twenty Percent of	+ U. N.	Singular Verb
4.	One-third of / Three-fourths of/ Part of / Ten percent of / Twenty percent of	+ P. C. N.	Plural Verb
5.	Most of / Some / Some of / Half of/ Enough / Enough of / Not enough of/ Plenty of / A lot of/ Lots of	+ U. N.	Singular Verb
6.	Most of / Some / Some of /Half of/ Enough / Enough of / Not enough of/ Plenty of / A lot of/ Lots of	+ P. C. N.	Plural Verb
7.	The percentage of	+ U.N./P.C.N.	Singular Verb
8.	More than one	+ S. C. N.	Singular Verb
9.	More than two/three. etc.	+ P. C. N.	Plural Verb
10.	More	+ P. C. N. + than one	Plural Verb

The following sentences show how the rules given in the table are followed

1. No air is present on Mars.
2. No student was interesting in taking the exam.
3. One-third of the work has been finished.
4. One-third of the students have passed.
5. Ninety percent of the work is done.
6. Most of the knowledge is gained by experience.
7. Most of the girls are absent today.
8. Ninety percent of the students have passed the exam with flying colours.
9. Half of the candidates have passed with flying colours.
10. Some of the students have not taken the exam.
11. The percentage of successful candidates is less.
12. More than one city was ruined.
13. More cities than one were in ruins.
14. More than two thieves have been caught.
15. More plans than one were made.

Note: See the difference between sentence 12 and 13.

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) Neither of them/ (b) are going to attend/ (c) the party on 10th October./ (d) No error
2. (a) He walked five miles which are really a great distance/ (b) for a man like him who is not only old but also ill./ (d) No error
3. (a) Either my colleague/ (b) or a peon are coming home/ (c) with the material today./ (d) No error
4. (a) The rise and fall/ (b) of the tide are due/ (c) to lunar influence./ (d) No error
5. (a) Many a man/ (b) have succumbed/ (c) to this temptation./ (d) No error
6. (a) The introduction of tea, coffee/ (b) and such other beverages/ (c) have not been without some effect./ (d) No error
7. (a) The newer type of automatic machines/ (b) wash/ (c) clothes faster./ (d) No error
8. (a) Each of the students in the computer class/ (b) has to type/ (c) their own research paper this semester./ (d) No error
9. (a) Everyone of the films/ (b) you suggested/ (c) are not worth seeing./ (d) No error
10. (a) The Secretary and Principal of the college/ (b) are attending/ (c) the District Development Council Meeting at the Collectorate./ (d) No error
11. (a) There is/ (b) only one of his novels/ (c) that are interesting./ (d) No error
12. (a) Knowledge of/ (b) at least two languages/ (c) are required to pass the examination./ (d) No error
13. (a) It is I/ (b) who is to blame/ (c) for this bad situation./ (d) No error
14. (a) Romanticism of melancholy/ (b) in art and literature are the reason/ (c) for insensitivity to those suffering from depression./ (d) No error
15. (a) Patience as well as perseverance (b) are necessary/ (c) for success./ (d) No error

16. (a) In Singapore/ (b) my brother-in-law with his wife/ (c) were present at the function./ (d) No error
17. (a) A hot and/ (b) a cold spring/ (c) was found near each other./ (d) No error
18. (a) Either of the roads/ (b) lead/ (c) to the park/ (d) No error
19. (a) One of my desires/ (b) are to become/ (c) a doctor./ (d) No error
20. (a) The whole block of flats/ (b) including two shops were/ (c) destroyed in fire./ (d) No error
21. (a) The sum and substance/ (b) of his poem/ (c) are as follows./ (d) No error
22. (a) Neither of the/ (b) five accused/ (c) could be convicted./ (d) No error
23. (a) The strain of all/ (b) the difficulties, vexations and anxieties/ (c) were more than he could beat./ (d) No error
24. (a) Everybody/ (b) it must be admitted/ (c) has their ups and downs./ (d) No error
25. (a) Every woman in the world/ (b) fervently hopes that their child/ (c) will be a normal and healthy baby/ (d) No error
26. (a) Neither of them/ (b) sent their papers/ (c) in time for the last seminar/ (d) No error
27. (a) This is a strange world/ (b) where each one pursues their own golden bubble/ (c) and laughs at others for doing the same./ (d) No error
28. (a) If it were possible to get near when/ (b) one of the volcanic eruptions take place/ (c) we would see a grand sight./ (d) No error
29. (a) A rise in rents and wages/ (b) have been found/ (c) to go together./ (d) No error
30. (a) He is one of those few post-colonial writer who believes/ (b) that this talk about colonialism has gone too far/ (c) and has turned into a cliche./ (d) No error
31. (a) One of the peculiarities/ (b) which distinguishes the present age/ (c) is the multiplication of books/ (d) No error
32. (a) Neither of them/ (b) are going to have/ (c) any doubt as far as malpractices are concerned/ (d) No error
33. (a) Ten miles are/ (b) a long distance / (c) to cover on foot./ (d) No error
34. (a) If Mahatma Gandhi/ (b) was alive, he would feel sorry for the poor and downtrodden who/ (c) still struggle everyday to make both ends meet. / (d) No Error
35. (a) Having acquired some experience/ (b) she is no longer one of those who believes/ (c) every explanation they are given./ (d) No error
36. (a) With regard to implementation of the/ (b) details of the proposal, the committee was divided/ (c) in their opinion./ (d) No error
37. (a) Most of the funds/ (b) we get from/ (c) America is used to build roads and bridges./ (d) No error
38. (a) The tiger was not/ (b) the only dangerous animal/ (c) in the forest, there was hyenas too./ (d) No error
39. (a) She immediately quit/ (b) the job in which/ (c) neither skill nor knowledge were required./ (d) No error
40. (a) The type of qualities you acquire/ (b) depend upon your company/ (c) and so you associate yourselves with simple and good natured people./ (d) No error
41. (a) Our success or our failure/ (b) largely depend/ (c) upon our actions./ (d) No error
42. (a) He is/ (b) one of the tallest boy/ (c) in the class./ (d) No error

SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

43. (a) That day when they brought her back for the last time/ (b) there was many old-timers/ (c) who were shocked and fearful./ (d) No error
44. (a) A computer virus works exactly/ (b) like the biological variety/ (c) which invade the human body./ (d) No error
45. (a) Many a boy/ (b) have not done their/ (c) homework properly./ (d) No error
46. (a) Two miles beyond/ (b) that building was seen dozens/ (c) of antisocial elements./ (d) No error
47. (a) Along the northern frontier/ (b) of India is seen/ (c) the beautiful and mighty Himalayas./ (d) No error
48. (a) A body of volunteers/ (b) have helped in/ (c) making this celebration a great success./ (d) No error
49. (a) There appears/ (b) a number of problems/ (c) and I really do not know how to solve them. (d) No error
50. (a) Shingles are a disease/ (b) in which a person develops/ (c) lots of inflamed spots round the waist./ (d) No error
51. (a) Whether she should get married/ (b) or whether she should remain/ (c) single are her personal problem./ (d) No error
52. (a) Two and two/ (b) makes/ (c) four./ (d) No error.
53. (a) Many a men/ (b) attended the meeting/ (c) last night./ (d) No error.
54. (a) The perquisite/ (b) to this job makes it/ (c) even more attractive than the salary indicated./ (d) No error.
55. (a) Either you/ (b) or he/ (c) are happy./ (d) No error.

Answers with explanations

1. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'. The noun / pronoun following 'neither' is plural, but the verb following the noun / pronoun must be singular.
2. (a) Here, 'five miles' is singular as it is taken as a singular unit. Hence singular verb 'is' will be used.
3. (b) Use 'is' in place of 'are'. When two subjects are joined by 'either or' , 'neither nor', 'or' or 'nor', the verb will agree with the nearest subject.
4. (b) "The rise and fall" is a singular subject. Hence singular verb 'is' will be used.
5. (b) 'Many a' is singular and will take singular noun, verb and pronoun.
6. (c) The verb must agree with the main subject. 'Introduction' is a singular subject and hence will take singular verb 'has'.
7. (b) The verb must agree with the main subject. 'Newer type' is a singular subject and hence will take singular verb 'washes'.
8. (c) Use 'his' in place of 'their'. The noun / pronoun following 'each of...' is plural, but the verb following the 'noun / pronoun' must be singular.
9. (c) Verb will be according to the subject, 'everyone'. 'Everyone' is singular. Thus singular verb 'is' should be used.
10. (b) Here 'the' is used only before 'secretary'. This means the same person is the secretary as well as principal. Hence singular verb will be used.
11. (c) Use 'is' in place of 'are', because 'only one' of the novels is interesting.
12. (c) Here 'Languages' is not the main subject. Rather 'knowledge' is the main subject. Hence verb used must agree with 'knowledge'. Use 'is' in place of 'are'.

13. (b) Change 'is' into 'am'. If a subject and the verb are joined by a relative pronoun, the verb used will agree with the antecedent to the relative pronoun.
14. (b) Change 'are' into 'is' because the main subject 'romanticism' is singular.
15. (b) When two subjects are joined by 'as well as', the verb agrees with the 1st subject. 'Patience' is a singular subject and hence will take singular verb 'is'.
16. (c) When two subjects are joined by 'with', the verb agrees with the 1st subject. 'Brother in law' is a singular subject and hence will take singular verb 'was'.
17. (c) Use 'were' in place of 'was'. If two subjects are joined by 'and' and if article is used before both the subjects, plural verb will be used.
18. (b) If 'of' is used after each, every, one etc, the noun or pronoun that comes immediately after 'of' will be plural in form. However the verb, pronoun etc that come in the latter part of the sentence will be singular in form.
Either of the roads/ them leads to the park.

↓ ↓ ↓
 Plural Plural Singular
 Noun Pronoun Verb

19. (b) Change 'are' into 'is'.(See sentence 18 for explanation)
20. (b) Change 'were' into 'was'. 'Block' is the main subject here and is singular in form. The verb must agree with the main subject.
21. (c) 'The sum and substance' means 'gist'. Moreover 'the' is used before the '1st subject' only. Hence change 'are' into 'is'.
22. (a) Change 'neither of into 'none of. The word 'neither' means not any of the 'two'.
23. (c) Change 'were' into 'was'. 'Strain' is the main subject here and is singular in form. The verb must agree with the main subject.
24. (c) 'Every body' is singular. Hence singular pronoun 'his' will be used.
25. (b) 'Every woman' is singular and hence will take singular pronoun.Change 'their' into 'her'.
26. (b) Change 'their' into 'his'. If 'of' is used after 'neither' the noun or pronoun that comes-immediately after 'of' will be plural in form. However the verb, pronoun etc that come in the latter part of the sentence will be singular in form.
27. (b) 'Each one' is singular and hence will take singular pronoun 'his'.
28. (b) Use singular verb with 'one of'. 'Takes' will come in place of 'take'. Since the sentence is in past, 'took' will be used.
29. (b) Change 'have' into 'has'. 'Rise' is the main subject here and is singular in form. The verb must agree with the main subject.
30. (a) 'One of will be followed by a plural noun. Hence 'writers' will replace 'writer'. Verb will follow the antecedent (writers) to the relative pronoun (who). Change 'believes' into 'believe'.
31. (b) The antecedent of 'which' is 'peculiarities' which is plural.Hence change distinguishes (singular) into distinguish (plural).
32. (b) Change 'are' into 'is'.(See sentence 18 for explanation)
33. (a) 'Ten miles is plural in form but used a singular unit. Hence singular verb 'is' should be used.
34. (b) The sentence is of imaginary position. Change 'was' into 'were'.

35. (b) 'Those' is the antecedent of who (relative pronoun). Hence verb will match with 'those'. Use plural verb 'believe'.
36. (b) Change 'was' into 'were' because collective noun 'the committee' is divided here.
37. (c) Change 'is' into 'are'. 'Funds' is the main subject which is plural. Hence verb used must agree with 'funds'.
38. (c) Change 'was' into 'were'. 'Hyenas' is the main subject which is 'plural'. Hence verb used must agree with 'hyenas'.
39. (c) Change 'were' into 'was'. When two subjects are joined by 'neither.... nor', the verb agrees with the nearest subject.
40. (b) The type (singular) will take singular verb 'depends'.
41. (b) Change 'depend' into 'depends'. If two subjects are joined by 'or', the verb agrees with the nearest subject.
42. (b) 'One of...' takes plural noun. Change 'boy' into 'boys'.
43. (b) Use plural verb 'were' with 'many old timers'.
44. (c) The antecedent of which is 'variety' which is singular and hence will take singular verb 'invades'.
45. (b) Singular noun/ pronoun/verb will follow 'many a'. Change 'have' and 'their' into 'has' and 'his'.
46. (b) Use 'were' in place of 'was'. 'Dozens of antisocial elements' is the main subject here and hence plural verb will be used.
47. (b) Change 'is' into 'are'. Here 'is seen' is used for 'the Himalayas' and not 'India'. Hence 'are seen' must be used.
48. (b) Collective nouns like 'body', 'group', 'class' etc takes 'singular verb'. Change 'have' into 'has'.
49. (a) Change 'appears' into 'appear'. 'A number of problems' is plural .
50. (a) 'Shingles' is plural in form but singular in meaning. Thus singular verb 'is' is used.
51. (c) Change 'are' into 'is'.
52. (b) Change 'makes' into 'make'.
53. (a) 'Many a' takes singular noun 'man'.
54. (b) Change 'makes' into 'make'. 'Prerequisites' is the main subject here which is plural.
55. (c) Change 'are' into 'is'.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

CHAPTER

- When two actions take place one after the other, the second depending on the first, it is called a **conditional sentence**.

E.g.: You will succeed provided you work hard.

- **Look at the following words.**

- | | | | |
|-------|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. If | 2. Provided | 3. As soon as | 4. No sooner |
| | 5. Unless | 6. Until | 7. When |
| | | | 8. As soon as |

These words generally come in Conditional Sentences.

- **Conditional sentences have two parts:-**

1. If clause
2. Main clause

Conditional sentences are of three types:-

- A. 'If clause' is in present tense.
- B. 'If clause' is in past tense.
- C. 'If clause' is in past perfect tense.
- D. Other types of conditional sentence.
- A. 'If clause' is in **present tense**.

General formula :- **If + Simple Present, Simple Future**

- In such sentences 'If clause' is in **simple present tense** and the '**main clause**' in **simple future tense**.

Eg.: If I will come to Delhi, I will meet you - (x)
Ist action IInd action

If I come to Delhi, I will meet you. (✓)

- **If two actions take place one after the other in future, and if the second action depends on the first action, the first action is in simple present tense and the second action is in simple future tense.**

- E.g.: 1. She will come to meet you **as soon as** you will reach Delhi. (x)
She will come to meet you **as soon as** you reach Delhi. (✓)
2. **If** the government will become strict, corruption will surely finish. (x)
If the government becomes strict, corruption will surely finish. (✓)
3. I will help him **provided** he will mend his ways. (x)
I will help him **provided** he mends his ways. (✓)



4. Unless he will not take care of his health, he will not recover. (x)
Unless he takes care of his health, he will not recover. (✓)
5. There will be rush at the platform when the train will arrive. (x)
There will be rush at the platform when the train arrives. (✓)
- In the above sentences, 'will/shall/would/' will not come with the part that consists of 'If, as soon as, provided, before, after, until, unless, in case, when and lest.'
- 'Not' is not used with 'until/unless'. See sentence 4.
- In conditional sentences, 'will/shall' will not be used with 'when'. (see sentence 5) But if the sentence is completely in present tense, both the 'if clause' and the 'main clause' will be in simple present tense.

E.g.: If it rains, the school remains closed.

- If a probability is expressed in a sentence, may/might shall be used in place of "will".
1. If it rains, the students may not come for class.
 2. If the fog stays for long, the flights' may get late.

➤ If the sentence is regarding permission, 'may' will be used in place of 'will'.

E.g.: If you have finished your work, you may go home.

- If the sentence is related to a suggestion, 'should / must' will be used in place of 'will'.
1. If you want to remain healthy, you should exercise daily.
 2. If you do not know him, you must not open the door.

➤ In sentences related to requests with respect, 'could/may' should be used.

E.g.: If you meet him, could you tell him to call me up?

If you come to Delhi, would you come to meet me?

- In 'if clause' Present Continuous Tense can be used in place of Simple Present Tense.

E.g.: If you are waiting for the bus, you should better take a taxi.

If you are not reading the newspaper, you should let others read it.

- In 'if clauses' Present Perfect Tense can be used.

E.g.: 1. If you have finished the work, you may leave.

2. If they have bought tickets, they/will surely go to see the movie.

➤ **Past conditional**

I If 'If clause' is in past tense.

General formula: **If + Simple/Past, Subj + would + V₁**

E.g.: If I had money, I would lend it to you.

- Conditional of this type is used when we talk about something which is purely imaginary.
- In the above sentence 'If I had money' shows that the subject had no money.
- II "If" clause is in past perfect tense.

General formula:- **If + Past Perfect, Sub + would + have + V₃**

E.g.: If I had seen you, I would have stopped my car.

- Conditional sentences of this type are used when something did not happen because a certain condition was not fulfilled.

"If I had seen you, means "I had not seen you."

- In such sentences we can also replace 'If' with 'had'. This will not change the meaning of the sentence.

Had + Subject + V₃ + obj, Subject + would + have + V₃

E.g.: Had I seen you, I would have stopped my car.

- Three important formula:-

1. **If + Present Indefinite , Simple Future**

2. **If + S + V₂ , S + would + V₁**

3. **If + S + had + V₃ , S + would + have + V₃**

- Other types of conditional sentences:

(i) Sentences related to imaginary position.

General formula: If + subject + were, subject + would + V₁

E.g.: If I were a bird, I would fly in the sky.

- For imaginary sentences, **were** is used with all subjects.
➤ 'was' is not used with the following words since they usually denote imaginary position/action.

If, as though, in case, as if, would that and I wish.

E.g.: He scolded me as if he was my father. (✗)

He scolded me as if he were a my father. (✓)

- If clause, can also take 'unless, so long as, soon as, when, provided, in case, but for' etc.

E.g.: Unless you work hard, you will not pass.

Note: "Not" is not used with unless/until.

Unless + affirmative = If + negative

E.g.: 1. Unless you work hard, you will not pass.

2. If you do not work hard you will not pass.

Other examples of Conditional Sentences

1. I shall support him **so long as** I am alive.
2. **As soon as** the train comes, the platforms will get overcrowded.
3. **When** he comes to Delhi, I will go to meet him.

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) If he came to me / (b) I would have given/ (c) him my car. / (d) No error
2. (a) Had he invited me / (b) I would have attended / (c) the function. / (d) No error
3. (a) If he had called me up (b) I would inform/ (c) him . / (d) No error
4. (a) If he will work hard / (b)/ he will surely / (c) get the job of his choice. / (d) No error
5. (a) Unless I do not / (b) see his ticket, / (c) I will not let him sit here. / (d) No error
6. (a) Before the police will come / (b) you should better / (c) get the anticipatory bail. / (d) No error

7. (a) We will come to know the truth / (b) after / (c) the investigation finished. / (d) No error
8. (a) Until the train will not get the signal , (b) it will not / (c) leave the platform. / (d) No error
9. (a) If I had money/ (b) I will have lent / (c) it to her. / (d) No error
10. (a) If I was you/ (b) I would not tolerate him / (c) for a moment. / (d) No error
11. (a) Suppose she does not agree/ (b)what could/ (c) we do ? / (d) No error
12. (a) Supposing if you do not reach / (b) the station in time,/ (c) what will you do? / (d) No error
- 13.. (a) If you saw a tiger / (b) what will your / (c) reaction be?/ (d) No error
14. (a) If I had two houses, / (b) I would have given / (c) one to you./ (d) No error
15. (a) If we will heat dry ice / (b) it turns / (c) to vapour. / (d) No error
16. (a) Suppose if you are / (b) late, you will be / (c) in trouble. / (d) No error.
17. (a) Unless / (b) he will not understand the concept/ (c) he will not be able to solve the questions. / (d) No error
18. (a) If he tried again,/ (b) he can pass the exam/ (c) with flying colours. / (d) No error
19. (a) I will wait for you / (b) unless / (c) you come. / (d) No error
20. (a) If I was you / (b) I would teach/ (c) him a lesson. / (d) No error
21. (a) If I were the Prime Minister of India / (b) I will work for the / (c) welfare of the poor. / (d) No error
22. (a) If she would have come to me / (b) I would have given her the / (c) money she needed / (d) No error
23. (a) If he drove fast/ (b) he can reach the station / (c) in time / (d) No error
24. (a) If I was a millionaire/ (b) I would support / (c) the millennium project / (d) No error
25. (a) If both of you stood / (b) on the table/ (c) it would have broken./ (d) No error
26. (a) If she would have worked hard , / (b) she would / (c) have passed. / (d) No error
27. (a) If you had seen me, / (b) you should have stopped your car / (c) and come to help me. / (d) No error
28. (a) If the Government will make strict law/ (b) the law and order situation / (c) will improve. / (d) No error
29. (a) But for his help / (b) the patient would / (c) have died. / (d) No error
30. (a) But for his prompt action / (b) many people would/ (c) have lost their savings. / (d) No error
31. (a) I will not come / (b) in case / (c) it will rain. / (d) No error
32. (a) Had the river overflowed its bank,/ (b) flood would / (c) have come. / (d) No error
33. (a) Had I known him, / (b) I would allow him / (c) to enter my house. / (d) No error
34. (a) You will not get well / (b) unless you will not / (c) follow the doctor's instructions. / (d) No error
35. (a) Supposing if he refuses / (b) to meet you, / (c) what will you do? / (d) No error
36. (a) I shall take you for a long drive /(b) after you /(c) will return from the meeting. / (d) No error
37. (a) When you complete your service / (b) you will be / (c) retired on pension. / (d) No error
38. (a) Were she I, / (b) she will not allow/ (c) you to go anywhere at this time of crisis./ (d) No error

39. (a) I told her when / (b) she came to Delhi./ (c) I would show her all historical monuments. / (d) No error
40. (a) You can scale this high peak. / (b) provided you/ (c) will wear the right kind of shoes. / (d) No error
41. (a) Had you / (b) worked hard/ (c) you will have passed./ (d) No error
42. (a) When I shall see him/ (b) I shall/ (c) tell him/ (d) No error
43. (a) He will tell you/ (b) about it when/ (c) he will come back./ (d) No error
44. (a) When I will get back/ (b) I shall pay back/ (c) the money that I borrowed from you last month /(d) No error
45. (a) I will/ (b) meet him/ (c) when he will come./ (d) No error
46. (a) Had I realized/ (b) your house was such a long way off, / (c) I would take a taxi./ (d) No error

Answers with explanation

1. (a) Change 'If he came' into 'If he had come'.
2. (d)
3. (b) Change 'I would inform' into 'I would have informed'. If the 'If clause' is 'subject + had + V₃', the main clause is 'subject + would + have + V₃'.
4. (a) Change 'If he will work hard' into 'If he works hard'. 'Will' is not used in the 'If clause'.
5. (a) Remove 'do not'. 'Not' doesn't come after unless.
6. (a) Change 'before the police will come' into 'before the police come'. 'Will' is not used in the 'If clause'.
7. (c) Change 'investigation finished' into 'investigation has finished'. If the 2nd action takes place after the 1st action has already finished, the 1st action will be in present perfect tense.
8. (a) Remove 'will not'. 'Not' and 'will' do not come after 'unless'. Change 'get' into 'gets'
9. (b) Change 'will have lent' into 'would lend'. See the given formula-

If + S + V₂ , S + would + V₁

10. (a) Change 'was' into 'were'. 'Was' is not used in imaginary position.
11. (b) Change 'could' into 'can'. The sentence is not of past ability.
12. (a) Remove 'if.' supposing and 'if' mean the same. when used together, they make the sentence superfluous.
13. (b) Change 'will' into 'would'. (see sentence 9)
14. (b) Change 'I would have given' into 'I would give'.
15. (a) Remove 'will'. (see question 4)
16. (a) Remove 'if.' Suppose' and 'if' mean the same. when used together, they make the sentence superfluous.
17. (b) Change 'he will not understand' into 'he understands'. 'Not' and 'will' do not come after 'unless'.
18. (b) Change 'can' into 'could'. The sentence is in past.
19. (b) Change 'unless' into 'until'. Until is time oriented whereas unless is action oriented.
20. (a) Change 'was' into 'were'. 'Was' is not used in imaginary position.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCE

21. (b) Change 'will' to 'would'. The sentence is in past.
 22. (a) Change 'If she would have come to me' into 'If she had come to me'. See the given formula-

[If + S + had + V₃] , [S + would + have + V₃]

23. (b) Change 'can' into 'could'. The sentence is in past.
 24. (a) Change 'was' into 'were'. 'Was' is not used in imaginary position.
 25. (c) Change 'would have broken' into 'would break'. The sentence fits in the formula given below-

[If + S + V₂] , [S + would + V₁]

26. (a) Change 'If she would have worked hard' into 'If she had worked hard'. The sentence fits in the formula given below-

[If + S + had + V₃] , [S + would + have + V₃]

27. (d)
 28. (a) Change 'If the Government will make' into 'If the Government makes'. 'Will' is not used in the 'If clause'.
 29. (d) here 'but for' means 'without'.
 30. (d) here 'but for' means 'without'.
 31. (c) Change 'It will rain' into 'it rains'.
 32. (a) V₃ of 'overflow' is 'overflowed'.
 33. (b) Change 'I would allow' into 'I would have allowed'. The sentence fits in the formula given below-

[Had + S + V₃] , [S + would + have + V₃]

34. (b) Remove 'will not'. 'Not' and 'will' do not come after 'unless'.
 35. (a) Remove 'if'. 'Supposing' and 'if' mean the same. Together they make the sentence superfluous.
 36. (c) Change 'will return' into 'have returned'. If the 2nd action takes place after the 1st action has already finished, the 1st action will be in present perfect tense.
 37. (a) 'When you have completed your services' is correct. If the 2nd action takes place after the 1st action has already finished, the 1st action will be in present perfect tense.
 38. (b) Change 'will' into 'would'. The sentence is in past.
 39. (a) Add 'that' after 'I told her' because a sentence is connected to the other sentence with the help of a conjunction.
 40. (c) Change 'will wear' into 'wear'. 'Will' is not used in the 'If clause'.
 41. (c) Change 'will' into 'would'. The sentence is in past.
 42. (a) 'When I see him' is correct. 'Will' is not used in the 'If clause'.
 43. (c) Change 'he will come' into 'he comes'.
 44. (a) Change 'when I will get back' into 'when I get back'.
 45. (c) Change 'when he will come' into 'when he comes'.
 46. (c) Change 'I would take' into 'I would have taken'.

KINDS OF VERBS

1. Finite Verbs
2. Non-finite Verbs
3. Transitive Verbs
4. Intransitive Verbs

1. **Finite Verbs:** Verbs that are limited by number and person are known as finite verbs.

E.g.: He **is** playing.

They **are** playing.

Here the subjects 'he' and 'they' decide whether we need to use 'is' or 'are'. Hence here 'is' and 'are' are finite verbs

2. **Non-finite Verbs:** Verbs that are not limited by number and person are known as infinite verbs.

E.g.: I like **watching** T.V.

She wants **to go** abroad.

Here 'watching' and 'to go' will not change if we change the subject of the sentence. This means they are not limited by number and person.

Non-finite Verbs are of the following three types:

- (a) Infinitive
- (b) Gerund
- (c) Participle

A. **Infinitive :** It is denoted by 'to + V₁'. It acts as a noun and a verb. Hence infinitive is also called Verb - Noun.

E.g.: 1. **To err** is human.

2. I want **to study**.

3. I want **to study** English.

➤ **Look at the sentences given above:**

➤ In sentence 1, 'To err' is used as a subject (to + V₁).

➤ In sentence 2, 'to study' is used as an object. (to + V₁).

➤ 'To study' is the object of 'want' (verb), but if 'English' acts as an object 'to study' acts as a verb.

➤ Thus, 'to + V₁' acts as both noun and verb.



VERB (ADVANCE)

B. Gerund: It is denoted by ' $V_1 + \text{ing}$ '. It acts as a **noun** and a **verb**. Hence **Gerund** is also called **Verb - Noun**.

E.g.: 1. Swimming is a good exercise.

2. I learnt driving.

3. I like watching television.

➤ In sentence 1, 'Swimming' ($V_1 + \text{ing}$) acts as **subject**.

➤ In sentence 2, 'Driving' ($V_1 + \text{ing}$) is **object**.

➤ In sentence 3, 'Watching' is the **object** of verb 'like' but if television is taken as an object, then "watching" acts as **verb**. Thus $V_1 + \text{ing}$ is both **noun** and **verb**.

Note: With the following verbs/adjectives/phrases ' $V_1 + \text{ing}$ ' is used after 'to'.

E.g.: Verb + used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, prone to.

E.g.: 1. He is **addicted to** smoking.

2. I am **looking forward to** meeting you.

3. He was **used to** driving on the right when he was in London.

In other words, after all the prepositions (including 'to'), if a verb comes, the verb has to be in ' $V_1 + \text{ing}$ '

E.g.: (a) I am looking forward to meeting you.

$\underbrace{\phantom{V_1 + \text{ing}}}_{V_1 + \text{ing}}$

(b) He is given to drinking.

$\underbrace{\phantom{V_1 + \text{ing}}}_{V_1 + \text{ing}}$

(c) He is prone to making the same mistake again and again.

$\underbrace{\phantom{V_1 + \text{ing}}}_{V_1 + \text{ing}}$

(d) He got used to driving on the right when he was in London.

$\underbrace{\phantom{V_1 + \text{ing}}}_{V_1 + \text{ing}}$

➤ But in modals ' V_1 ' comes after 'used to'.

(e) I used to drive on the right.

$\underbrace{}_{V_1}$

➤ Difference between d & e

Sentence (d)		Sentence (e)	
(1)	If verb comes before 'used to', ' $V_1 + \text{ing}$ ' comes after used to.	(1)	If verb does not come before 'used to' ' V_1 ' comes after 'used to'.
(2)	It denotes a habit	(2)	It denotes a routine action of past
(3)	It can be used in any tense. The verb and its form that precedes 'used to' determines the tense of the sentence.	(3)	It can be used only in Past tense.

C. Participle: A word that acts as a **verb** as well as an **adjective** is called a participle.

(i) Present Participle (V₁ + ing)

1. Hearing the noise, we rushed out of the restaurant.
2. Thinking all is well, he went to bed.

➢ In the above sentences, 'V₁ + ing' denotes an action going on or an incomplete action.

(ii) Past Participle (V₃)

1. Driven by poverty, he committed suicide.
2. Deceived by his best friend, he was left in the lurch.

➢ In the above sentences 'V₃' shows an action already completed before the second action took place. 'V₃' is called Past Participle.

(iii) Perfect Participle (Having V₃)

1. Having done with it, they got down to work.
2. Having rested, they started their journey again.

➢ The above sentences show an action being completed in past. 'Having + V₃' (Perfect Participle) is used for such purpose.

➢ Transitive Verb: If a verb requires an object after it, it is called a transitive verb.

E.g.: 1. I wrote essays.
 V obj.

2. Children flew kites.
 V obj.

➢ Intransitive Verb: If a verb does not require an object after it, it is called an Intransitive Verb.

E.g.: Birds fly.
 v

She slept.
 v

E.g.: 1. He killed (What?)

He killed a rabbit.
t.v. obj.

2. I helped (?)

I helped him.
t.v. obj.

A sentence with transitive verbs will need an object otherwise the sentence will not make a complete sense.

➢ Causative Verbs: Have, get and make are causative verbs.

In a normal sentence, the subject does the verb on the object.

VERB (ADVANCE)

E.g.: He helps the poor.
 Sub. Verb obj.
 does on



- But if, subject (S_2) induces another subject (S_1) to do the verb on the object, causative verb is used.

E.g.: 1. He got caught.

2. The environment gets polluted due to our ignorance.

- See the sentences given below to understand the use of causative verbs.

E.g.: 1. I made him do the whole work.
 'Make' according to tense S_1 V_1 obj.

2. We got him arrested by the police.
 'Get' according to tense obj. V_3 S_1

3. Have the box opened.
 'Have' according to tense obj. V_3

4. We have to make the system work.
 'make' according to tense S_1 V_1

5. I cannot get your work done by him.
 'get' according to tense obj. V_3 S_1

Note: Difference between Make and Have/Get

1. S_1 is **optional** in sentences that have causative verbs 'get/have'. If S_1 is present it comes in 'by + S_1 ' after the use of Get/Have.

But S_1 is **mandatory** when 'make' is used as a causative verb.

2. The **main verb** comes in V_3 form when 'Get/Have' is used as a **causative verb**. The **main verb** comes in V_1 form when 'Make' is used as a **causative verb**.

3. In a sentence, **Get/Have/Make** changes according to tense.

- See the patterns given below and understand how a verb is used in them.

Subject + Verb

Pattern - 1

- This is the most simple pattern. In such a sentence, an **intransitive verb** is used after the subject. The meaning of the sentence is clear even without an object. Such sentences cannot be changed into Passive Voice.

E.g.:

S.N	Subject	Verb
1.	Birds	fly.
2.	The moon	is shining
3.	The baby	is sleeping.
4.	I	was going

[129]

Pattern - 2

Subject + verb + subject complement

- In such sentences, the complement is either a noun, a pronoun or an adjective. Sentences of this pattern too cannot be changed into Passive Voice.

E.g.

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Subject Complement
1.	This	is	a pen.
2.	It	is	I
3.	He	looks	happy.
4.	My father	got	angry.

Pattern - 3

Subject + verb + direct object

- Transitive Verbs need an object for the sentence to make a complete sense. The sentence of this type follows the pattern given below.

E.g.:

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Direct Object
1.	I	know	him.
2.	She	opened	the door.
3.	You	should help	yourself.

Pattern - 4

Subject+verb + indirect object + direct object

- If a sentence has two objects, the indirect object comes first and then the direct object. The indirect object is the receiver and the indirect object is the thing received.

E.g.:

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Indirect Object	Direct Object
1.	I	gave	her	my book.
2.	I	bought	her	a purse
3.	He	showed	me	his notes.

Pattern - 5

Subject + verb + direct object + preposition + prepositional object

- If the direct object comes first, it is followed by a preposition and then comes the indirect object.

E.g.:

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Preposition	Prepositional object
1.	I	gave	my book	to	her.
2.	I	bought	a purse	for	her.
3.	He	showed	his notes	to	me and my friends.

PATTERNS (ADVANCE)

- Pattern 5 is preferable if the direct object is less important or if the indirect object is long.

Pattern - 6

Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + adjective

- In this type of sentences, the adjective denotes the situation that is created by the verb or if the noun and the adjective together make the object.

E.g.

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Adjective
1.	He	pushed	the door	open.
2.	She	washed	the plates	clean.
3.	I	like	my tea	strong.
4.	I	bought	this shirt	cheap.

- The verbs used in this pattern are given below:

get, keep, beat, drive, make, paint, leave, turn, find, like, wish.

Pattern - 7

Subject + verb + preposition + prepositional object.

E.g.

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Preposition	Prepositional object
1.	This car	belongs	to	me.
2.	She	met	with	an accident.
3.	He	succeeded	in	his attempt.

Pattern - 8

Subject + verb + to-infinitive (as object of the verb)

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Infinitive	
1.	She	wants	to sleep.	
2.	He	forgot	to take	his medicine.
3.	I	hoped	to pass	the exam.

- The verbs used in this pattern are given below:

Like, love, prefer, begin, start, agree, try, attempt, choose, continue, intend, propose, desire, wish, want, hate, dislike, hope, expect, promise, fear, remember, forget, offer, learn.

Pattern - 9

Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + infinitive.

E.g.:

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Infinitive + etc.
1.	I	want	you	to help him.
2.	The doctor	advised	him	to rest.
3.	I	allowed	Rohit	to go.

- The verbs used in this pattern are given below:

Ask, tell, order, command, persuade, encourage, urge, want, wish, request, intend, expect, force, tempt, teach, invite, help, warn, like, love, hate, allow, permit, remind, cause, mean, dare.

Pattern - 10

Subject + verb + gerund.

Here **gerund** acts as the **object**.

E.g.:

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Gerund, etc.
1.	She	started	singing.
2.	He	has finished	talking.
3.	I	love	teaching.

- The verbs used in this pattern are given below:

Begin, start, love, like, hate, stop, finish, enjoy, prefer, fear, remember, forget, mind, miss, suggest, practice, try, understand, keep, help, admire, avoid, consider, intend, delay, deny, detest, cannot help, rest, defer, worth, risk, it is no good, propose, regret, anticipate.

Pattern - 11

Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + present participle.

E.g.:

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Present Participle
1.	I	saw	him	crossing the bridge.
2.	I	heard	him	shouting
3.	You	kept	me	waiting

- The verbs used in this pattern are given below:

See, hear, smell, feel, watch, notice, find, observe, listen, get, catch, keep, leave, set, start.

Pattern - 12

Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + plain infinitive.

E.g.:

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Plain Infinitive
1.	I	will not let	you	go
2.	We	made	him	finish the work.
3.	I	bade	the boy	leave the room.

- The verbs used in this pattern are given below:

See, watch, notice, observe, hear, listen, feel, make, let, help, bid.

VERB (ADVANCE) ——————

00

➤ Important rules related to verb:

1. a. Being ill, I could not come. (✓)
- b. Being a rainy day, I could not come. (✗)
- c. Walking along the road, my pen fell down. (✗)
- In the 1st sentence, if the subject is not mentioned before 'being' in the first part of the sentence, subject 'I' of the 2nd part becomes the **common subject** of both the parts but the meaning of the sentence comes out to be correct.
- In the second sentence, if 'It' is not used before 'being', 'I' becomes the subject of 'rainy day' and this gives a wrong meaning to the sentence. Thus '**It being a rainy day**' must be used.
- Similarly, in the 3rd sentence use proper subject before 'walking' otherwise 'my pen' will become the subject of 'walking'.
Thus '**While I was walking along the road**' is the correct formation.

- (2) (i) The girls watched intently as the model applied her make-up with a practiced hand. (✗)

➤ Here verb (V_3) must come as an adjective and not a noun. '**Practised**' (verb) should be used. in place of 'practiced'(Noun). Practice is a noun.

E.g.: **Spoken English**

Revised edition

Written document

➤ But if the action is shown in **continuous** form or we talk about any state of being, 'ing' form of verb is used.

E.g. **Rising** prices.

Developing country

Steaming cup of tea

Barking dogs

3. If the verb is used as a noun, 'ing' (Gerund) form / 'to + V_1 ' (infinitive) form is used.

E.g.: Smoking is prohibited here.

 obj

Swimming is a good exercise.

 sub

To err is human.
 Sub.

4. **Adverb of manner** explains how a verb is done. Adverb of manner generally ends in 'ly' .

E.g.: He works honestly.
 Verb Adv

He talks politely.
 Verb Adv

Note: I bought this shirt Cheaply.(✗)
 I bought this shirt Cheap.(✓)

- If the verb is related to our five senses, an adjective is used after it and not an adverb.

E.g.: He looks honest.
 Verb Adj

He sou polite.
 Verb Adj

- The verbs of sensation are given below:

Look, seem, sound, appear, smell, taste and feel

- Besides the verbs of sensation 'be', 'become', 'turn', 'get', 'grow', 'keep', 'make' and 'prove' are qualified by an adjective and not by an adverb.

E.g.: When he heard the news, he became sad.
 adj

5. We adapt to the environment. (x)

We adapt **ourselves** to the environment. (✓)

- Following verbs will also take reflexive pronoun after them:

Acquit (to do better than expected), absent, avail, reconcile (to accept a situation reluctantly), amuse, resign (to accept something as inevitable), avenge, enjoy, exert, apply (to work hard on something), adapt, adjust, pride

1. The officer **acquitted themselves** well during the crisis.
2. She has **reconciled herself** to the demands of her in laws.
3. The students **exert themselves** a lot at the time of examination.
4. You will have to **apply yourself** to this task heartedly.
5. I **pride myself** on being able to work smoothly under pressure too.
6. You should **avail yourself** of this opportunity.
7. He **resigned himself** to yet another day without food.

Note: They **enjoyed** the party (no need of reflexive pronoun as an object is present)
 They enjoyed during vacation. ('themselves' is used after 'enjoyed' as an object is not present)

- If 'enjoy' is followed by an object, reflexive pronoun is not used but if the object is not mentioned, reflexive pronoun is used.
- If '**absent**' is used as a verb, it will be followed by a **Reflexive Pronoun**.
 He was **absent**. (✓)
 He **absented** himself. (✓)

Note: If 'acquit' means **to decide in court that one is not guilty**, reflexive pronoun is not used.

E.g.: The court **acquitted** him.

If 'acquit' means **to do better than expected**, a reflexive pronoun is used.

E.g.: The police **acquitted themselves** well during the riot.

- If '**reconcile**' means **to settle a matter or resolve**, reflexive pronoun shall not be used.

E.g.: I reconciled with him after the bitter argument.

- If '**reconcile**' means **to accept a situation reluctantly**, a reflexive pronoun follows it.

VERB (ADVANCE)

E.g.: He reconciled himself to the arrogant attitude of his boss.

➤ Note: In short we can say that if the subject becomes the receiver of the action, the verbs given above will take a reflexive pronoun.

E.g.: (i) Keep yourself away from bad company. (x)
Keep away from bad company. (✓)

(ii) He hid himself in the room. (Drop 'himself')

List of verbs that do not take reflexive pronoun:

Keep, stop, turn, qualify, bathe, move, rest, hide

6. A verb either does not take any preposition or takes a fixed preposition .

(i) I prefer tea than coffee. (x)

I prefer tea to coffee. (✓)

(ii) He invited me on/for tea.(x)

He invited me to tea. (✓)

7. If an infinitive (**to sleep, to write etc.**) qualifies a noun (**bed, pen, etc.**), the infinitive takes a suitable preposition after it. (**in, with etc.**)

(i) The poor had no bed to sleep in.

(ii) He had no pen to write with.

(iii) Do you have a chair to sit on?

8. If we need two forms of a verb in a sentence, we must use both of the forms.

(i) I have never and will never cheat you. (xx)

I have never cheated and will never cheat you. (✓)
V₃ V₁

(ii) Nothing has or will be more tragic than his demise. (x)

Nothing has been or will be more tragic than his demise. (✓)
V₃ V₁

9. 'Were' is used for **imaginary posts**.

E.g.: If he was a millionaire, he would help the millennium project. (x)

If he were a millionaire, he would help the millennium project. (✓)

10. In **optative sentences**, plural verbs are used with singular subjects.

Long live the king ! (✓)
P.V. S.S.

11. A number of verbs can act as a noun if an article is used with them .

E.g. (i) He is walking.
 verb

(ii) He is going for a walk.
 noun

(iii) He rides a horse.
 verb

(iv) He went for a ride.
 noun

12. If different verbs need different prepositions, use all the prepositions.

E.g.: (i) Amphibians can live **on** land and **in** water.

(ii) He was acquitted **of** and absolved **from** all the charges of corruption

13. **There are certain verbs that generally do not come in 'ing' form:-**

(1) **Verbs of Perception-** See, taste, smell, hear, prefer, please, notice, recognize,

(2) **Verbs of Thinking Process-** Think, know, mean, mind, remember, suppose,

(3) **Verbs Showing Possession-** Own, have, belong, comprise, possess, contain, consist,

(4) **Verbs expressing Feeling or State of Mind-** Believe, like, dislike, love, adore, want, wish, desire, hate, agree, trust, imagine.

(5) **Verbs in General-** Look, seem, appear, affect, resemble, cost, require, become, hope, refuse

(for detail, see continuous tense)

E.g.: I am having car. (x)

I have a car. (✓)

14. ➤ **Adverb 'as' can be used with the following verbs:**

➤ Regard, describe, define, treat, view, know

➤ **Adverb 'as' is not used with the following verbs:**

Name, elect, think, consider, call, appoint, make, choose

E.g.: 1. I **regard** him my brother. (Add 'as' after 'him')

2. Biology has been **defined** the study of organism. (Add 'as' after 'defined')

3. She is **considered** as the best student of my class. (Drop 'as' after 'considered')

4. The teacher **called** him as stupid. (Drop 'as')

5. The principal **appointed** him as a lecturer. (Remove 'as')

6. He **thinks** her as a fool. (Remove 'as')

15. If 'It's high time' / 'it's time' / 'it's about time' is used in a sentence, 'V_g' comes in the sentence.

E.g.: It's high time you **did** something.

16. A few nouns take a definite verb before them that sounds the most appropriate.

Have —lunch etc. **take** —an exam **make** —a demand **Other examples**

a good time

advantage

a gesture

Launch scheme

a shower

an action

a noise

Render help

a dream

risk

a promise

Impart education

a conversation

your time

a request

Lovv tax

a mistake

Impose tax/fine

Level charges

17. All the prepositions (including 'to') take 'V₁ + ing' after them.

E.g.: 1. He is afraid **to** do anything against his boss.

2. He is afraid **of** going out after sunset

V₁+ing

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) Walking along the road / (b) a car knocked / (c) him down. / (d) No error.
2. (a) Having done my homework / (b) my mother allowed me / (c) to go out and play. / (d) No error.
3. (a) Being a rainy day, / (b) I had to cancel / (c) all my appointments. / (d) No error.
4. (a) A few selfish leaders / (b) are bent to harm / (c) the very foundation of democracy. / (d) No error.
5. (a) As I have worked hard, / (b) I am confident to pass / (c) with flying colours. / (d) No error.
6. (a) We went to that place / (b) with a view to help / (c) the earthquake victims. / (d) No error.
7. (a) You should avoid / (b) to go to school / (c) as you have severe eye infection. / (d) No error.
8. (a) I have / (b) no achievement / (c) to boast. / (d) No error.
9. (a) One must avail of / (b) every opportunity / (c) that comes in life. / (d) No error.
10. (a) Have the letter / (b) send / (c) by someone who is trustworthy. / (d) No error.
11. (a) Would you please order / (b) for tea and biscuits / (c) for all of us. / (d) No error.
12. (a) Everyone considered him as / (b) a brave man / (c) but he fled from the battlefield. / (d) No error.
13. (a) My father does not mind / (b) to be disturbed / (c) while he is reading the newspaper. / (d) No error.
14. (a) Perhaps you do not know / (b) I am having a car and a jeep / (c) besides a big house in a good locality. / (d) No error.
15. (a) The lawyer asked me / (b) if it were worth to take / (c) the matter to court. / (d) No error.
16. (a) I bade him / (b) to submit all the important documents / (c) before he left the job. / (d) No error.
17. (a) He thinks / (b) himself / (c) as a great scholar. / (d) No error.
18. (a) All the candidates / (b) will give / (c) a test on Friday. / (d) No error.
19. (a) Mrs Dorai would rather / (b) spend a quiet evening / (c) than attending a party. / (d) No error.
20. (a) The audience / (b) watched the clowns / (c) performed their act. / (d) No error.
21. (a) The life-guard would not / (b) let the children / (c) to swim at the deep end of the pool. / (d) No error.
22. (a) He denied / (b) to help / (c) me. / (d) No error.
23. (a) Walking along the / (b) bank of the river / (c) the road began to rise. / (d) No error.
24. (a) It is time you / (b) decide on your next / (c) course of action. / (d) No error.
25. (a) As I was feeling sleepy / (b) I asked for / (c) a steamed cup of tea. / (d) No error.
26. (a) I remember / (b) meet him / (c) five years ago. / (d) No error.
27. (a) I have always / (b) and will always / (c) be faithful to you. / (d) No error.
28. (a) I am afraid / (b) I did a mistake / (c) in the calculation. / (d) No error.
29. (a) The lights went out / (b) while we / (c) took the examination. / (d) No error.

30. (a) His assistants have and / (b) are still doing / (c) excellent work for the organization. / (d) No error.
31. (a) After the teacher had told the boys / (b) how to pronounce the word / (c) all of them in one voice repeated the word again . / (d) No error.
32. (a) The company is not doing well. / (b) Isn't it time you / (c) sell off your shares in it ? / (d) No error.
33. (a) He caught the boy / (b) steal / (c) the parcel. / (d) No error.
34. (a) I declined the invitation / (b) not because I did not want to go, / (c) but because I have no time. / (d) No error.
35. (a) It is a known fact / (b) that time does not return back / (c) once it is lost. / (d) No error.
36. (a) Even after sixty years of independence / (b) lakhs of people / (c) do not have beds to sleep. / (d) No error.
37. (a) The dinosaurs could not / (b) adapt to the / (c) changing environment. / (d) No error.
38. (a) The students were / (b) looking forward to / (c) meet the eminent scientist. / (d) No error.
39. (a) The lady made the / (b) little boy to wash / (c) all the clothes. / (d) No error.
40. (a) We must get this letter / (b) send / (c) as soon as possible. / (d) No error.

Answers with Explanations

1. (a) Add 'while he was' before 'walking' or 'a car' will become the subject of the first part and the sentence will give a wrong meaning.
2. (a) Use 'T' before 'having' or 'my mother' will become the subject of the first part and the sentence will give a wrong meaning.
3. (a) Use 'it' before 'being'. (Reason same as that of 1 and 2)
4. (b) Change 'bent to harm' into 'bent on harming'. 'Bent on' means 'determined to do'.
5. (b) Use 'confident of passing'. 'Of' is used with 'confident', and **V₁ + ing** (gerund) is used after all prepositions.
6. (b) **V₁ + ing** comes after 'with a view to'. Change 'help' into 'helping'.
7. (b) Change 'to go' into 'going'. Gerund comes after 'avoid'.
8. (c) Add 'of' after 'boast'. If an infinitive comes after a noun, an appropriate preposition should come after the infinitive.
9. (a) Add reflexive pronoun 'oneself' after 'avail'. 'Avail' (when used as a verb) is followed by a reflexive pronoun.
10. (b) Use **V₃** of 'send' i.e 'sent'. If 'get' and 'have' are used as causative verbs, the main verb is in third form.

Eg: 1. Have it painted red. 2. Get it done.
 V₁ V₃

11. (b) Remove 'for'. 'Order' as a verb does not take 'for' after it.
12. (a) Remove 'as'. 'Considered' is not followed by 'as'.
13. (b) 'Gerund' will come after 'mind'. Change 'be' into 'being'.



VERB (ADVANCE)

14. (b) Change 'having' into 'have'. When 'have' means 'to possess', it does not take 'ing' form.
15. (b) 'V₁ + ing' should follow 'Worth'. 'Worth taking' is correct.
16. (b) 'Bade' (V₂ of bid) takes 'plain infinitive' (V₁) after it and not 'infinitive' (to + V₁). Change 'to submit' into 'submit'.
17. (c) Remove 'as'. 'Think' is not followed by 'as'.
18. (b) 'take test' is correct. Students/candidates take a test and teachers give a test to the students.
19. (c) Use 'attend' after 'than'. Because 'would rather' is followed by 'V₁' and after 'than' the same form 'V₁' will come .
20. (c) 'V₁ + ing' or 'V₁' comes after 'watch'. Hence use 'performing / perform'.
21. (c) Use V₁ after 'let'. Remove 'to'.
22. (b) Change 'help' into 'helping'. Gerund comes after 'deny'.
23. (a) Add 'while I was' before 'walking alone'.
24. (b) Change 'decide' into 'decided'. 'V₂' comes after 'it is time + subject'.
25. (c) 'Steamed' expresses 'a complete action'. 'V₁ + ing' is used as an adjective to show an action still going on. 'Steaming' is the correct form here.
26. (b) Change 'meet' into 'meeting'. Gerund comes after 'remember'.
27. (a) 'V₃' comes after 'have' and 'V₁' comes after 'will'. 'Will' is followed by 'be'. Hence 'V₃' will follow 'have'.
28. (b) We make a mistake. Hence change 'did' into 'made'.
29. (c) Change 'took' into 'were taking' . 'while' denotes a continuous activity.
30. (a) Add 'done' after 'have' .Different forms of verbs should be used in a sentence if needed.
31. (c) Remove 'again'. 'Repeat' should not be followed by 'again' because this will make the sentence superfluous.
32. (c) Change 'sell' to 'sold'. 'V₂' comes after 'it is time + subject'.
33. (b) Change 'steal' to 'stealing'. See pattern 11.
34. (c) Change 'have' to 'had'. The sentence is in past.
35. (b) Remove 'back'.'Return' should not be followed by 'back' because this will make the sentence superfluous.
36. (c) Add 'in' after 'sleep' .If 'infinitive' is used after 'noun' then appropriate preposition should follow 'infinitive'.
37. (b) Add 'themselves' after 'adapt'.
38. (c) 'Looking forward to' is followed by 'V₁+ing'.
39. (b) Remove 'to'.'Plain infinitive' (V₁) comes after 'make'.
40. (b) Change 'send' to 'sent' .'V₃' comes after 'Get'.

9

NOUN

CHAPTER

➤ Noun is the name of a person, place or thing.

➤ They are 5 types of Noun:-

1. Proper noun
2. Common noun
3. Collective noun
4. Material noun
5. Abstract noun

➤ Proper Noun:-

Proper noun is the name of a **particular person, place or thing.**

E.g.: Ram, Delhi, Geeta etc

- (a) Ram is my friend
- (b) I live in Delhi.

➤ Common Noun:-

Common noun is the **name given in common** to every person or thing of the same class or kind.

E.g.: Boy, city, country etc.

- (a) According to the boy, the nearest town is very far.
- (b) The boys are going to the nearest village.

➤ Collective Noun:-

A collective noun is the **name of a number (or collection)** of persons or things taken together and spoken of as a whole.

E.g.: Team, Committee, Army, Jury etc.

Usually collective noun is used as **singular**. They can be used as **plural if there is a division among the members of the collective noun or the members are being talked about.**

- (a) The flock of geese spends most of its time in the pasture.
 s.v.

	Countable Noun		Uncountable Noun
Eg:-	Stars, Seconds, Rupees etc.		Money, time, knowledge etc.
Verb-	Singular with Singular Noun	Plural with Plural Noun	Singular Verb
Adjective-	Many, few, a number of, the number of.		Much, little, quantity of
Article -	A/An/ the can be used.		only 'the' can be used

IMPORTANT POINTS

Rule - 1

➤ Certain **nouns** exist in plural forms only. Thus, "s" cannot be removed from such nouns to make them singular. They take plural verb with them.

E.g.: **Scissors, tongs, pliers, pincers, bellows, trousers, pants, pajamas, shorts, spectacles, goggles, binoculars, sunglasses, gallows, fangs, Alms, amends, archives, arrears, auspices, congratulations, embers, fireworks, lodgings, outskirts, particulars, proceeds, regards, riches, remains, savings, shambles, surroundings, tidings, troops, tactics, thanks, valuables, wages, belongings, braces, etc.**

- Eg.: (a) Where are my **pants**?
(b) Where are the **tongs**?
(c) The **proceeds** were deposited in the bank.
(d) All his **assets** were seized.
(e) **Alms** were given to the beggars.
(f) The **embers** of the fire were still burning.

➤ **Note:-** Wages can be used in both singular & plural form. See the following sentences:-

	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Form</u>	<u>E.g.:</u>
Wages	Labour	Plural	Wages <u>are</u> paid in cash.
	Result	Singular	Wages of hard work <u>is</u> sweet.

Rule - 2

➤ News, Innings, Politics, Summons, Physics, Economics, Ethics, Mathematics, Mumps, Measles, Rickets, Shingles, Billiards, Athletics, Linguistics are certain **nouns** that are **plural in form but singular in meaning**. They take **singular verb**.

- E.g.: (a) No **news** is good news.
(b) **Politics** is a dirty game.
(c) **Economics** is an interesting subject.
(d) **Ethics** demands honesty.

Rule - 3

➤ Cattle, cavalry, infantry, poultry, peasantry, children, gentry, police and people are certain **nouns** that are **singular in form but plural in meaning**. They take **plural verb**.

's' is never used with these nouns.

- Eg.: (a) **Cattle** are grazing in the field.
(b) Our **infantry** have marched forward.
(c) **Police** have arrested the thieves.

Note: 'People' means 'a number of person' while 'peoples' means 'people of difference races'.

Rule - 4

- Scenery, Poetry, Furniture, Advice, Information, Hair, Business, Mischief, Bread, Stationery, Crockery, Luggage, Baggage, Postage, Knowledge, Wastage, Jewellery, Breakage, Equipment, Evidence, Work (works means literary pieces), News, Percentage, Dirt, Dust, Traffic, Electricity, Music, Confectionery, Pottery, Bakery, Behaviour, Word (when used in sense of discussion) Fuel and Cost are uncountable nouns and hence will take singular verb. These nouns will not take article 'A/An', 'many', 'few', 'number of' and 'plural form'.

E.g.: (a) The scenery of Kasmir has enchanted us.
 S.N. S.V.

(b) I passed the exam but the percentage of marks was not good.
S.N. S.V.

(c) The **mischief** committed by him is unpardonable.

(d) His hair is black.

(e) I have some equipment that I needed for the project.

- Such nouns have no plural form but sometimes we need the Singular/plural forms of some of these nouns. The singular/ plural form is made by adding certain words before the uncountable nouns.

E.g.: (a) He gave me a piece of information.

(b) All pieces of information given by her were reliable.

(c) Many kinds of furniture are available in that shop.

(d) I want a few articles of jewellery.

(e) He ate **two slices** of bread.

(f) Please show me some items of office stationery.

(g) The Police have found a strand of hair in the car.

Note: **Monies** is the plural form of money which means amounts of money.
E.g.: Monies have been collected.

E.g.: Monies have been collected and handed to the women's welfare society.

Rule 5 :-

- **Deer, sheep, series, species, fish, crew, team, jury, aircraft, counsel** are certain nouns that are used in both singular and plural form. If they are used in singular sense, they take singular verb and if they are used in plural sense, they take plural verb.

E.g.: (a) A sheep is grazing in the field

(b) Two sheep are grazing in the field.

(c) There are two fish in the pond.

(d) There are many fishes in the aquarium. (Here the word '**fishes**' refers to different species of fish)

Rule 6 :-

- **Hyphenated noun** does not have plural form.

E.g.: (a) He gave me two **hundred-rupees** notes. (change 'one' to 'two')

(b) He stays in **five-stars** hotels. (change 'stars' into 'star')

Rule 7 :-

- Certain nouns/words are used in colloquial English in India which is wrong as the word is literally translated from English to Hindi.

NOUN

E.g.: Wrong

1. Cousin brother / Cousin sister
2. Pick pocketer
3. Good name
4. Big blunder
5. Strong breeze
6. Bad dream
7. Proudy
8. According to me

➤ We generally get confused while using the following nouns:-

- (a) Floor (the flat surface of a room)
- (b) Skill (we acquire it by learning)
- (c) Envy (a wish to possess that the other person has.)

Correct

1. Cousin
2. Pick pocket
3. Name
4. Blunder (means a big mistake)
5. Strong wind (Breeze is always light and gentle)
6. Nightmare
7. Proud
8. In my opinion

(a) Ground (surface of the earth)

(b) Talent (A natural ability)

(c) Jealousy (a feeling that arises out of fear of losing that you have.)

Rule 8 :-

➤ When a **definite numeral adjective** is added before the following nouns, they take singular form .

E.g.: Pair, score, gross, stone, hundred, dozen, thousand, million, billion etc.

E.g.(a) I have **two hundred** rupees only.

- (b) She purchased **three dozen** pencils.
- (c) He has already donated **five thousand** rupees.

➤ If 'of' is used with them, such nouns are used in **plural** form.

E.g.: **dozens of women, hundreds of people, millions of dollars, scores of shops, many pairs of shoes** etc.

- (a) **Hundreds of people** came to see the fair.
- (b) He donated **millions of rupees**.
- (a) I have two **pairs** of shoes.

Rule 9 :-

➤ If a **preposition** comes after a **noun** and then the same **noun is repeated**, the noun should be used in singular form.

E.g.:(a) **Town after town** was devastated.

(b) **Row upon row** of marble looks beautiful.

(c) He enquired from **door to door**.

(d) **Ship after ship** is arriving.

Towns after towns, rows upon rows, doors to doors, or ships after ships must not be used.

Rule 10 :-

➤ Nouns like **teacher, student, child, clerk, advocate, worker, writer, author, leader, musician** etc are common gender nouns. They are used for both male and female. They are also called dual genders. Thus '**His/he/him**' is used for such nouns (When such nouns are used in singular).

- (1) Every **leader** should perform **his** duty.
- (2) A **teacher** should practise what **he** preaches.

Words Denoting Groups

1. A **band** of musicians.
2. A **board** of directors, etc.
3. A **bevy** of girls, women, officers etc.
4. A **bunch** of grapes, keys, etc.
5. A **bundle** of sticks and hay.
6. A **caravan** of merchants, pilgrims, travellers.
7. A **chain/range** of mountains or hills.
8. A **choir** of singers.
9. A **class** of students.
10. A **retinue** of servants/ attendants.
11. A **clump/grove** of trees.
12. A **code** of laws.
13. A **cluster / constellation/ galaxy** of stars.
14. A **company/regiment/army** of soldiers.
15. A **convoy** of ships, cars etc. moving under an escort.
16. A **course or series** of lectures.
17. A **crew** of sailors.
18. A **crowd/mob** of people.
19. A **curriculum** of studies.
20. A **flight** of steps, stairs.
21. A **fleet** of ships or motorcars.
22. A **flock** of geese, sheep and birds.
23. A **gang** of robbers, labourers.
24. A **garland/bunch/bouquet** of flowers.
25. A **heap** of ruins, sand, stones.
26. A **herd** of cattle.
27. A **litter** of puppies.
28. A **pack** of hounds, cards.
29. A **pair** of shoes, scissors, compasses, trousers.
30. A **series** of events.
31. A **sheaf** of corn, arrows.
32. A **swarm** of ants, bees or flies.
33. A **train** of carriages, followers etc.
34. A **troop** of horses (cavalry) scouts; etc.
35. A **volley** of shots, bullets
36. A **forum** of people (discussing issues)
37. A **congregation** of people (discussing religious issues)

Noun Gender

Gender is divided into four categories:-

1. **Masculine Gender:** denotes male sex.
E.g.: **Tiger, Power, Father, Lion, Summer, Time, Thunder, Violence, Sun** etc.
2. **Feminine Gender:** denotes female sex.
E.g.: **Tigress, Woman, Lioness, Mother, Sister, Peace, Nature, Earth, Goddess.**
3. **Common Gender:** denotes both male and female.

NOUN

E.g.: Child, baby, teacher, servant, student, cousin, infant, thief, neighbour etc.
4. Neuter Gender: used for non-living things. It has no sex. (It is neither male nor female)

E.g.: Copy, Book, Room, Paper, Television, Box

Rules for changing masculine nouns into feminine nouns:-

Rule 1:-

Few masculine nouns change to feminine by adding 'ess' -

Masculine

Author

Host

Jew

Mayor

Poet

Tutor

Shepherd

Giant

Heir

Lion

Priest

Tailor

Feminine

Authoress

Hostess

Jewess

Mayoress

Poetess

Tutoress

Shepherd

Giantess

Heiress

Lioness

Priestess

Tailoress

Rule 2:-

In case of some nouns 'ess' is added many times by removing the last vowel.

Masculine

Actor

Benefactor

Hunter

Prince

Waiter

Ambassador

Negro

Tiger

Director

Feminine

Actress

Benefactress

Huntress

Princess

Waitress

Ambassadress

Negress

Tigress

Directress

Rule 3:-

In few cases the masculine noun can be changed a bit and then 'ess' is put at the end to make it feminine.

Masculine

Emperor

Governor

Duke

God

Master

Sorcerer (Magician)

Feminine

Empress

Governess

Duchess

Goddess

Mistress

Sorceress

Rule 4:-

In few cases 1st or 2nd word of compound masculine noun are changed (few second).

Masculine

Man-servant
Washerman
Buck Rabbit
Brother-In-Law
He-bear
Jack-ass
Head master
Milkman
Post master
Peacock
Landlord
Step father
He-goat
Cock-sparrow
Dog-wolf
Step-brother
Grandson
Bull-calf
Father-in-law

Feminine

Maid-servant
Washerwoman
Doe-Rabbit
Sister-In-Law
She-bear
Jenny-ass
Head mistress
Milkmald
Post mistress
Peahen
Landlady
Step mother
She-goat
Hen-sparrow
Bitch-wolf
Step-sister
Granddaughter
Cow-calf
Mother-in-law

Rule 5:-

Masculine / feminine gender of few foreign words & other words are given below. They are not changed according to any special rule.

Masculine

Administrator
Executor
Lad
Prosecutor
Sultan
Boar
Brother
Colt
Dog
Buck
Earl
Monk
Gander
Hart
Horse
King
Man
Mr.

Feminine

Administratrix
Executrix
Lass
Proscutrix
Sultana
Sow
Sister
Filly
Bitch
Doe
Countess
Nun
Goose
Roe
Mare
Queen
Woman
Miss

NOUN

Sheep	Ewe
Son	Daughter
Uncle	Aunt
Fox	Vixen
Ox	Cow
Czar	Czarina
Hero	Heroine
Testator	Testatrix
Bachelor	Maid
Boy	Girl
Cock	Hen
Drake	Duck
Drone	Bee
Bull	Cow
Father	Mother
Bridegroom	Bride
Gentleman	Lady
He	She
Husband	Wife
Lord	Lady
Male	Female
Nephew	Niece
Sir	Madam/ Dame
Widower	Widow
Wizard	Witch

Noun-Number (Singular-Plural)

Singular Noun:- denotes one place, person, thing. E.g.: Boy, girl, table, chair etc.

Plural Noun:- denotes more than one places, persons or things. E.g.: cities, boys, tables, chairs, etc.

➤ Changing singular into plural

Rule 1:-

Few nouns are made plural by adding 's'.

E.g.: boy, girl, kite, telephone etc.

Rule 2:-

Few nouns which have s, ss, ch, sh, z or x at the end are made plural by adding "es" at the end.

Singular

Bus
Watch
Ass
Fix
Church
Fox

Plural

Buses
Watches
Asses
Fixes
Churches
Foxes

Switch	Switches
Canvases	Canvases
Class	Classes
Quiz	Quizes
Tax	Taxes
Box	Boxes
Dish	Dishes
Coach	Coaches

A few exceptions

Stomach	Stomachs
Locus	Loci
Radius	Radii
Ox	Oxen

Rule: A few nouns that end in 'O' and have 'consontant' preceeding it are made plural by adding 'es'.

Singular

Hero	Heroes
Mango	Mangoes
Cargo	Cargoes
Potato	Potatoes
Mosquito	Mosquitoes
Echo	Echoes

Plural

Dynamo	DYNAMOS
Ratio	Ratios
Solo	Solos
Memento	Mementos
Piano	Pianos
Photo	Photos

Rule 4:-

Nouns ending with double vowel are made plural by adding 's'.

Singular

Bee	Bees
Tree	Trees
Portfolio	Portfolios
Zoo	Zoos
Radio	Radios
Woes	Woes

Plural

Rule 5:-

Nouns that end in 'Y' and have consonants preceeding 'y' are made plural by changing 'y' into 'ies' .

Singular

Cry	Cries
Family	Families
City	Cities

Plural

NOUN

Lorry	Lorries
Country	Countries
Pony	Ponies
Reply	Replies

Rule 6:

Nouns that end in 'Y' and have a vowel before 'y' are made plural by adding 's'.

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
Key	Keys
Ray	Rays
Way	Ways
Toy	Toys
Donkey	Donkeys
Monkey	Monkeys
Valley	Valleys
Storey	Storeys

Rule 7:

Nouns that end in 'f/fe' are made plural by changing 'f/fe' into 'ves'.

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
Calf	Calves
Wife	Wives
Wolf	Wolves
Leaf	Leaves
Shelf	Shelves
Half	Halves
Thief	Thieves
Life	Lives
Knife	Knives
Loaf	Loaves

Exception:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
Belief	Beliefs
Cliff	Cliffs
Safe	Safes
Turf	Turfs
Chief	Chiefs
Dwarf	Dwarfs
Gulf	Gulfs
Roof	Roofs
Scarf	Scarfs
Brief	Briefs
Grief	Griefts

Rule 8:-

Compound nouns are made plural by adding 's' to the main word.

Singular

Brother-in-law
Bed-room
Commander-in-chief
Step-daughter
Maid-servant
Pea-hen
Peacock
Mother-in-law
Sister-in-law
Member of Parliament
Man hater
Woman lover
Man lover

Plural

Brothers-in-law
Bed-rooms
Commanders-in-chief
Step-daughters
Maid-servants
Pea-hens
Peacocks
Mothers-in-law
Sisters-in-law
Members of Parliament
Man haters
Woman lovers
Man lovers

Rule 9:

In the following nouns, the inner vowels are changed to make them plural in form.

Singular

Man
Foot
Mouse
Goose
Woman
Tooth
Oasis
Louse

Plural

Men
Feet
Mice
Geese
Women
Teeth
Oases
Lice

Rule 10:

In the following nouns 'en' is added to change them into plural.

Singular

Child
Ox

plural

Children
Oxen

Rule 11:

A few nouns have two plural forms, which have different meanings.

1. **Brother**
 - (a) **Brothers** - sons of the same parents
 - (b) **Brethren** - members of society/community/religious group.
2. **Cloth**
 - (a) **Cloths** - unstitched cloth
 - (b) **Clothes** - stitched clothes (garments)

NOUN

3. **Die**

- (a) **Dies** - stamps for printing and coining.
(b) **Dice** - small cubes used in games.

4. **Index**

- (a) **Indexes** - tables of contents in a book.
(b) **Indices** - signs used in algebra.

➤ **Some typical plural nouns**

- (a) Some nouns (of Latin origin) ending in 'um' are singular. They are made plural by replacing 'um' by 'a'

Singular

Datum
Ovum
Dictum
Memorandum
Stratum
Agendum

Plural (of Plural form)

Data
Ova
Dicta
Memoranda
Strata
Agenda

Note:

Some nouns (of Latin origin) end in 'um' but 's' is added at their end to change them into plural form.

Singular

Asylum
Museum
Premium
Forum
Pendulum

Plural (of Plural form)

Asylums
Museums
Premiums
Forums
Pendulums

- (b) Some nouns (of Latin origin) end in 'us'. They are made plural by replacing 'us' by 'i'.

Singular

Radius
Syllabus

Plural

Radii
Syllabi

- (c) Some nouns (of Greek origin) end in 'is'. They are made plural by changing 'is' into 'es'

Singular

Analysis
Crisis
Hypothesis
Basis
Thesis

Plural

Analyses
Crises
Hypotheses
Bases
Theses

- (d) Few Greeks words ending in 'on' are made plural by replacing 'on' by 'a'.

Singular

Phenomenon
Criterion

Plural

Phenomena
Criteria

- (e) A few nouns are of a single letter, a digit or some words.

Singular

If
5
BA
But
10
MA
I
P
ATM
T
MP
UPC

Plural

Ifs
5s
BAs
Buts
10s
MAs
I's
P's
ATMs
T's
MPs
UPCs

- (f) Singular and plural forms of a few nouns have entirely different meanings. Hence they must be used carefully.

Singular

Air
Return
Force
Iron
Sand
Abuse
Good(adj)
Water
Work
Fruit
Wit

Plural

Airs
Returns
Forces
Irons
Sands
Abuses
Goods
Waters
Works
Fruits
Wits

Meaning (of plural form)

False way of behaving
Calculation of income
Police
Shackles
Desert
Evil words
Movable property
Sea
Literary pieces
Result
Intelligence

- (g) Some nouns in singular forms have one meaning, but have multiple meanings in plural.

Singular

Custom
Manner
Pain
Quarter
Letter

Plural

Customs
Manners
Pains
Quarters
Letters

Meaning (In plural form)

Duty, beliefs
Ways, etiquette
Trouble taking
's, residence
Alphabet, literature, letter

➤ Use of 'of' / 'apostrophe' with nouns

- (A) Apostrophe is used in the following ways to express possession.

Living things

- E.g.: (a) Mohan's book
(b) A cow's horn
(c) A woman's purse



(B) If a plural noun ends in 's/es', 's' is not added while using apostrophe with the plural form.

E.g.: (a) Boys' college
(b) Girls' school

(c) Working women's hostel

Note: If plural form is different from singular form, 's' comes with both the forms.

E.g.: (a) Child's play, Children's school.
(b) Man's duty, Men's wear.

(C) When noun ends in hissing sound, 's' is not added after apostrophe.

E.g.: (a) For peace' sake
(b) for conscience' sake
(c) for goodness' sake
(d) Ganesh' idol
(e) For Jesus' sake

Note: God's sake

(D) Apostrophe is not used with possessive pronouns (his, hers, yours, ours, theirs)

E.g.: yours faithfully, yours truly

(E) Apostrophe can come only at the end of the compound nouns.

(a) Commander-in-chief's orders.
(b) My son-in-law's sister.

(F) Apostrophe is not used with non-living things. We use 'of'.

E.g.: Table's leg (x)
Leg of table (✓)

Exceptions:

(1) When a non-living thing is personified

E.g.: (a) Sun's fury
(b) Nature's love

(2) Nouns related to 'time/weight/place'

E.g.: (a) a day's leave
(b) arm's length
(c) a pound's weight

(3) With respectable nouns

E.g.: (a) Court's order
(b) At duty's call

(4) With phrases

E.g.: (a) at wit's end
(b) at a stone's throw

(5) With heavenly objects

E.g.: (a) Earth's atmosphere

(G) Do not use double apostrophe.

E.g. (a) My wife's secretary's mother has expired. (x)

The mother of my wife's secretary has expired. (✓)

(b) Mrs. Sharma the society's chairman's proposal was rejected by the members of the society. (x)

The proposal of Mrs. Sharma, the chairperson of society, was rejected by the members of the society. (✓)

(H) "s' is used with anybody / nobody / everybody / somebody / anyone / someone / no one / everyone.

E.g.: (a) Everyone's concern is no one's concern.

(b) Everybody's business is nobody's business.

➤ If 'else' is used with anybody / nobody etc, 'apostrophe' will be used.

E.g.: (a) I can rely on your words, not somebody else's.

(b) I obey your orders and nobody else's.

(Here, it will be wrong to write somebody's else / nobody's else.)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) My sister / (b) has read / (c) pages after pages of the Bible. / (d) No error
2. (a) I went to the temple / (b) with my parents, aunts / (c) and cousin sisters. / (d) No error
3. (a) He / (b) takes pain / (c) over his work. / (d) No error
4. (a) The Manager put forward / (b) a number of criterions / (c) for the post. / (d) No error
5. (a) I like / (b) the poetries / (c) of Byron and Shelley. / (d) No error
6. (a) The beautiful / (b) surrounding of the place / (c) enchanted me. / (d) No error
7. (a) No porter being available / (b) he carried / (c) all his luggages himself. / (d) No error
8. (a) The table's legs / (b) have been / (c) elaborately carved. / (d) No error
9. (a) The sceneries / (b) of Kashmir / (c) is very charming. / (d) No error
10. (a) The driver showed / (b) great talent in keeping / (c) the damaged car under control. / (d) No error
11. (a) When I entered the bedroom / (b) I saw a snake crawling / (c) on the ground. / (d) No error
12. (a) Alms / (b) are given / (c) to the poors. / (d) No error
13. (a) Lasers are / (b) indispensable tools / (c) for the delicate eyes surgery. / (d) No error
14. (a) If you have a way with words / (b) a good sense of design and administration ability / (c) you may enjoy working in high pressure world of advertising. / (d) No error
15. (a) Last week's sharp hike in the wholesale price of beef / (b) is a strong indication for / (c) higher meat costs to come. / (d) No error
16. (a) Whenever he goes to Mumbai / (b) he stays in / (c) five-stars hotels. / (d) No error
17. (a) The company has ordered / (b) some / (c) new equipments. / (d) No error
18. (a) A strong breeze / (b) blew his / (c) cap off. / (d) No error.
19. (a) One of the firmest belief among the Hindus is that / (b) Karma affects their / (c) life and also the life after death. / (d) No error
20. (a) He was advised to take / (b) two spoonsful of / (c) medicine three times a day. / (d) No error

NOUN

21. (a) It is a big blunder/(b) but we had / (c) to ignore it/(d) No error
22. (A) The police have received / (b) two important informations / (c) that can help them solve the triple murder case (E) No error
23. (a) The sheafs / (b) of the wheat plants were too heavy / (c) for the weak farmer to carry them on his head./ (d) No error
24. (a) The population of India / (b) is divided into two classes- / (c) Haves and Haves not./ (d) No error
25. (a) All his sister-in laws / (b) are extremely co-operative / (c) and she doesn't miss her real sisters at all./ (d) No error
26. (a) Envy strikes a woman / (b) when she sees her husband / (c) talking to another woman./ (d) No error
27. (a) Two summons have been issued by the court / (b) but he has not / (c) yet appeared before the court./ (d) No error
28. (a) The Vaidya's / (b) have been living here / (c) for about a decade./ (d) No error.
29. (a) You are among those/ (b) man who earned name and fame not by / (c) chance but by hard work ./ (d) No error
30. (a) Children are playing / (b) and making mischiefs/ (c) as their holidays have started./ (d) No error.
31. (a) Sheeps are economically useful/ (b) and so they are reared/ (c) for wool and meat./ (d) No error.
32. (a) I read the letter/ (b) and made him aware/ (c) of its content./ (d) No error.
33. (a) I shall not go to party tonight/ (b) since I have many works to complete/ (c) before I give presentation tomorrow./ (d) No error.
34. (a) One must be always/ (b) true to one's words/ (c) if one wants to get respect from everyone./ (d) No error.
35. (a) Even after the enactment of several Acts and Provisions /(b) we can see five years old boys/ (c) working in hazardous factories./ (d) No error.
36. (a) The fan's blade / (b) has broken/ (c) and we must buy a new fan before disposing it of./ (d) No error.
37. (a) She wears spectacle/ (b) and so she was unable to see the gangster/ (c) that attacked her last night./ (d) No error.
38. (a) All the furnitures have been/ (b) sold for a song/ (c) as we were in a hurry to leave the town./ (d) No error.
39. (a) The angry mob/ (b) attacked the police officers/ (c) when they came to raze the illegal construction./ (d) No error.
40. (a) They left/ (b) their luggages/ (c) at home by mistake and went to the railway station./ (d) No error.
41. (a) The car could not/ (b) ascend the steep hill/ (c) because it was in the wrong gears./ (d) No error.
42. (a) The ticket window/ (b) remained closed / (c) throughout the day./ (d) No error.
43. (a) Satyajit Ray, who conceived, co-authored / (b) and directed a number of good films, was/ (c) one of India's most talented film maker./ (d) No error.
44. (a) I think this/ (b) is not your book. / (c) It is some body's else./ (d) No error.
45. (a) You should not put/ (b) your sign on any paper / (c) that you haven't read./ (d) No error.

46. (a) Towns after towns were / (b) conquered / (c) by him but he found no peace. / (d) No error.
47. (a) When we reached the fair/ (b) we found that there / (c) was no place to stand. / (d) No error.
48. (a) All the evidences were/ (b) against him and he was / (c) held guilty. / (d) No error.
49. (a) My cousin brother is a cheater/ (b) and he / (c) cheats his family members and friends too./ (d) No error.
50. (a) The committee/ (b) could not come to/ (c) a final conclusion. / (d) No error.
51. (a) The cattle in the meadow/ (b) was terrified to hear/ (c) the roar of a lion which appeared to be wild with anger./ (d) No error.
52. (a) There should be/ (b) no furnitures/ (c) in my room. / (d) No error.
53. (a) That house/ (b) is built of/ (c) stones. / (d) No error.
54. (a) Santosh lives/ (b) by the principals/ (c) he professes. / (d) No error.
55. (a) The astronomer/ (b) who predicts the future/ (c) has arrived. / (d) No error.
56. (a) He told me that/ (b) it was/ (c) his friend's Sankar's house. / (d) No error.

Answers with explanation

1. (c) If a noun comes on the either side of a preposition, the noun will come in singular form. 'Page after Page' is correct.
2. (c) Change 'cousin sisters' into 'cousins' .
3. (b) 'take pains' is correct. It means 'to work hard'.
4. (b) 'Criteria' is plural of 'criterion'.
5. (b) 'Poetry' is an uncountable noun. Hence it is singular and it does not have any plural form.
6. (b) Surrounding is the 'ing' form of verb 'surround'. Use 'Surroundings'. It means the area around someone or something.
7. (c) Change 'luggages' into 'luggage'. It is an uncountable noun. Hence it must be in singular form.
8. (a) 'Table's legs' should be changed into 'legs of table'. ''s' is generally not used with non-living things.
9. (a) Change 'sceneries' into 'scenery'. Scenery is an uncountable noun.
10. (b) Change 'talent' into 'skill'. 'Talent' is the natural ability to do something. 'Skill' requires special training and knowledge.
11. (c) 'Ground' means the surface of earth. Change 'ground' into 'floor'.
12. (c) Change 'the poors' into 'The poor'. 'The poor' means the deprived class.
13. (c) 'Eyes surgery' should be changed into 'eye surgery'. 'Eyes'(noun) when used as an adjective should not be used in plural form.
14. (b) 'Administration' is a noun. We need an adjective form here which is 'administrative'.
15. (c) Change 'costs' into 'cost'. Cost as noun is uncountable and it has no plural form.
16. (c) 'Five-star' is a hyphenated noun which is not used in plural form.
17. (c) 'Equipment' is an uncountable noun and has no plural form.
18. (a) 'Breeze' is gentle. 'Strong wind' is the appropriate word here.
19. (a) The 'noun' that comes after 'one of the' must be plural. 'One of the firmest beliefs' is the correct form.
20. (b) Use 'spoonfuls'.

NOUN

21. (a) 'Blunder' means 'big mistake'. Hence 'big blunder' is superfluous.
22. (b) 'Information' is an uncountable noun. To make it countable and plural use 'pieces of information'.
23. (a) Plural form of 'sheaf' is 'sheaves' and not 'sheafs'.
24. (c) 'Have nots' is a coined word which means 'deprived class'.
25. (a) 'Sisters-in-law' is the correct plural form of 'sister-in-law'.
26. (a) 'Jealousy' is the fear to lose the person/thing that we have. Envy means 'resentful desire of something possessed by someone else'.
27. (a) 'Summons' is singular in form. Its plural is 'summonses'.
28. (a) Use 'Vaidyas' as we are talking about the members of the family with their last name 'vaidya'. Remove 'apostrophe'.
29. (b) 'Those' being plural will take plural noun 'men'.
30. (b) 'Mischief' is an uncountable noun. It has no plural form.
31. (a) 'Sheep' has no plural form but can be used in plural sense.
32. (c) Change 'content' into 'contents'. It means 'that are contained in a piece of writing or speech'.
33. (b) 'Work' is an uncountable noun. 'Many pieces of work' is the correct usage.
34. (b) 'True to one's word' should be used.
35. (b) Use 'five year old boys'. Here 'year' will be in singular form as it qualifies noun 'boys' and acts as an adjective.
36. (a) Change 'fan's blade' into 'blade of fan' .
37. (a) Change 'spectacle' into 'spectacles'.
38. (a) Change 'furnitures' into 'furniture'. 'Furniture' being an uncountable noun will take singular verb.
39. (a) 'Angry mob' is superfluous. 'Mob' means 'angry group of people'.
40. (b) Change 'luggages' into 'luggage'.
41. (c) Use 'wrong gear'. Only one gear is functional in a car at a time.
42. (a) Change 'window' into 'counter'.
43. (c) The noun after 'one of' is plural in form. Hence 'one of the film makers' is correct.
44. (c) 'Somebody else's' is correct.
45. (b) 'Sign' is a verb. Use noun 'signature' here.
46. (a) 'Town after town' is the correct form. See sentence 1.
47. (c) Use 'no room'. 'Room' means 'enough empty space for people or things to be fitted in'.
48. (a) 'Evidence' is an uncountable noun. It has no plural form. Use singular verb 'was'.
49. (a) Use 'cousin' and 'cheat'. 'Cousin brother' and 'cheater' are words formed in India due to Indianization of English language.
50. (c) Remove 'final'. 'Conclusion' is always final.
51. (b) 'Cattle' is a plural noun. Change 'was' into 'were'.
52. (b) 'Furniture' has no plural form. Remove 's'.
53. (c) Change 'stones' into 'stone'.
54. (b) Change 'principals' into 'principles'.
55. (a) Change 'Astronomer' into 'astrologer'. 'Astrologer' is one who predicts future.
56. (c) Change friend's into friend. Double apostrophe cannot be used in a sentence.

CHAPTER ||

- A word used in place of Noun is called a **Pronoun**.
- In order to avoid repetition of a noun in a sentence, pronoun is used.

E.g.: Mrs. Shukla, being a good teacher, she is liked by all the students. (**remove 'she'**)
'She' is a Pronoun and must be used in place of the Noun (Mrs. Shukla) and not with the noun.)

TYPES OF PRONOUNS :

1. **Personal Pronouns** : Pronouns that stands for the three persons (explained later)
I, me, we, us, you, he, him, she, her, it, they, them.
2. **Possessive Pronouns** : Pronouns that show possession.
Mine, ours, yours, his, hers, theirs
3. **Demonstrative Pronouns** : Words used for Nouns to point at something/someone.
This, that, these, those
4. **Distributive Pronouns** : Words used for individuals or objects referring to them as one at a time.
Each, either, neither, every, none etc.
5. **Reciprocal Pronouns** : each other, one another.
6. **Reflexive Pronouns** : Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself
7. **Emphatic or Emphasizing Pronouns** : Such pronouns are used to lay stress on the subject. Examples:- Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself

E.g.: You, **yourself** are responsible for your problems.
He hurt **himself**.

8. **Indefinite Pronouns** : Words used for nouns in vague or general meaning.
Everybody, somebody, nobody, anybody, everybody, someone, no one, anyone, everything, something, nothing, anything, all, some, any, both, another, much, few, little.
9. **Relative Pronouns** :Words used for nouns to show them 'relating to'.
Who, whom, whose, which, that etc.

The Case of Personal Pronouns		Subject	Object	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns
First Person	Singular	I	me	my	mine
	Plural	We	us	our	ours
Second Person	Singular/ Plural	You	you	your	yours
	Singular	She, He, It	her, him, it	her, his, its	hers, his, ---
Third Person	Plural	They	them	their	theirs

10. **Interrogative Pronouns**:- Words used for nouns to ask questions.
Who, whom, whose, which etc.

➤ **Look at the pronouns in detail:**

1. **Use of Personal Pronoun:**

They are used as **first person**, **second person** and **third person**. They are called **personal pronouns**.

PERSONAL PRONOUN

Nominative Case	Objective Case	Nominative Case	Objective Case
I	me	He	him
She	her	It	it
They	them	You	you
We	us		

Rule 1:-

- Verb is Preceded by the **nominative form** of Pronoun and followed by the **Objective case**.

E.g.: I teach him. (Active Voice)
 Sub. Verb Obj.
 before after

He is taught by me. (Passive Voice)
 before after

Rule 2:-

- If all the three persons or two out of three persons come in a single sentence, the order is 231.
1. You, he and I shall study for the exam. (231)
 2. He and I have finished our work. (31)
 3. You and he have done a great job. (23)

Rule 3:-

- If all the three persons or two out of three persons come in a single sentence and something wrong is talked about or some mistake done by the persons has been accepted, the order is 123.

E.g.: (1) **I, you** and **he** have made a mistake. (123)
(2) **You** and **he** have done this mischief. (23)

Rule 4:-

- If Pronouns are in plural form, the order should be 123.

E.g.: **We, you and they** should now get down to work.

Rule 5:-

- An objective case comes after 'let', 'like', 'between....and' , 'but', 'except' and 'all prepositions'.

E.g.: 1. Let me do this work.

2. There is no problem between she and I. (x)
There is no problem between her and me. (✓)

3. Everybody but him was present for the meeting. (✓)

4. He laughed at I. (x)
He laughed at me. (✓)

5. Everyone attended the party except he. (x)
Everyone attended the party except him. (✓)

Rule 6:-

- If there is a comparison between two nominative cases, the Pronoun of the nominative case is used after as/than.

Sentence 5 means that 'I know you as much as I know him.'

- From the above examples it is clear that a subject is compared with subject and an object is compared with object.

Rule 7:-

- If a sentence starts with 'It' followed by any form of 'be' the pronoun that follows 'be' must be in '**nominative case**'.

PRONOUNS

E.g.: It is I who am to blame.
Nominative case

Use of it-

Rule 1:-

- 'It' is used for non-living things, animals, infants and insects. 'They' is the plural form of 'it'.

E.g.: 1. America is a developed country. **It** is a super power.
2. Sri Lanka and Pakistan are developing countries. **They** are facing internal terrorism.

Rule 2:-

- 'It' is used to denote **time, weather, temperature, distance** or any other natural event. It is used only as an **introductory subject**. In this case 'it' is called 'empty it' as it has no meaning.

E.g.: It is raining. It is morning.
It is winter. It is 6 o'clock.
It is March. It is Monday.

Rule 3:-

- It is also used in place of **Infinitive clause** and **Gerund**.

E.g.: It is easy to solve it.
It is said that virtue is its own reward.

Rule 4:-

- 'It' is used in a sentence as a subject to emphasize the Noun or the Pronoun.

E.g.: It was he who made this mistake.
Pron.

Rule 5:-

- "It" is used to introduce a phrase/clause.

E.g.: That the record will break today is probable.
Clause

Meaning- It is probable that the record will break today.

➤ Difference between 'This' and 'It'.

'This' is used to point towards a **person or thing** or for the introduction of a **person or when the singular object or person is placed at a near distance**. Here 'It' will not come.

E.g.: This is a book.
This is a pen.
This is Rohan, my cousin.

- It denotes **distance/time/weather** etc. Here 'this' is not used for such purpose.

E.g.: It is 10 a.m.
It is winter.
It is night.

Note: A Noun can be used after 'this'.

E.g.: **This book** is mine.
Noun

- 'It' is a Pronoun and hence a Noun cannot be used after 'it' as 'Pronoun' and 'Noun' cannot come together.
- **It book** is mine. (✗)
It is my book. (✓)
- 'It' is used for singular noun/non-living thing or an infant.

E.g.: 1. **It** is a splendid moment.
2. The baby is cute but **It** is crying a lot.

Nominative Case	Possessive Adjective	Possessive Pronoun
I	my	mine
We	our	ours
You	your	yours
He	his	his
She	her	hers
It	its	✗
They	their	theirs

Rule 1:-

- Possessive pronouns are not used before nouns.

E.g.: Ours school was closed for four days. (✗)
Noun

Our school was closed for four days. (✓)

Note: (i) Possessive adjectives are used before nouns.

E.g.: This is **my book**.

(ii) If the noun has already been mentioned, possessive pronoun is used to avoid repetition.

E.g.: This book is **mine**.

Possessive pronouns	Meaning (Possessive Adjective + Noun)
Mine	My + noun
Ours	Our + noun
Yours	Your + noun
His	His + noun
Hers	Her + noun
Theirs	Their + noun

(iii) 'His' is used as both Possessive Adjective and Possessive Pronoun.

(iv) 'Its' is used as Possessive Adjective but not as Possessive Pronoun.

Rule 2:-

- **Possessive Pronoun** can be used in any sentence as the subject of the verb.

PRONOUN

E.g.: (a) Yours is a new car.
S.V.

Meaning - Your car is a new car.

(b) Hers is a beautiful house.
S.V.

Meaning - Her house is a beautiful house.

Rule 3:-

➤ Possessive Pronoun can be used as the object of a verb.

E.g.: (a) He has lost my books as well as yours.
Verb

Meaning - He has lost my book as well as your book.

(b) Save **your time** and mine too.
Obj.

Meaning - Save your time and my time too.

Rule 4:-

➤ Possessive Pronoun can be used as the object of a preposition.

E.g.: (1) I prefer your help to her. (✗)
Prep. Obj.

I prefer your help to hers. (✓)
Prep. Obj.

(2) Your house is better than my. (✗)
Prep. Obj.

Your house is better than mine. (✓)
Prep. Obj.

Rule 5:-

➤ We do not use possessive pronouns with separation, leave, excuse, mention, report, pardon, sight, favour.

E.g.: (a) Your separation is very painful to me. (Use 'separation from you')
(b) At his sight the robbers fled. ('At the sight of him' is right)
(c) I need your favour please. (Use 'favour of you/ favour from you')
(d) She did make mention of you. (✓)

Rule 6:-

➤ In Possessive Pronouns apostrophe is not used before 's'.

The use of your's, her's, it's is wrong.

E.g.: The bear had a ring around it's nose. (✗)
The bear had a ring around its nose. (✓)

Rule 7:-

Gerund is used after Possessive Adjective. In such cases never use Possessive Pronoun or Objective case of Pronoun.

- E.g.: (a) I was confident of **my** winning the match.
(b) She was not confident of **her** doing well in the examination.
(c) She is sure of my/my/me/mine helping others ('my' is the correct choice)

➤ **Use of Reflexive Pronouns:**

E.g.: The poor man poisoned **himself** and his children.

Rule 1:-

➤ Use Reflexive Pronoun after **acquit, avail, reconcile, amuse, resign, avenge, exert, apply, adapt, adjust, pride, absent and enjoy.**

- E.g.: (a) The officers **acquitted themselves** well during the crisis.
(b) She has **reconciled herself** to the demands of her in-laws.
(c) The students **exert themselves** a lot at the time of examination.
(d) You will have to **apply yourself** to this task whole-heartedly.
(e) I **pride myself** on being able to work smoothly under pressure too.
(f) You should **avail yourself** of this opportunity.

Note: Look at the sentences below-

- (a) They enjoyed the party. (**no need of reflexive pronoun**)
(b) They enjoyed during vacation. (**Use 'themselves' after 'enjoyed'**)

➤ If 'enjoy' is followed by an object, we do not use a reflexive pronoun, but if the object is not mentioned, we use a reflexive pronoun.

Note: Look at the sentence below:

- (a) He was **absent**. (✓)
(b) He **absented herself**. (✓)

➤ If **absent** is used as a verb, a **reflexive pronoun** is used.

Rule 2:-

➤ **Keep, stop, turn, qualify, bathe, move, rest and hide do not take a reflexive pronoun after them.**

- E.g.: (a) You should keep **yourself** away from bad boys. (**remove yourself**)
(b) He hid **himself** in the room. (**remove himself**)

Rule 3:-

➤ Reflexive pronoun cannot be used as a subject or an object of a sentence unless a noun/pronoun comes before it.

- E.g.: (a) Myself Ram from Delhi. ('I am Ram from Delhi' is correct)
(b) Yourself and he reached there in time. (Use 'you' in place of 'yourself')
(c) I myself did this work. (✓)
(d) Rohit will do the work for myself. (Use me)

USE OF DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUN:

Rule 1:-

- Either denotes choice between two.

E.g.: Either of these three friends is naughty. (x)

E.g.: Either of these two pens is red. (✓)

Note: 'Any' or 'One' is used to choose, between many persons or things.

E.g.: One of these boys is naughty. (✓)

Rule 2:-

- Neither denotes 'none out of two things/persons'.

E.g.: Neither of the two girls is active. (✓)

- None denotes 'none out of more than two things/persons'.

E.g.: Neither of his four sons looked after him. (x)

None of his four sons looked after him. (✓)

USE OF RECIPROCAL PRONOUN:

'Each other' and 'one another' are called Reciprocal Pronouns. They denote mutual relationship.

Rule 1:-

- Each other denotes mutual relationship between people/things while one another denotes mutual relationship among more than two things/persons.

E.g.: (a) He was so afraid that his knees knocked one another. (use each other in place of one another)

(b) After the farewell the students of Class XII bade each other good bye. (use 'one another' in place of 'each other')

USE OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN:

- Demonstrative case is used to point towards a noun/nouns.

E.g.: This, that, these, those, such, the same.

- If they come before a noun, they are called demonstrative adjectives.

Rule 1:-

- 'This' is used for a singular object /person that is placed closer. 'This' is singular. 'These' is plural.

'These' is used for more than one object /person that are placed far.

E.g.: This is a cat.
S. N.

These are cats.
P. N.

Rule 2:-

- 'That' is used for a distant thing/person. 'That' is singular.

E.g.: **That** is a book.
S. N.

Those are books.
S. N.

- To avoid repetition of singular noun 'that' is used. In case of a plural noun 'those' is used.

E.g.: (a) The climate of Pune is better than **that of** Mumbai (it means climate of Mumbai).
 (b) The streets of Delhi are wider than **those of** Mumbai. (it means the streets of Mumbai).

Rule 3:-

In a sentence 'one' is used to avoid the repetition of a singular countable noun. 'Ones' is used to avoid the repetition of plural countable nouns.

Do not use one's in place of ones.

E.g.:

- (1) **This** is the new version, that is an old **one**.
- (2) **These** are new books but those are old **ones**.

USE OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS:

Those pronouns that connect a clause or phrase to a noun or a pronoun is called a Relative Pronoun.

E.g.: **who, which, that, what, why etc.**

E.g.: I met Veena, **who** was returning from school.

Rule 1:-

- Relative Pronouns (**who/which/that**) are used as a **subject in subordinate clause**.

E.g.: The boy who _{Subj.} came here is a player.

Rule 2:-

- **Relative Pronouns (whom/which/that)** are used as **object in subordinate clause**.

E.g.: I have a son whom _{Obj.} I love _{Verb} very much.

Rule 3:-

- If two **antecedents** are joined by 'and' one being a human and the other being a non living thing / animal, a **relative pronoun 'that'** is used.

E.g.: The man and his dog **that** I saw yesterday have been kidnapped.

PRONOUNS

Rule 4:-

- 'That' is used after a superlative degree.

E.g.: Mr. Mishra is the most laborious man **that** I have ever seen.

Rule 5:-

- If 'All' denotes people and is used as a subject, '**who**' or '**that**' is used and not '**whom/which**'.

E.g.: All **who/that** are interested to do this work can start now.

Rule 6:-

- If 'all' denotes non living things, '**that**' is used and not '**who** or '**whom**'.

E.g.: All **that** glitters is not gold.

Note: All + uncountable noun is followed by '**that**'.

E.g.: All the money **that** I gave her has been spent.

Rule 7:-

- **Everything, nothing, the only, any, all, everyone, none, no, nobody, much, little, the same, the few, the little will take 'that' after them.**

E.g.: (a) My father has given me **everything that** I needed.

(b) This is **the only pen, that** I bought yesterday.

(c) My wife has spent **the little money that** I gave her.

Rule 8:-

- If the verb is mentioned, '**the same + noun**' is followed by '**that**'

E.g.: This is the same man **that** Verb (clearly given) deceived me.

USE OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS:

Pronouns used for asking questions are called **Interrogative Pronouns**.

E.g.: Who, whom, whose, which etc.

Rule 1:-

- Look at the examples given below-

(A) **Who** is used for the subject.

Who is playing?

(B) **Whom** is used for the object.

Whom has he invited ?

(C) '**Whose**' is used to find out the owner.

Whose book is this?

Rule 2:-

- 'Preposition + whom' can be used but not 'preposition + who'.

E.g.: By whom was the Ramayana written ?

Note:- If preposition is used at the end of the sentence, 'who' comes at the starting of the sentence.

E.g.: Who was the Ramayana written by?

See the difference:

1. Who are you? (✓)
 v sub.

2. I don't know who are you. (✗)

I don't know who you are. (✓)
 sub. v

- Interrogative form of a sentence comes after 'wh' family (See sentence 1). This means, helping verb comes before the subject. If a 'wh' family word is used to join two sentences, i.e. it is used as a relative pronoun, assertive form of sentence follows the 'wh' family word (See sentence 2). Helping verb is used after the subject.

Rule 3:-

- If a choice is to be made between two or more, which is used.

E.g.: (a). Who is your brother in the crowd ? (✗)

Which is your brother in the crowd ? (✓)

(b). Who of the servants do you want ? (✗)

Which of the servants do you want ? (✓)

Rule 4:-

- 'Whose' is not used for non-living things.

E.g.: 1. Whose book is this ? (✓)

2. This is the flyover whose inauguration was done by the transport minister. (✗)

This is the flyover, the inauguration of which was done by the transport minister. (✓)

- Pronoun in Relation to Sub-Verb agreement.

Questions related to Pronoun are also asked under Subject-verb Agreement.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN:

Rule 1:-

- When two subjects are joined by 'as well as', 'with', 'alongwith', 'together with', 'and not', 'in addition to', 'but', 'besides', 'except', 'rather than', 'accompanied by', 'like', 'unlike', 'no less than', 'nothing but', the possessive adjective/pronoun will agree with the 1st subject.

PRONOUN

E.g.: (a) Rita as well as her friends has done her work.

↑ ↑ ↑

(b) My friend Reena along with her sister is doing her job at Delhi.

↑ ↑ ↑

Rule 2:-

- When two **subjects** are joined by '**either.... or**', '**neither.....nor**', '**not only....but also**', '**none.....but**', the possessive adjective/ pronoun agrees with the **nearest subject**.

E.g.: Neither the staff members **nor** the manager was taking his task seriously.

↑ ↑ ↑

Rule 3:-

- When **each**, **every**, **neither**, **either**, **anyone** is used as subject, 3rd person singular is used as the possessive case.

E.g.: (a) **Neither** of the two brothers has brought their luggage. (**Change 'their' into 'his'**)

(b) Each one is doing our duty properly. (**Change 'our' into 'his'**)

Rule 4:-

- If collective noun like **Jury**, **army**, **fleet**, **crew** etc are used as the subject of the sentence , it denotes a **group** and hence **singular pronoun and adjective** like it, **its**, **itself** is used.

E.g.: The jury has given their verdict. (x)

The jury **has** given **its** verdict. (✓)

Rule 5:-

- If **Collective Noun** is used as the **subject** and it denotes **separate individuals** or a **division** is shown among the members, it is considered **plural** and hence **plural pronoun and plural adjective/pronoun** **they**, **them**, **their**, **theirs**, **themselves** are used with them.

E.g.: The team are divided in its opinion. (x)

The team are divided in **their** opinion. (✓)

Rule 6:-

- If two or more than two **singular nouns** are joined by '**and**', **plural pronoun** and **plural adjective** **they**, **them**, **their**, **theirs**, **themselves** are used.

E.g.: Ram and Shyam do **their** work. (✓)

Rule 7:-

- If two **singular nouns** are joined by '**and**' and if an article is used **before the first singular noun**, it denotes '**one person/thing**'. Here **singular pronoun and adjective** - **he**, **him**; **his**, **himself** will come for human beings and **it**, **its**, **itself** will come for non living things.

E.g.: The secretary and treasurer is negligent of their duty. (x)

The secretary and treasurer is negligent of **his** duty. (✓)

Rule 8:-

- If two nouns are joined by 'and' and an **article** or a **Possessive Adjective** is used before each noun, it denotes many persons or things. Here **Plural Pronouns** and **Adjectives** will be used.

They, them, their, theirs, themselves will be used as per requirement.

E.g.: The secretary and treasurer did not do his work. (x)

The secretary and the treasurer did not do their work. (✓)

Rule 9:-

- If two or more than two nouns are joined by 'and' and **each/ every** is used before each noun, **singular pronoun, singular adjective and singular verb** will follow

E.g.: (a) **Every** soldier and **every** sailor was in their place.

(b) Every soldier and every sailor was in his place. (✓)

Rule 10:-

- If **many a/an + singular noun** is used with the **subject** of the sentence, singular pronouns and singular adjectives are used.

E.g.: **Many** a soldier has met his death in the battlefield. (✓)

DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS:

Rule 1:-

- **Plural Noun / Pronoun** is used after each of/either of/neither of

E.g.: **Each** of the boys has a note book.(✓)
P.N

Rule 2:-

- When the sentence starts with **each of/either of/neither of**, **each, either, neither**, '**the**' is used before the plural noun/ plural pronoun but **singular adjective singular verb and singular pronoun** are used in the latter part of the sentence.

E.g.: 1. Each of the boys has their own book. (x)

Each of the boys has his own book. (✓)

2. None of them knew how to do the fitting himself
P.P. S.P.

Rule 3:-

- If 'each' comes after the subject, the auxiliary verb/main verb will be used that agrees the subject .

E.g.: We have each advised him to give up smoking. (x)

We each have advised him to give up smoking. (✓)
Sub. Aux. Verb

Note: In such sentences, the verb must agree with the subject.

Rule 4:-

- 'Both' is used for two people or things.

E.g.: All of the two students are guilty. (x)

PRONOUN

- Both of the two students are guilty. (✓)
'Both' is not used in negative sense.
E.g.: Both of them are not going. (✗)
Neither of them is going. ((✓))

USE OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS:

Rule 1:-

- If 'one' is used as the subject, nominative case 'one' and objective pronoun - 'oneself' is used.
E.g.: (a) One should do one's duty oneself.
(b) One should keep one's promise.

Note: Read 'Question Tag' carefully. Some questions related to 'pronoun' come under 'question tag'.

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) Unless two or more members object/ (b) to him joining the club, we shall have to/ (c) accept his application for membership./ (d) No error.
2. (a) I was surprised and pleased (b)/ when I was informed of me (c) winning the contest./ (d) No error.
3. (a) Our dog may look/ (b) fierce but/ (c) that wouldn't hurt a fly./ (d) No error.
4. (a) No one can/ (b) challenge destiny,/ (c) isn't it?/ (d) No error.
5. (a) All the doubts are cleared/ (b) between/ (c) you and I./ (d) No error.
6. (a) The front page story was about a school girl/ (b) that had hurt herself/ (c) while saving a child in an accident./ (d) No error.
7. (a) The last thing that the fond mother/ (b) gave her only son/ (c) was his blessing./ (d) No error.
8. (a) It is not/ (b) I who is/ (c) to blame./ (d) No error.
9. (a) I shall avail of/ (b) this opportunity/ (c) to meet you there./ (d) No error.
10. (a) Put you in my position/ (b) and you will realise/ (c) the problems faced in my profession./ (d) No error.
11. (a) Each of them/ (b) has to understand/ (c) their responsibility/ (d) No error.
12. (a) We are proud to announce/ (b) that every one of us have earned/ (c) a good name./ (d) No error.
13. (a) Here is/ (b) the man whom I think/ (c) committed the crime./ (d) No error.
14. (a) He took/ (b) his younger sister/ (c) with himself./ (d) No error.
15. (a) The company is in debt/ (b) and has been unable/ (c) to pay their employees' salaries/ (d) for the past six months./ (e) No error.
16. (a) The company has appointed/ (b) consultants to help them/ (c) increase its revenue and/ (d) improve its financial position./ (e) No error.
17. (a) You cannot change/ (b) people, but you/ (c) can definitely/ (d) change own./ (e) No error.
18. (a) Governments and business houses must reduce/ (b) its own energy use/ (c) and promote conservation/ (d) to their citizens and employees./ (e) No error.
19. (a) Even those which/ (b) have no previous/ (c) work experience have/ (d) applied for this job./ (e) No error.
20. (a) He talked on the phone/ (b) for hours together/ (c) who really irritated/ (d) his parents a lot./ (e) No error.

21. (a) Instead of laying off/ (b) the workers, the company decided to ask them/ (d) to avail voluntary retirement./ (e) No error.
22. (a) The two sisters shouted/ (b) at one another/ (c) in public./ (d) No error.
23. (a) We must supplement/ (b) our diet with vitamins and minerals/ (c) in order to keep/ (d) oneself fit/ (e) No error.
24. (a) Mrs. Pratap, being a good teacher/ (b) she is selected/ (c) for the National Award./ (d) No error
25. (a) The poor man/ (b) poisoned him/ (c) and his own children./ (d) No error.
26. (a) It was in 2006/ (b) that we first flew/ (c) to the United States./ (d) No error.
27. (a) I was driving under the bridge/ (b) as a football/ (c) hit my window./ (d) No error.
28. (a) Many a student/ (b) have passed/ (c) the I.I.T. examination./ (d) No error.
29. (a) It was me who was/ (b) responsible for/ (c) making all the arrangements for the successful completion of his studies./ (d) No error.
30. (a) I wonder/ (b) why are you tinkering with the wire./ (c) You might get a shock./ (d) No error.
31. (a) John, I and Hari/ (b) have finished/ (c) our studies./ (d) No error.
32. (a) He doesn't/ (b) know/ (c) to swim./ (d) No error.
33. (a) All the dresses/ (b) looked good and so I/ (c) bought all of it./ (d) No error.
34. (a) Those people who/ (b) do not work hard/ (c) they do not succeed in life./ (d) No error.
35. (a) He bathed himself/ (b) in/ (c) a river./ (d) No error.
36. (a) She could not/ (b) bear/ (c) his separation./ (d) No error.
37. (a) If you want this job/ (b) you will need/ (c) his favour./ (d) No error.
38. (a) Both of them will not/ (b) refute/ (c) the charges./ (d) No error.
39. (a) She is the kind / (b) of woman whom every body knows/ (c) is benign and magnanimous./ (d) No error.
40. (a) The master did not know/ (b) who of the servants/ (c) broke the expensive dinner set./ (d) No error.
41. (a) The Congress Party stood/ (b) for implementation of the Nuclear Liability Bill/ (c) and was ready to stake their political existence./ (d) No error.
42. (a) He is not one of those/ (b) who will help every Tom, Dick and Harry/ (c) whom he meets./ (d) No error.
43. (a) My teacher/ (b) did not object/ (c) to me using the calculator./ (d) No error.
44. (a) He, You and I/ (b) shall arrange everything/ (c) and shall not ask them for help./ (d) No error.
45. (a) Was it me/ (B) who had to face/ (c) the music ?/ (d) No error.
46. (a) The audience/ (b) are requested/ (c) to be in its seats and stay away from the track./ (d) No error.
47. (a) The number of vehicles/ (B) plying on the roads of Delhi/ (c) is more than on the roads of Bangalore./ (D) No error.
48. (a) Being a destitute/ (b) I admitted him/ (c) to an ophanage./ (d) No error.
49. (a) One should keep/ (b) his promise/ (c) if one wants respect from both friends and enemies./ (d) No error.
50. (a) Last summer I went to Shimla/ (b) and enjoyed very/ (c) much./ (d) No error.
51. (a) If I were him/ (b) I would teach/ (c) him a lesson./ (d) No error.

PRACTICE

52. (a) Being a/ (b) rainy day I/ (c) could not go to school/ (d) No error.
53. (a) One of them/(b) forgot to take their passport/ (c) and found himself in a difficult situation/(d) No error.
54. (a) Mr. Sharma, our representative,/ (b) he will attend the meeting/ (c) on our behalf./ (d) No error.
55. (a) Each girl was/ (b) given a packet of sweets/ (c) and she was happy./ (d) No error.
56. (a) Myself and he/ (b) will manage/ (c) everything./ (d) No error.
57. (a) The Ganga is a river/ (b) whose origin/ (c) has always been a matter of speculation./ (d) No error.
58. (a) My friend/ (b) is laborious and intelligent, (c) isn't it ?/ (d) No error.
59. (a) It is difficult to say/ (b) who is the better/ (c) of the two players./ (d) No error.
60. (a) It is the best/ (b) which the government can do/ (c) for the downtrodden./ (d) No error.
61. (a) Neither of the two friends/ (b) has got their money back/ (c) from the company./ (d) No error.
62. (a) This is the road/ (b) whose inauguration/ (c) was done by the President./ (d) No error.
63. (a) Many women/ (b) reconcile to the/ (c) demands of their in-laws./ (d) No error.
64. (a) May I know/ (b) to who/ (c) I am speaking ?/ (d) No error.
65. (a) The person who/ (b) I met yesterday/ (c) was my classmate./ (d) No error.
66. (a) Owing to me being a new comer/ (b) I was unable/ (c) to get a good house./ (d) No error.
67. (a) A good friend of/ (b) me has been/ (c) in London for twenty years./ (d) No error.
68. (a) It was him/ (b) who came running/ (c) into the classroom./ (d) No error.
69. (a) I and Raju/ (b) left for Delhi/ (c) last summer./ (d) No error.
70. (a) I will certainly/ (b) avail of your offer/ (c) when the occasion arises./ (d) No error.
71. (a) The book/ (b) is well illustrated/ (c) and attractively bound/ (d) making altogether an attractive volume/(e) No error.
72. (a) Besides me/ (b) many other/ (c) were present./ (d) No error.
73. (a) My house/ (b) is farther/ (c) than her's./ (d) No error.
74. (a) He is the person,/ (b) whom, everyone thought,/ (c) has stolen the ring./ (d) No error.

Answers with explanation

1. (b) Change 'him' into 'his'. A possessive adjective comes before a gerund (joining).
2. (b) Change 'me' into 'my'. A possessive adjective comes before a gerund (winning).
3. (c) Use 'it' (pronoun) for 'dog'.
4. (c) Use 'can they' in place of 'isn't it'. See Question Tag.
5. (c) 'Between.....and' takes objective form of pronoun. Change 'I' into 'me'.
6. (b) Change 'that' into 'who'. 'School girl' is the subject which will take relative pronoun 'who'.
7. (c) 'Mother' will take possessive adjective 'her'.
8. (b) Change 'is' into 'am'. The verb that follows the relative pronoun should match with the antecedent to the relative pronoun.(Here 'I' is the antecedent of 'who').
9. (a) Use a reflexive pronoun with 'Avail'. Use 'myself' after 'avail'.

10. (a) Change 'you' into 'yourself'.
 11. (c) Change 'their' into 'his'. 'Each' takes singular adjective/pronoun.
 12. (d) 'has' is used with 'everyone'.
 13. (b) 'The man' is the subject here that will take relative pronoun 'who'.
 14. (c) Change 'himself' into 'him'.
 15. (c) 'Company' is a singular noun. Singular possessive adjective 'its' will be used with it.
 16. (b) 'Company' is a singular noun and will take 'it' in place of 'them'.
 17. (d) Change 'own' into 'yourself'.
 18. (b) Change 'its' into 'their'. Government and business houses being plural will take plural adjective 'their'.
 19. (a) Change 'which' into 'who'.
 20. (c) Use 'which' in place of 'who'. 'Talking on telephone' is not a person but an activity and hence takes 'which' and not 'who'.
 21. (d) Avail is followed by a reflexive pronoun and preposition 'of'. Add 'themselves of' after 'avail'.
 22. (b) Change 'one another' into 'each other'.
 23. (d) Remove 'oneself'. Reflexive pronoun doesn't come with 'keep'.
 24. (b) Remove 'she'. In a single sentence a noun and a pronoun for the same noun cannot come together.
 25. (b) Change 'him' into 'himself'.
 26. (b) Change 'that' into 'when' because '2006' is time.
 27. (b) Change 'as' into 'when'. Here the time is important.
 28. (b) 'Many a' is singular and will take singular verb 'has'.
 29. (a) Use 'It was I'. Sub form 'I' will follow 'It + was (form of be).
 30. (b) Use 'are' after 'you'. Sentence is not interrogative.
 31. (a) According to rule 231, 1st person should come last. 'John, Hari and I' is the correct order.
 32. (c) 'Wh' family will come after 'know' and 'wonder' if the verbs are followed by 'to+V_i'. Change 'to swim' into 'how to swim'.
 33. (c) Change 'it' into 'them' as 'dresses' is a plural noun.
 34. (c) Remove 'they'. In a sentence 'those people' and 'they' will not come together.
 35. (a) Remove 'himself'. A reflexive pronoun will not be used after 'bathe'.
 36. (c) 'His separation' is wrong as possessive case is not used with word 'separation'. Change 'his separation' into 'separation from him'.
 37. (c) Change 'his favour' into 'favour from him'.
 38. (a) Do not use 'not' with 'both'. Change 'both of them will not' into 'neither of them will'.
 39. (b) Use 'who' in place of 'whom'. 'Woman' who is the subject here will take 'who'.
 40. (b) Change 'who' into 'which'. 'Of' is preceded by 'which' and not 'who/whom'.
 41. (c) Change 'their' into 'its'. 'Congress Party' is singular and will take singular adjective 'its'.
 42. (c) Change 'he meets' into 'they meet'. 'Those' will take 'they' and not 'he'.
 43. (b) Change 'me' into 'my'. A possessive adjective comes before a gerund (joining).
 44. (a) According to rule 231 rule you, he, and I is the correct order.
 45. (a) 'was it I' is the correct formation. This is the interrogative form of

PRONOUNS

'It was I'
Nominative case

46. (c) Change 'its' into 'their'. For individual persons/things, plural pronoun and plural verb are used.
47. (c) Add 'that of before 'on'. 'That of refers to 'the number of vehicles'.
48. (a) 'Being' should be preceded by 'he'. If 'He' is not made the subject of destitute, I becomes the subject of destitute and the meaning of the sentence becomes wrong.
49. (b) Use one's in place of 'his'. 'Ones' is the possessive case of 'one'.
50. (b) Add 'myself after enjoyed. If there is no object after the verb 'enjoy', a reflexive pronoun follows the verb.
51. (a) Change 'him' into 'he'. Here 'him' is not an object.
52. (a) Add 'It' before being to make the sentence meaningful. See sentence 48.
53. (b) Change 'their' into 'his'. 'one' is a singular pronoun and hence will take singular possessive case 'his'.
54. (b) Remove 'He'. Noun has already been used in this sentence.
55. (c) Change 'she' into 'they'. Here the sentence changes after 'and' and hence plural pronoun 'they' will be used as now all the girls are being referred to.
56. (a) Change 'myself into 'I'. Reflexive pronoun cannot come in place of subject.
57. (b) Change 'whose origin' into 'the origin of which' because 'whose' is not used for 'non-living things'.
58. (c) Change 'isn't it ?' into 'Isn't he ?'. See Question Tag.
59. (b) Change 'who' into 'which'. 'Who/whom' cannot come before 'of'.
60. (b) Change 'which' into 'that'. A superlative degree is followed by 'that'.
61. (b) Change 'their' into 'his'. 'Neither of / 'either of / 'each of etc take plural pronoun or noun after them but verb/pronoun in the latter part of the sentence is always singular.

E.g.: Neither of the two friends has got his money back.
 Plural Noun Singular Verb Singular Pronoun

62. (b) Change 'whose inauguration' into 'the inauguration of which'. 'Whose' is not used for 'non-living things'.
63. (b) A 'reflexive pronoun' must follow reconcile. Add 'themselves' after 'reconcile'.
64. (b) Change 'who' into 'whom' because we need a relative pronoun for an object.
65. (a) Change 'who' into 'whom' because we need a relative pronoun for an object.
66. (a) Change 'me' into 'my'(possessive case) before Gerund 'being'.
67. (b) Change 'me' into 'mine'.
68. (a) Change 'him' into 'he'.
69. (a) According to rule 231, 'Raju and I' is the correct order.
70. (b) Reflexive pronoun 'myself' must follow 'avail'. Subject is 'I' and reflexive pronoun must be 'myself'.
71. (c) Use 'it' after 'making' as the pronoun for 'book' will be 'it'.
72. (b) 'Many' is plural in meaning . Hence it must be followed by 'others' (Plural).
73. (c) Change 'her's' into 'hers'.
74. (b) Change 'Whom' into 'who'.

Adjective -

An adjective is a word that qualifies a noun or a pronoun.

Ram is a good boy.

He is intelligent.

In the above sentences 'good' and 'intelligent' qualify 'Ram' and tell us the qualities of 'he'. Adjectives come before a noun and after a verb.

Types of Adjectives -

There are eight types of adjectives

1. Adjective of quality
2. Proper adjective
3. Adjective of number
4. Demonstrative adjective
5. Distributive adjective
6. Interrogative adjective
7. Adjective of quality
8. Possessive adjective

1. **Adjective of quality** - Adjectives that show the kind or quality of a person or thing.

E.g.: An **honest** man.

Adjective of quality is used in two ways.

(a) **Attributive use** - When an adjective is used before noun, it is said to be used attributively.

E.g.: Solomon was a **wise** king.

Noun

Here wise is used before a noun (king) so it is attributive.

(b) **Predicative use** - When an adjective is used after verb, it is said to be used predicatively.

ADJECTIVE

E.g.: The weather is **pleasant**
Verb

2. **Proper Adjective** – An adjective which is **formed from proper nouns** is called known as proper adjective.

E.g.: **Buddhist** monastery, **British** rule.

E.g.: Here '**Buddhist**' and '**British**' are proper adjectives.

3. **Adjective of quantity** – An Adjective that shows **how much** of a thing is meant.

E.g.: Some milk, **enough** oil, **sufficient** sugar, **no** manners.

E.g.: Here **some**, **enough**, **sufficient** and **no** are adjective of quantity.

4. **Adjective of number** – An Adjective that shows **how many** persons or things are meant or in what order a person or thing stands.

It is of two types:-

(i) **Definite**

(ii) **Indefinite**

(i) **Definite**- Definite denotes an exact number.

E.g.: Five boys, **fifth** row.

(ii) **Indefinite**: Indefinite does not denote an exact number.

E.g.: Few girls, **several** boys.

- (a) **Cardinal Adjective** – **Definite numbers** like **one, two, three, four** are Cardinal adjectives.

E.g.: He has **four** pens.

She has **two** books.

- (b) **Ordinal Adjectives** – **Definite order** like **first, second, last** are Ordinal adjectives.

E.g.: The **first** chapter of this book is on verb.

Note: 1. Article '**the**' is used before Ordinal and not before Cardinal.

E.g.: Lesson **one** is on verbs.

The **first** chapter of this book is on verbs.

2. When both Ordinal and Cardinal adjectives come together in a sentence, they are in the order '**OC**'. This means **first 'Ordinal' and then 'Cardinal'**.

E.g.: We will revise the lessons in the **last two** classes.

- (5) **Demonstrative Adjective** – The adjective that **points out which person or thing** is meant is known as the demonstrative adjective.

E.g.: **This** boy, **that** group, **these** people, **those** countries.

Note: If **this, that, these** or **those** are immediately followed by a **noun**, these words are called **demonstrative adjectives** and if these words are immediately followed by a **verb**, these words are known as **demonstrative pronouns**.

This girl is good.
That pen is new.
These shirts are white.

This is a good girl.
That is a new pen.
These are white shirts.

- (6) **Distributive Adjective** – The **Adjective** which refers to each one of the number is known as **distributive adjective**.

E.g.: **Each** candidate is honest.
Every boy is present today.

Note: If **each**, **every**, **either** or **neither** is immediately followed by **noun**, it is known as **Distributive Adjective** and if **each**, **every**, **either** or **neither** is followed by **some other word**, it is known as **Distributive Pronoun**.

E.g. Distributive Adjective Distributive Pronoun

Each boy took the test. **Each** of the boys took the test.

- (7) **Interrogative Adjective** – **What**, **which** and **whose** are interrogative adjectives when they are used with a noun.

E.g.: **Which** room is hers?
Whose book is this?

Note: If '**what**', '**which**', '**whose**' is followed by a noun, these words are interrogative adjectives and if it is followed by a verb, it is known as interrogative pronoun.

E.g.: Interrogative Adjective Interrogative Pronoun

What colour is your bag? **What** did you do?

- (8) **Possessive Adjectives** – **Adjectives** that shows possession is called possessive Adjective.

E.g.: **My** book, **our** class

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

- An **Adjective** comes in **three degrees** - **positive**, **comparative** and **superlative degree**.
- **Positive degree** denotes **the quality** of a person, thing or group. It is used when **no comparison** is made.

E.g.: He is a **good** boy.

- When **two things or sets of things are compared**, comparative degree is used.

E.g.: He is **better** than you.

- **Superlative degree** is used to choose **one out of a group or many**.

E.g.: He is the **best** student of my class.

Rule 1

- To change an **adjective** into **comparative degree** 'er' is added to the **positive degree** and 'est' is added to change it into **superlative degree**.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Bold	Bolder	Boldest
Deep	Deeper	Deepest
High	Higher	Highest
Strong	Stronger	Strongest
Thick	Thicker	Thickest
Weak	Weaker	Weakest

Rule 2

- If 'e' is present at the end of a **positive degree**, 'r' is added to change it into a **comparative degree** and 'st' to change it into **superlative degree**.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Able	Abler	Ablest
Brave	Braver	Bravest
Fine	Finer	Finest
Noble	Nobler	Noblest
True	Truer	Truest
Wise	Wiser	Wisest

Rule 3

- If the **positive degree** ends in a **consonant** and a short vowel comes before it, the last consonant is doubled and then 'er' and 'est' are added to change it into **comparative** and **superlative degree** respectively.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Big	Bigger	Biggest
Fit	Fitter	Fittest
Hot	Hotter	Hottest
Sad	Sadder	Saddest
Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
Wet	Wetter	Wettest

Rule 4

- When a **positive degree** ends in 'y' and a **consonant** is present before 'y', the 'y' is converted into 'i', and then 'er' and 'est' are added respectively.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Dry	Drier	Driest
Happy	Happier	Happiest
Heavy	Heavier	Heaviest
Pretty	Prettier	Prettiest



Note: If a vowel is present before 'y' , only 'er' and 'est' should be added.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Grey	Greyer	Greyest

Rule 5

- Adjectives that are of **more than two syllables**, are changed to **comparative** and **superlative** degree by adding **more** and **most** respectively.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
Courageous	more courageous	most courageous
Intelligent	more intelligent	most intelligent
Pleasant	more pleasant	most pleasant

Note: Certain **adjectives** do not follow any rule. They get changed completely.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Good/well	better	best
Bad/ill	worse	worst
Little	less/lesser	least
Fore	former	foremost/first
Late	later/latter	last/latest
Far	farther	farthest
Near	nearer	nearest/next
Old	older/elder	oldest/eldest
Much/many	more	most

➤ Correct use of some adjectives

- (1) Use of 'some' and 'any'

Some/any means a little but the use is different.

- (a) **Some** is used in affirmative sentence before uncountable nouns to denote the quantity and it is used before plural countable nouns to denote number.

E.g.: I have **some** water.
U.N.

I have **some** friends.
P.C.N.

- 'Some' is generally used in positive sentences. 'Any' is generally used in negative sentences and questions.

E.g.:(1) I have **some** problems.

- (2) I do not have **any** problem.
(3) Do you have **any** problem?

- When an answer is expected in 'yes', 'some' is used in questions too.

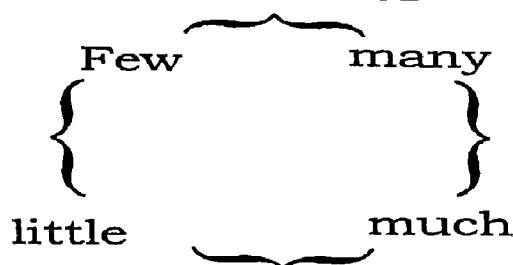
E.g.: Do you have **some** water?

ADJECTIVE

Note:- 'no any' cannot be used together

2. Use of **few, little, much and many,**

Countables



Uncountable

Few Few- Hardly any.
 A few- Some but not many.
 The few- Not many but all available.

Little Little- Hardly any
 A little- Some but not much.
 The little- Not much but all that is available.

➤ Fill in the blanks using **few/little, a few / a little or the few / the little**

1. _____ knowledge is a dangerous thing.
2. The doctor advised him to rest for _____ days.
3. _____ water I kept for you has been finished by him.
4. The show was cancelled as _____ people turned up to see it.
5. I cannot prepare tea for you. There is _____ milk in the refrigerator.

Answers:-

- (1) A little (here the sentence means that incomplete knowledge is a dangerous thing. Here we mean that knowledge is available but not much.)
 - (2) A few ('days' is a countable noun, hence a few is used and not little. A doctor will advise us to rest for atleast some days, hence 'a few' is appropriate.)
 - (3) The little (water is uncountable and here it means the small quantity of water that I had kept for you, hence 'the little' is appropriate.)
 - (4) Few (If very few people come, the show gets cancelled, hence 'few' is appropriate here which means 'hardly any'.)
 - (5) Little (when milk is in negligible quantity, tea cannot be prepared).
- **Little & few** cannot be used with **quantity & number**. Instead '**small**' is used with them.

E.g.: Little quantity of food was wasted. (✗)
Small quantity of food was wasted. (✓)

Rule 1

- Positive degree of adjective / adverb comes in between 'as.....as' and 'so.....as'.

E.g.: He is as good as his brother.

He ran as fast as he could.

Rule 2

- 'Adjective + er than' indicates the presence of a comparative degree. Comparative degree comes before 'than'.

E.g.: He is better than his brother.

'Than' may or may not come after a comparative degree.

E.g.: Today I am feeling better.

Rule 3

- 'The' is used before a superlative degree.

E.g.: He is the best player of the team.

Rule 4

- When one is chosen out of two, we use a comparative degree preceded by 'the' and followed by 'of'.

E.g.: She is the best of two sisters. (x)

She is the better of two sisters. (✓)

- If one is chosen out of 'more than two' or 'all', superlative degree is used preceded by 'the' and followed by 'of'.

E.g.: He is the best of the three/all the players.

Rule 5

When two qualities of a noun or a pronoun are compared with each other, more + positive degree is used instead of a comparative degree.

E.g.: He is wiser than intelligent. (x)

He is more wise than intelligent. (✓)

Rule 6

- If one is compared with all the others of the same variety, 'any other' is used to exclude the former.

E.g.: Gold is more precious than any metal. (x)

Gold is more precious than any other metal. (✓)

Look at the following sentences:

Diamond is more precious than any metal. (✓)

The above sentence is correct because diamond is not a metal.

ADJECTIVE

Rule 7

➢ Adjectives that end in 'ior' are followed by 'to' and not 'than'.

E.g.: **Superior, inferior, senior, junior, prior, anterior, posterior.**

He is senior than me. (x) (Replace 'than' by 'to')

Rule 8

➢ Adjectives like 'interior', 'exterior', 'ulterior', 'major', 'minor', 'empty', 'excellent', 'circular', 'extreme', 'chief', 'entire', 'complete', 'perfect', 'final', 'last', 'unique', 'universal', 'round', 'square', 'triangular', 'eternal', 'everlasting', 'ideal', 'absolute', 'impossible' and 'supreme' are not used in comparative or superlative degree.

E.g.: 1. This is more inferior to that. (x)

This is inferior to that. (✓)

2. Good deeds are more everlasting. (Remove more)

Rule 9

➢ Some adjectives are used in **only positive and superlative degree** and not in comparative degree.

Positive

Top

Northern

Southern

Eastern

Western

Superlative

Topmost

Northernmost

Southernmost

Easternmost

Westernmost

Rule 10

➢ Adjective '**preferable**' is used in only **comparative degree**.

➢ '**Preferable**' is followed by 'to' and not 'than' or 'more'. **Prefer** (verb) is followed by 'to' and not 'than'.

E.g.: This is more preferable **to** that. (✓)

Rule 11

➢ If two adjectives are used for a single noun or pronoun and if both adjectives are connected by a conjunction, both the adjectives must be in same degree.

E.g.: Gandhiji was noblest and wiser of all the leaders. (x)

Gandhiji was the **noblest** and **wisest** of all the leaders. (✓)

Rule 12

➢ If 'the' is used before an adjective, the adjective becomes a plural common noun. It will hence take a plural verb.

E.g.: **rich, poor, needy, aged, blind, dead, meek, wicked** etc.

1. **The rich** (rich people) usually exploit **the poor**. (poor people)

2. **The honest** are rewarded.

Rule 13

- Verbs are modified by adverbs.

E.g.: He works honestly.
 V adv.

- 'ly' is added to an adjective to convert it into an adverb (except in some cases)

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
Polite	Politely
Bad	Badly
Sincere	Sincerely

- But **verbs of sensation** (**seem, look, appear, feel, taste, sound and smell**) is followed by an **adjective and not an adverb**.

E.g.: He feels badly. (✗)

He feels **bad**. (✓)

The soup smells deliciously. (✗)

The soup smells **delicious**. (✓)

- Apart from **verbs of sensation** 'be', 'become', 'turn', 'get', 'grow', 'keep', 'make' and 'prove' are also modified by adjective and not adverbs.

E.g.: When he heard the news, he became sad.
 adj

Rule 14

- Many nouns are a part of **hyphenated or compound adjectives**. They never come in plural form.

E.g.: I delivered a two hours lecture. (✗)

I delivered a **two-hour** lecture. (✓)

He gave me two hundred-rupees notes. (✗)

He gave me two **hundred-rupee** notes. (✓)

Rule 15

- If a **noun works as an adjective**, it **cannot** be in plural form.

E.g.: Lasers are indispensable tools for delicate eyes surgery. ('eye' in place of 'eyes')

Rule 16

- Some adjectives are confusing in their meaning. Hence they should be used carefully.

(1) **Farther and Further** – Farther means 'at a greater distance'.

E.g.: She lives at the **farther** end of the lane.

Further means 'in addition'

E.g.: I did not receive any **further** order.

(2) **Last and latest**

Last means 'after all others'.

E.g.: The **last** ruler of Mughal Empire was Bahadur Shah Jafar.

Latest means 'newest or recent'

ADJECTIVE

E.g.: What is the **latest** score?

(3) **Elder and older** – Elder/eldest means 'of earlier birth'. It shows blood relation.

E.g.: He is my **elder** brother.

Older/Oldest means 'of earlier time'.

E.g.: He is **older** than his uncle.

(4) **Nearest and next**

Nearest means 'within a short distance'.

E.g.: Which is the **nearest** hospital?

Next means 'immediately adjacent'.

E.g.: The bank is in the **next** building.

(5) **Later and latter**

Later means 'at some time subsequent to a given time'.

E.g.: I will call you later.

Latter means 'second of the two'.

E.g.: The **latter** part of the movie was boring.

Note- **Former** is the opposite of **latter**.

Rule 17

- Possessive case comes after '**All**' and '**Both**' and not before them.

E.g.: My **all** friends have got selected. (x)

All my friends have got selected. (✓)

Rule 18

- If both **positive** and **comparative degree** of an **adjective** are used in a single sentence, both "as....as & 'than'" will be used.
- **Positive degree** is used with 'asas' and 'so....as' and **comparative degree** is used with 'than'.

E.g.: He is **as** intelligent **as** if not more **than** his brother.

Rule 19

- Comparative degree does not come with the word '**times**'.

E.g.: My house is four **times** bigger than yours. (x)

My house is four **times** as big as yours. (✓)

Rule 20

- If **adjective of size, colour, age etc.** come together in a sentence, they should be used in the following order:

Opinion → **Size** → **Age** → **Shape** → **Colour** → **Origin** → **Material** → **Purpose noun**

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

E.g.: 1. I bought **beautiful**, **tiny**, **heart-shaped**, **purple**, **American**, **diamond** **wedding** a
ring.
opinion size shape colour origin material purpose

2. The thief flashed a **big** **sharp** knife and asked the cashier to fill the
size shape

black leather bag with money.
 colour material

We can remember the order as **OSASCOMP**.

Opinion- beautiful, pretty , ugly etc.

Size-big, small, tiny, minute etc.

Age- old, new, recent etc.

Shape-round, oval, heart-shaped etc.

Colour-Blue, red, pink etc.

Origin-Indian, German etc.

Material-wooden, leather etc.

Purpose- wedding, dining, sleeping etc.

Note:- 'Tall, dark and hadsome' or 'fair and beautiful' are such common examples that have opinion after colour.

Rule 21

➤ Two **comparative** and two **superlative degrees** never come together.

E.g.:1. He is the most cleverest of all the officers. (x)

He is the cleverest of all the officers. (✓)

2. This is more better than that. (x)

This is better than that. (✓)

Rule 22

➤ If different **prepositions** are needed with different **adjectives**, suitable **prepositions** must be used with each of them.

E.g.: He is senior and more experienced than you. (x)

He is senior to and more experienced than you. (✓)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) Anurag is eclipsed by his wife, / (b) who is cleverer and / (c) amusing than he is. / (d) No error
2. (a) The two first to arrive / (b) were the lucky recipients / (c) of a surprise gift. / (d) No error
3. (a) Of the billions of stars in the galaxy, (b) how much are / (c) suitable for life? / (d) No error
4. (a) A few word of / (b) gratitude are enough / (c) to express your / (d) feelings sincerely. / (e) No error.
5. (a) He feels his troubles / (b) as much or / (c) even more than they. / (d) No error
6. (a) I like reading / (b) more than / (c) to play games. / (d) No error
7. (a) There is not many traffic / (b) along the street / (c) where I live. / (d) No error
8. (a) The police arrived and discovered / (b) a large number of hoarded sugar/ (c) in his shop. / (d) No error
9. (a) As a dramatist / (b) Shaw is superior than / (c) any other twentieth century writer. / (d) No error
10. (a) Of the two great cities/ (b) the former is / (c) biggest. / (d) No error
11. (a) A non banking financial company is a / (b) financial institution similarly to a bank / (c) but it cannot issue cheque books to customers. / (d) No error

ADJECTIVE

12. (a) Everyone agrees that / (b) the Ganga is the holiest / (c) of all other rivers of India. / (d) No error.
13. (a) Krishna ran to the / (b) nearing grocery store to / (c) buy biscuits as his parents were expecting guests. / (d) No error
14. (a) While giving a loan/ (b) you must check / (c) if the borrower has sufficiently collateral to repay it. / (d) No error
15. (a) Although his speech / (b) was not very clearly everyone understood / (c) the underlying meaning. / (d) No error
16. (a) He is the most / (b) intelligent and also / (c) the very talented student of the college. / (d) No error
17. (a) Having been found / (b) guilty of the theft / (c) Sunny was sentenced to five year's imprisonment. / (d) No error
18. (a) The Railways have made / (b) crossing the tracks / (c) a punished offence. / (d) No error
19. (a) Alms / (b) are given / (c) to the poors. / (d) No error
20. (a) Lasers are / (b) indispensable tools / (c) for the delicate eyes surgery. / (d) No error
21. (a) The number of applications has risen / (b) this year by / (c) as many as 50%. / (d) No error
22. (a) Two lakh of people / (b) attended the meeting / (c) held in the parade ground. / (d) No error
23. (a) These sort of men / (b) attain success by hook or by crook / (c) so they do not deserve any applause. (d) No error
24. (a) Can you tell me how / (b) many eggs and / (c) milk he has brought / (d) No error
25. (a) Whole the chapter / (b) is full of printing errors which are the outcome / (c) of the proof reader's carelessness. (d) No error
26. (a) Her black long / (b) hair adds / (c) glamour to her looks. (d) No error
27. (a) I trembled when I saw / (b) a sharp long knife / (c) in his hand. / (d) No error
28. (a) I saw / (b) an anxious pale girl / (c) who was fidgetting near the ICU / (d) No error
29. (a) Mumbai is / (b) further from / (c) Delhi than / (d) Patna. (e) No error
30. (a) This book is / (b) undoubtedly preferable than / (c) that and its printing / (d) is also comparatively good. (e) No error
31. (a) You can trust / (b) this channel/ (c) for the last news of this hour. (d) No error
32. (a) Everybody knows / (b) that Radha is the most unique / (c) singer of this college / (d) No error
33. (a) The faster he completes / (b) the work given to / (c) him, the largest will be his profit. / (d) No error.
34. (a) He does not have / (b) some money to buy a new machine so he is / (c) anxious / (d) No error
35. (a) This young lady is / (b) more beautiful but not so cultured / (c) as her sister. (d) No error
36. (a) Now-a-days, / (b) the weather / (c) is getting cold and colder. / (d) No error

37. (a) This photograph / (b) was comparatively better / (c) than that which he had kept in his purse. / (d) No error
38. (a) Ram is as good, / (b) if not better than / (c) they. / (d) No error
39. (a) Gopal felt happily / (b) to learn that I / (c) had got a job in the Bank. / (d) No error
40. (a) He is comparatively / (b) weaker / (c) in maths / (d) No error.
41. (a) Many a / (b) boys are / (c) absent today / (d) No error.
42. (a) Honest are / (b) rewarded / (c) sooner or later / (d) No error.
43. (a) My all / (b) friends will come / (c) tomorrow to meet me / (d) No error.
44. (a) He is wiser / (b) enough to / (c) understand your trick / (d) No error.
45. (a) Ramayana is more / (b) sacred than / (c) all the mythologies of Hindus / (d) No error.
46. (a) He offered / (b) me a / (c) steamed cup of tea / (d) No error.
47. (a) I will buy / (b) the book when / (c) the revise edition will come / (d) No error.
48. (a) He ran so fastly / (b) that he reached / (c) the destination in just two minutes. / (d) No error.
49. (a) I am sure that / (b) all my monthly expenses / (c) would exceed the income if I do not economise. / (d) No error.
50. (a) I am more lonelier/ (b) here than/ (c) I was in the USA./ (d) No error.
51. (a) To me it appears that/ (b) Anthropology is the more interesting/ (c) of all the subjects./ (d) No error.
52. (a) The circulation of The Statesman/ (b) is greater than/ (c) that of any newspaper/ (d) No error.
53. (a) In the garden/ (b) were the more beautiful flowers/ (c) and silver bells./ (d) No error.
54. (a) In his old age,/ (b) a person is likely to get/ (c) more weak day by day./ (d) No error.

Answers with explanation

1. (c) Add 'more' before 'amusing'. Both 'more amusing' and 'cleverer' must be in the same degree because both the adjectives are joined by a conjunction.
2. (a) 'Two first' should be converted to 'first two'.
3. (b) Change 'much' into 'many' as 'stars' come under countable noun. Stars are not uncountable but are rather countless.
4. (a) Change 'word' into 'words' because 'a few' is followed by plural countable noun.
5. (b) Correct use is 'as much as'. If both positive and comparative degree of an adjective are used in a single sentence, both 'as....as' & 'than' will be used.
6. (c) 'Reading' is gerund. Hence it must be compared with gerund. Change 'to play' into 'playing'.
7. (a) 'Traffic' is an uncountable noun. Hence change 'many' into 'much'.
8. (b) 'Sugar' is an uncountable noun. Hence change 'number' into 'quantity'.
9. (b) 'Superior' is followed by 'to' and not 'than'.

10. (c) Change 'biggest' to 'the bigger'. When one is chosen out of two, a comparative degree is used.
11. (b) 'Similarly' is an adverb, that qualifies a verb. 'Similar' must come here because an adjective qualifies a noun.
12. (c) Change 'all other rivers' into 'all the rivers'.
13. (b) Change 'nearing' into 'nearby' or 'nearest'.
14. (c) Sufficient (adjective) explains the quality of 'collateral' which is a noun. 'Sufficiently' is an adverb.
15. (b) 'Clearly' is an adverb, which qualifies a verb. Clear (adjective) explains the quality of speech (noun).
16. (c) Change 'very' into 'most'. If two adjectives are joined by a conjunction, both the adjectives should be in the same degree. Hence use 'most intelligent' with 'most talented'.
17. (c) Hyphenated adjective is always in singular form. 'Five-year imprisonment' is the correct form.
18. (c) 'Punishable' is the adjective form of 'punish'.
19. (c) 'The poor' means 'the deprived people'.
20. (c) 'Eyes' a noun acts as an adjective in 'eyes surgery' because here 'eyes' qualifies 'surgery'. If a noun works as an adjective, it must be in singular form. Change 'eyes' into 'eye'.
21. (c) 'Much' will come with 50%. Here a plural number is used as a singular unit.
22. (a) 'Of' doesn't come with definite numeral adjective.
E.g.: Two lakh people.
Indefinite numeral adjective takes 'of'.
E.g.: Lakhs of people.
23. (a) 'These' is plural and hence will take 'sorts' and not 'sort'.
24. (c) 'Milk' being uncountable noun will take 'how much'.
25. (a) 'The' is used before 'whole'.
26. (a) 'Long black' is the correct order. 'Adjective of size' comes before 'adjective of colour'.

Long black hair.
Adj. of size Adj. of colour

27. (b) 'Long sharp knife' is the correct order according to OSASCOMP.
28. (b) Adjective of human emotion/personality comes after adjective of colour.

a pale anxious girl.
Adj. of colour Adj. of emotion

29. (b) The correct word is 'farther' (denotes distance)
30. (b) 'to' comes with 'preferable'.
31. (c) Change 'last' into 'latest'.
32. (b) 'Unique' does not come in superlative or comparative degree. Change 'the most unique' into 'a unique'.
33. (c) 'The larger' will come with 'the faster'.
34. (b) Change 'some' into 'any' as the sentence is negative.
35. (b) Add 'than' after 'more beautiful'.
36. (c) Change 'cold' into 'colder'. To show a gradual change, we use adjectives in comparative degree.
37. (b) Change 'better' into 'good'. Comparative degree doesn't come with the word 'comparatively'.
38. (a) Add 'as' after 'as good'.
39. (a) 'happy' (Adjective) will come in place of 'happily'(adverb). Adjectives come with verbs of sensation.
40. (b) The word 'comparatively' is not used with a comparative degree. Change 'weaker' into 'weak'.
41. (b) 'Many a' takes 'singular noun' and 'singular verb'. Change 'boys are' into 'boy is'.
42. (a) 'Honest' is an adjective but becomes a plural common noun when article 'the' is used before it. 'The honest' means honest people.
43. (a) Change 'My all' into 'all my'.
44. (a) Change 'wiser' to 'wise'. 'Enough' takes positive degree before it.
45. (c) 'All other mythologies' is more appropriate as this will exclude 'Ramayana'.
46. (c) Change 'steamed cup' into 'steaming cup'.
47. (c) Change 'revise' to 'revised'.
48. (a) Change 'fastly' into 'fast'.
49. (b) Do not use 'all'. 'Monthly expenses' includes 'all the expenses'.
50. (a) Remove 'more'. Two comparative degrees do not come together.
51. (b) Use superlative degree most.
52. (c) Use 'any other newspaper'. 'Any newspaper' includes 'The Statesman' too.
53. (b) Change 'more' into 'most'.
54. (c) Change 'more weak' into 'weaker'.

CONJUNCTION

- Conjunction is a word, or a group of words which connects two or more than two words, phrases, clauses, sentences etc.

Eg.: 1. Ram and Shyam will come.

↑ Words ↑

2. People's ignorance and population explosion are two inter-related problems.

↑ Phrases ↑

3. She said that she would come.

↑ Clauses ↑

- In sentence (1) 'and' joins two words 'Ram' and 'Shyam'. In sentence (2) 'and' joins two phrases 'people ignorance' and 'population explosion' and in sentence (3) 'that' joins two sentences 'she said' and 'she would come'. Hence 'and' as well as 'that' are conjunctions.

- Some common conjunctions are

And

As well as

Otherwise, or else

So, hence

Therefore,

Either.....or

Consequently

Both.... and

Neither... nor

Too....to

So....that

As.....as

So.....as

As.....so

Whether.....or

But

As soon as

No sooner.....than

Or.....

Scarcely.....when

Not only.....but also

Hardly.....when

Where

When

Wherever

Until/Unless....,

Whenever

Because

While

Lest.....should

As.... ,

If

Such....that

As if

Provided

Although

Though

Nevertheless

Whereas

As far as

As though

[191]

Conjunctions are of two types:-

1. Co-ordinating conjunction
 2. Sub-ordinating conjunction

1. Co-ordinating conjunction:- Read the following sentences-

1. He read the notes **and** returned them to me.
 2. He came to meet me, **but** I was not at home.
 3. She worked hard **yet** she failed.

- Conjunction like '**and**', '**but**' and '**yet**', connect two sentences, each of them individually have a meaning. If these sentences are separated into different clauses, one will be the **Principal Clause** and the other the **Co-ordinate Clause**.

If a Co-ordinate Clause is formed in a conjunction, the conjunction is called a Co-ordinating Conjunction.

- **Co-ordinating conjunctions** are of four types:

(i) **Cumulative Conjunctions:**

'And', 'also', 'both and', 'as well as', 'now', 'too', 'no less than'.

- These conjunctions connect two nouns, pronouns etc.

E.g.: 1. He is rich and happy.
adj. adj.

2. Ram as well as Shyam is coming.
Noun Noun

(ii) Alternative Conjunctions:

'Either Or', 'Neither Nor', 'else' or 'otherwise'

- Where we have to choose one out of two given alternatives, we use alternative conjunctions.

E.g.: (1) Either sit quietly or go away.

(2) You must run fast **else** you will miss the train.

(iii) Adversative Conjunctions:

'But', **'yet'**, **'still'**, **'only'**, **'however'**, **'nevertheless'**, **'while'**, **'whereas'** are used to join such nouns, pronouns, sentences etc that denote that the result is opposite to the action.

E.g.: (a) He is rich **but** he is not happy.

(b) He is industrious **still** he does not get good marks.

(iv) **Illative Conjunctions:** Illative conjunctions join two actions in which one action is the result of the other action.

E.g.: I was ill **so** I could not come.

CONJUNCTIONS

2. Subordinating Conjunctions: Read the following sentences.

If you work hard, you will succeed.

(a) Since I was busy, I could not call you up.

(b) In these sentences, conjunctions like 'if', 'since' etc join two clauses. If sentence are divided into clauses, one will be the **principal clause** and the other the **subordinate clause**. Here the subordinate clause depends on the principal clause.

(c) The conjunction which joins a subordinates clause is called subordinating conjunction. Here the conjunction is needed to make the sentence meaningful.

(d) The following Subordinating conjunction are used depending on the meaning of the sentence.

(i) **Time : When, whenever, till, until, before, since, while, as soon as, as long as, just as.**

1. When I saw him, I stopped my car.

2. As soon as it rains, the farmers will sow the seeds.

(ii) **Place : Where, wherever,**

1. You can go wherever you want.

(iii) **Cause : Since, because, as,**

1. She came because I called her up.

2. As he is a miser, no one likes him.

(iv) **Purpose : That, so that, in order that, lest**

1. We eat so that we may live.

2. Run fast lest you should miss the train.

(v) **Result : So that, such . . . that**

1. He is so weak that he cannot even stand.

2. He is such a fool that he doesn't understand anything.

(vi) **Condition : If, supposing, unless, provided.**

1. He cannot succeed unless he works hard.

2. I will help him provided he mends his ways.

(vii) **Manner : As, as if, as though, as far as.**

1. He scolded me as if he were my father.

Note : If 'as' denotes the reason, it is not followed by 'so'

As I was ill, so I could not come (Remove 'so')

'Since' is also not followed by 'so'.

Since he is a liar , so I do not trust him. (Remove 'so')

(viii) **Comparison : As, as as, so.....as, than**

1. A wise enemy is better than a foolish friend.

2. He is as good as she at English.

Note:

(1) So as/as.....as is used to make a comparison between two person or things.

(A) So... as is used in negative Sentences.

E.g.: He is not so good as you. (Negative)

➤ But As as is used in both Affirmative and Negative sentences.

E.g.: He is as good as you. (Affirmative)

He is not as good as you. (Negative)

(ix) **Contrast (Difference): Though, although, however.**

(a) Though he worked hard, he failed.

(b) I tried very hard however, I could not win the race.

(3) **Correlative Conjunction:**

Conjunctions that appear in pair are correlative conjunction.

E.g.: 'Either ... or', 'neither ... nor', both and, not only but also, though yet, whether ... or.

E.g.: Neither his friends nor his parents knew about his evil intention.

I do not know whether he will come or not.

(4) **Compound Conjunction:**

A group of words used as a conjunction is called **Compound conjunction**.

In order that: The announcement was made **in order that** all might know the new date of exam.

On condition that: I will give you money **on condition that** you will not misuse it.

Even if: She will succeed in life **even if** she faces some initial failures.

So that: We eat **so that** we may live.

Provided that: You can take any dress **provided that** you return it after the party.

As though: He shows off **as though** he is very rich.

As well as: Ram **as well as** his friends has come to the party.

As soon as: The farmers will sow the seeds **as soon as** it rains.

As if: He scolded me **as if** he were my father.

➤ Questions are frequently asked from the following rules -

Rule 1

(1) **And**

(2) **As well as**

(3) **Both and**

(4) **Not only but also**

➤ These co-relatives are used to join nouns, pronouns etc. but as far as adjectives are concerned, they join two desirable or two undesirable adjectives but not a desirable adjective with an undesirable one.

E.g.: He is **both** intelligent **and** hard working.

He is **not only** dishonest **but also** lazy.

Rule 2

➤ If two subjects are joined by 'as well as'/'with'/'alongwith'/'and not'/'in addition to'/'but'/'besides'/'except'/'rather than'/'accompanied by', the verb agrees with the first subject.

E.g. Ram as well as his friends is coming.

He and not his parents is guilty.

T

T

Rule 3

- Many times conjunctions are used at wrong places. In a sentence, the conjunction must not be misplaced.

E.g.: Not only he cheated his friends but also his parents. (x)

He cheated **not only** his friends but also his parents. (✓)
1stNoun 2ndNoun

- In this sentence 'his friends' and 'his parents' are the two nouns we are talking about. 'Not only' should come before 'his friends' and 'but also' should come before 'his parents'.

Other examples:-

1. Sit either quietly or go away. (x)
2. Neither the poor villagers grow nor eat vegetables. (x)
- Both the sentences are wrong because when conjunctions are in pairs (co-relative), the position of the conjunction matters.

E.g.: (1) Either sit quietly **or** go away. (✓)
1stVerb 2ndVerb

(2) The poor villagers **neither** grow nor eat vegetables. (✓)
1stVerb 2ndVerb

Rule 4

- When conjunction are in pairs, the pair must be correct.

Some Common Conjunctions

And

Otherwise, or else

Therefore,

Consequently

Neither... nor

So....that

So.....as

Whether.....or

As soon as

Or.....

Not only.....but also

Some Common Conjunctions

As well as

So, hence

Either.....or

Both.... and

Too....to

As.....as

As.....so

But

No sooner.....than

Scarcely.....when

Hardly.....when

Where
Wherever
Whenever
While
As.... ,
Such.....that
Provided
Though
Whereas
As though

When
Until/Unless....,
Because
Lest.....should
If
As if
Although
Nevertheless
As far as

E.g.: (1) Though he worked hard but he failed.(x)

Though he worked hard **yet** he failed.(✓)

- (2) He is both intelligent as well as industrious. (x)
He is **both** intelligent **and** industrious.(✓)
- (3) The party is **between** 7 p.m **and** 9 p.m. (✓)
- (4) The party is **from** 7 p.m **to** 9 p.m.(✓)
- (5) I have **no other** aim but to succeed in life.(x)
- (6) I have **no other** aim **than** to succeed in life (✓)
- (7) Nothing **else but** arrogance ruined him.(✓)
- (8) He asked me if I was coming or not. (x)
- (9) He asked me **whether** I was coming or not.(✓)

Rule 5

So ... that

Too to

E.g.: (1) I am so happy. (x)

I am **very** happy. (✓)

(2) He is **so** tired **that** he cannot walk. ('too ... to' can be used in place of so... that)

He is **too** tired **to** walk.

(3) It is **too** hot **to** go out.

It is **so** hot **that** we cannot go out.

(4) She is **so** weak **that** she cannot walk.

She is **too** weak **to** walk.

(5) This problem is **so** complicated **that** no one can solve it.

This problem is **too** complicated for anyone **to** solve it.

➤ Explanation to sentence 5 If '**any one**' is not mentioned before '**to solve**', 'this problem' becomes the subject of 'solve' and the meaning of sentence will become wrong. Always remember that if the subject changes the **2nd** subject must be mentioned before '**to + V₁**'.

(6) It is **so** expensive **that** I cannot buy it.

It is **too** expensive for me **to** buy it.

- Another method: In sentences 5 and 6, the second part of sentence can be converted into **passive voice**, and the 2nd subject can be mentioned in 'by + subject'.
The **2nd sub** which is different from the **1st sub** comes in 'by+sub' and then the meaning of sentence becomes correct.
Infinitive- To + V₁ (active voice).
- **To + be + V₃** (passive voice).

- This problem is too complicated **to be solved** by anyone.
- It is too expensive **to be bought** by me.

Rule 6

Neither nor (none of the two)

Either or (one of the two)

Neither Ram nor Shyam has come.
 S.S. S.V.



Neither Ram nor his friends have come.
 P.S. P.V.



Has Ram or his friends come?
 S.V. S.S.



- If two subjects are joined by 'neither ... nor', 'either or', 'nor' and 'or' the verb agrees with the nearest subject.

Rule 7

- 'Neither of' means '**none of the two**'. If '**more than two persons or things**' are present, '**none of**' is used.
- **Either of** means '**one of the two**'. If **more than two persons or things** are present, '**one of**' is used.

E.g.: **None of** his four sons looked after him. (✓)

Either of the students of your class has done this mischief. (✗)

One of the students of your class has done this mischief. (✓)

Rule 8

As soon as

As soon as he will come, I will call you up. (✗)

As soon as he comes, I will call you up. (✓)

If **two actions take place one after the other in future** and if **the second action depends on the first**, the **first action will be in simple present tense** and the **second action will be in simple future tense**. (see Future conditional sentences)

Rule 9

Note: 'If/when' is not followed by 'then'.

E.g.: When I come, then, I will meet you.

- Similarly 'since / as / because' are not followed by 'so / therefore'.

E.g.: Since I was ill, I could not come.

Note: 'As you sow, so shall you reap' (a phrase where 'as' is followed by 'so')

Rule 10

No sooner than

Hardlywhen

Scarcely..... when

Note: (1) Always use the correct pair.

E.g.: 1. **No sooner** did he see me, when he ran away. (Replace 'when' by 'than')

2. No Sooner had the thief seen the police then he ran away. (Replace 'then' by 'than')

(2) These three **co-relatives** are used only in **past tense**.

(3) If a sentence starts with 'Hardly', 'Scarcely' , 'No sooner', 'Not only', 'Neither etc., the sentence formation following these conjunctions will be in inverted form i.e. **helping verb + sub + main verb** (here 'Had + S + V₃' or 'Did + S + V₁') but this does not make the sentence interrogative in meaning.

E.g.: Hardly I saw him when I stopped my car. (x)

Hardly did I see him when I stopped my car. (✓)

Rule 11

Lest Should

.... or

.... otherwise

- **Use the correct pair.**

Run fast **lest** you will miss the train. (x)

Run fast **lest** you **should** miss the train.(✓)

Note: 'Lest' can also take simply 'V₁' after it.

Take care lest he fall.(✓)(Not 'falls')

Rule 12

'Unless', 'until' and 'till'

1. There is a difference between 'until' and 'unless'. 'Until' is 'time oriented' and 'unless' is 'action oriented'.

E.g.: **Until** the light turns red, no one will stop.

Unless you work hard, you won't succeed.

2. We do not begin a sentence with 'till'.

E.g.: **Till** the train gets the signal, it will not proceed. (x)

('till' must be converted into 'until')

Rule 13

- 'Until/unless' is not followed by 'not'.
E.g.: Until the train will not get the signal it will not run. (x)
Until the train gets the signal, it will not run.
Note: 'Will/would/shall' does **not** come after 'until' and 'unless'. (✓)
E.g.: Unless the Government will not take action, corruption will not stop. (x)
Unless the Government takes action, corruption will not stop. (✓)

Rule 14

- In affirmative sentences 'doubt' and 'doubtful' are followed by 'if/whether'. In negative or interrogative sentences 'doubt' and 'doubtful' are followed by 'that'.

E.g.: Affirmative sentence

Negative / Interrogative

Doubt _ if / whether

Doubt that

Doubtful if / whether

Doubtful that

E.g.:1. He doubts that she will help him. (x)

He doubts if/whether she will help him. (Affirmative sentence)

2. I have no doubt if/whether he will cheat me (x)

I have no doubt that he will cheat me. (Negative sentence)

3. I am doubtful that my parents will allow me to go to the party. (v)

I am doubtful if/whether he will allow me to go to the party. (x)

4. He is not doubtful if/whether I will finish his work in time.

He is not doubtful / whether I will finish his work in time (x)
He is **not doubtful** that I will finish his work in time. (Negative)

Rule 15

- '**The same**' is followed by '**that**' or '**as**' .
 - '**The same**' is followed by '**that**' if a verb comes after '**the same**'.

➤ But '**the same**' is followed by '**as**' if there is no verb after '**as**'.

E.g.: This is the same book as mine.

Rule 16

- (i) 'As as' and 'so as' are used for comparison. 'As as' is used in positive as well as negative sentences and 'so ... as' is used in **negative** sentences.

E.g.: (1) He is as intelligent as you. (positive sentence)

(2) He is not as intelligent as you. (negative sentence)

(3) He is not so intelligent as you. (negative sentence)

(ii) Only the positive degrees of adverbs and adjectives can be used with 'As as' and 'so ... as'.

E.g.: (1) He ran as faster as he could (change faster into fast)

(2) He is as better as you. (change better into good)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) You are quite cynical/ (b) when you say that the reason why we have/ (c) such a large turnout is because we are serving refreshments./ (d) No error.
2. (a) That store/ (b) hadn't hardly/ (c) any of those goods./ (d) No error.
3. (a) I needed that money/ (b) so desperately, it was/ (c) like manna from heaven when it arrived./ (d) No error.
4. (a) The period/ (b) between 1980 to 1990/ (c) was very significant in my life./ (d) No error.
5. (a) No sooner had the hockey match started/ (b) when it began/ (c) to rain./ (d) No error.
6. (a) She is very/ (b) beautiful/ (c) but intelligent./ (d) No error.
7. (a) Your success in the IAS examinations depends not only on/ (b) what papers you have selected/ (c) but on how you have written them/ (d) No error.
8. (a) No sooner had/ (b) he arrived then/ (c) he was asked to leave again./ (d) No error.
9. (a) I haven't been/ (b) to New York before and/ (c) neither my sister./ (d) No error.
10. (a) Scarcely had/ (b) I arrived than/ (c) the train left./ (d) No error.
11. (a) The reason why/ (b) he was rejected/ (c) was because he was too young./ (d) No error.
12. (a) Unless you do not give/ (b) the keys of the safe/ (c) you will be shot./ (d) No error.
13. (a) None of the diplomats at the conference/ (b) was able either to/ (c) comprehend or solve the problem./ (d) No error.
14. (a) I have found that he is/ (b) neither willing/ (c) or capable./ (d) No error.
15. (a) We are extremely pleased/(b) for excited as well to invite you/(c) to attend the meeting./ (d) No error.
16. (a) When her son got a job/ (b) then she was/ (c) very happy./ (d) No error.
17. (a) Bread and butter/ (b) is/ (c) all we want./ (d) No error.
18. (a) The cost of the new/ (b) machines is likely to/ (c) be so high as ten/ (d) times the existing ones./ (e) No error.
19. (a) He walked as faster/ (b) as he could so that/ (c) he would not miss the train to work./ (d) No error.
20. (a) She was running/ (b) a very high fever/(c) and thus her mother takes her to the doctor./ (d) No error.
21. (a) No sooner the teacher/ (b) enter the class/ (c) than the students stood up./ (d) No error.

22. (a) Unless / (b) you will work hard, / (c) you cannot pass. / (d) No error.
23. (a) Keep him at an arm's length / (b) lest you may not repent / (c) in the long run. / (d) No error.
24. (a) The briefing / (b) will be held / (c) between 2pm. to 3pm. / (d) No error.
25. (a) Unless you do not meet / (b) all the requirements / (c) your application will be rejected. / (d) No error.
26. (a) Not only he / (b) bakes cakes / (c) but also sells them. / (d) No error.
27. (a) No sooner she had realized / (b) her blunder than she began / (c) to take corrective measures. / (d) No error.
28. (a) She was not / (b) so well versed in / (c) English that we had expected. / (d) No error.
29. (a) Mr. Sinha, my friend, philosopher and guide not only stopped coming / (b) here but also going to any place / (c) which is related to his wife's life. / (d) No error.
30. (a) Neither the doctor nor the nurses / (b) were asleep when / (c) the injured was brought to the hospital. / (d) No error.
31. (a) As soon as the peon rings the bell, then all / (b) the students come to the assembly room / (c) for prayer. / (d) No error.
32. (a) Hardly had he come out of the bus / (b) then the bomb exploded / (c) and shattered the bus into pieces. / (d) No error.
33. (a) Scarcely had I bought / (b) the ticket when the train / (c) left the platform with a hissing sound. / (d) No error.
34. (a) Many of the freedom fighters / (b) are so respectful as Gandhiji / (c) if not more. / (d) No error.
35. (a) This is perhaps the same place who / (b) was chosen by us / (c) for the picnic. / (d) No error.
36. (a) She asked me that why I was / (b) not preparing for the / (c) Civil Service Examinations. / (d) No error.
37. (a) Run fast / (b) lest you will / (c) lose the race / (d) No error.
38. (a) As Amir Khan is a perfectionist, / (b) so he always insists / (c) on retakes till he is satisfied with the shot. / (d) No error.
39. (a) You must either / (b) work hard / (c) else be prepared to lead a miserable life. / (d) No error.
40. (a) I don't know if any of the students / (b) of our school is going / (c) to pay any heed to the principal's order or not. / (d) No error.
41. (a) This is not such a / (b) complicated problem who cannot be solved / (c) with determination. / (d) No error.
42. (a) Although these books / (b) are not useful but the students buy them / (C) because their seniors did so. / (d) No error.
43. (a) He did not / (b) succeed in the examination, / (c) yet he had worked hard and had adopted the right strategy. / (d) No error.
44. (a) He has lots / (b) of money and / (c) he will not help any one / (d) No error.
45. (a) Because he is intelligent, / (b) therefore he gets good / (c) marks in all the examinations. / (d) No error.
46. (a) Both the rich along with / (b) the poor are affected equally / (c) when prices of petrol and diesel increase. / (d) No error.

47. (a) I cannot say/ (b) if he has paid/ (c) the fee or not./ (d) No error.
48. (a) Ten years have passed/ (b) that I returned from/ (c) America and settled in India./ (d) No error.
49. (a) It was almost/ (b) ten years ago since he wrote/ (c) a letter to me enquiring about my well being./ (d) No error.
50. (a) He would not/ (b) have died when you had/ (c) helped him in time./ (d) No error.
51. (a) Scarcely we had/ (b) reached the office/ (c) when it started raining cats and dogs./ (d) No error.
52. (a) The labourers/ (b) relax/ (c) between 4.00 p.m. to 5.00 p.m./ (d) No error.

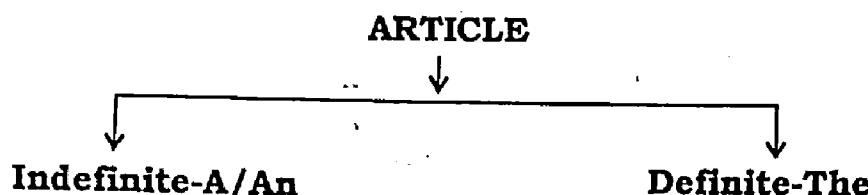
Answers with explanation

1. (c) 'Because' doesn't come with 'the reason why' because then the sentence becomes superfluous.
2. (b) 'Hardly' is negative in meaning. 'Not' doesn't come with 'hardly'. 'Had' will come in place of 'hadn't'.
3. (b) 'So' must be followed by 'that'. 'That' will come after 'so desperately'.
4. (b) 'Between' is followed by 'and' and not 'to'.
5. (b) 'No sooner' is followed by 'than' and not when.
6. (c) Change 'but' into 'and'.
7. (c) 'But also' follows 'not only'. Add 'also' after 'but'.
8. (b) 'No sooner' is followed by 'than' and not 'then'.
9. (c) 'Neither' is followed by 'helping verb' and then the subject. 'Neither has my sister' is the correct sentence form.
10. (b) 'Scarcely' is followed by 'when' and not 'than'.
11. (c) 'Because' cannot come with 'the reason why' because then the sentence becomes superfluous.
12. (a) 'Unless' is not followed by 'not'. The sentence must be 'unless you give'.
13. (b) In the given sentence 'comprehend' and 'solve' are the two verbs. Either must come before 'comprehend' because 'or' has been used before 'solve'. Hence put 'either' after 'to'.
14. (c) 'Neither' is followed by 'nor' and not 'or'.
15. (b) Change 'for' into 'and'.
16. (b) 'When' is not followed by 'then'.
17. (c) Add 'that' after 'all'.
18. (c) 'So as' is used in negative sentences. Here 'as as' must be used.
19. (a) With 'as as' the adjective/adverb will come in their positive degree. Change 'faster' into 'fast'.
20. (c) Change 'thus her mother takes' into 'so her mother took'.
21. (a) 'No sooner' is followed by a 'helping verb' and then the 'sub'. 'No sooner did the teacher enter' will be the correct way of writing this sentence.

22. (b) Will/shall/would do not come with 'unless'/'if'/'until'/'provided'/'before'/'after'/'in case' and 'as soon as'. 'You study hard' must come in place of 'you will study hard'.
23. (a) Change 'may not' into 'should'
24. (c) Change 'to' into 'and'. 'Between' is followed by 'and' and not 'to'.
25. (a) 'Unless' is not followed by 'not'. 'Unless you meet' will be the correct sentence formation.
26. (a) Put 'not only' after 'he'. It is a question of misplaced conjunction.
27. (a) 'Had' must come after 'no sooner' and then the subject must follow.
28. (c) 'So as' is the right pair. 'As' must come in place of 'that'.
29. (a) 'Not only' has come here at the wrong place. It is a matter of misplaced conjunction. 'Not only' must come before 'coming'.
30. (d)
31. (a) 'Then' cannot come with 'as soon as'.
32. (b) 'Hardly' is followed by 'when' and not 'then'.
33. (d)
34. (b) 'So ... as' is used in negative sentences. Use 'as ... as' in this sentence.
35. (a) 'The same' is followed by 'that' and moreover 'who' is not used for 'places'.
36. (a) The use of 'that' before 'wh family' is wrong when the sentence is in interrogative form in indirect speech. Remove 'why'.
37. (b) 'Lest' is followed by 'should' and not 'will'.
38. (b) 'As' is not followed by 'so'.
39. (c) Change 'else' into 'or'. 'Either or' is the correct co-relative.
40. (a) Change 'if' into 'whether'. 'Whether....or' is the correct pair of conjunction.
41. (b) 'Such' is followed by 'that'. Change 'who' into 'that'.
42. (b) 'Although' is not followed by 'but'.
43. (c) Change 'yet' into 'though'.
44. (b) Change 'and' into 'but'.
45. (b) 'because'/'as'/'since' are not followed by 'therefore'.
46. (a) 'Both' is followed by 'and' and not 'along with'.
47. (b) Change 'if' into 'whether'.
48. (b) 'Since' must come in place of 'that'.
49. (b) 'When' will come after 'ago' as a point of time is denoted.
50. (b) Change 'when' into 'if'.
51. (a) Change 'we had' into 'had we'.
52. (c) 'Between' is followed by 'and' and not 'to'.

'A', 'An', 'The' are called Articles.

'A' and 'An' 'are' called **Indefinite Articles** while 'the' is called **Definite Article**.



- A/An are used before singular countable nouns when they are indefinite and introduced for the first time.
 - (a) This is chair. (✗)
This is a chair. (✓)
 - (b) Sita sang song. (✗)
Sita sang a song. (✓)
 - (c) This is umbrella. (✗)
This is an umbrella.(✓)
- Where are articles used ?
She is _____ excellent. (Here no article will come because there is no noun after excellent. An article needs a noun in absence of which, we cannot use any article.)
She is an excellent student.(✓)
- An 'article' comes before a 'noun'.

E.g.: She is a noun student.

- If an adjective qualifies the noun, the 'article' comes before the 'adjective'.

E.g.: She is adj noun excellent student.

- If an 'adverb' qualifies the 'adjective' qualifying the 'noun', the 'article' comes before the 'adverb'.

ARTICLE

E.g.: She is a very good student.
 adv adj noun

Use of A/An

1. A/An are used before indefinite singular countable nouns

A/An are called indefinite articles

E.g.: (a) I have **a** car. (c) This is **an** orange.
(b) He sang **a** song. (d) Ram is **a** student.

- **(A)** **An** is used only before vowel sounds. Remember '**a,e,i,o,u**' do not necessarily produce vowel sound. We must see the Hindi letters if we are comfortable in Hindi because the vowels of Hindi letters (अ, आ, इ, ई, उ, ऊ, ए, ऐ, ओ, औ) can be helpful else we need to learn phonetics.

➤ (B) If the word starts not with vowel sound but with consonant sound, article 'A' is used.

E.g.: A <u>n</u> umbrella	A <u>u</u>niversity
A <u>u</u>nion	A <u>e</u>w
A <u>o</u>ne rupee note	An <u>h</u>onest man

E.g.:

- (a) He is **an** MLA/ MP
- (b) He lodged **an** FIR.
- (c) He is **an** IAS officer.
- (d) He is **an** SDO.
- (e) I have **an** x-ray machine.
- (f) She is **an** LLB.
- (g) I have been waiting for **an** hour.
- (h) He is **an** heir to the throne.
- (i) Ram is **an** honest person.

➤ Other Examples

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. An hour. | 14. A unit. |
| 2. An honour. | 15. A union. |
| 3. An honourable person. | 16. An Umbrella |
| 4. An honest man | 17. A unique planet. |
| 5. An heir. | 18. A useful book. |
| 6. A house | 19. A year. |
| 7. An honorarium. | 20. A one-rupee note. |
| 8. A historical monument. | 21. A one-eyed man. |
| 9. A young man. | 22. An orange |
| 10. A ewe. | 23. An F.O. |
| 11. An eagle. | 24. A forest officer. |
| 12. A European. | 25. An M.P |
| 13. A university. | 26. A Member of Parliament. |

1. **A/An** is used before singular countable nouns which means that can be counted.

- E.g.: (a) I have **a** pen.
 (b) She has **a** car.
 (c) Ram has **an** umbrella.
 (d) She is **a** housewife.

Note: Noise is an **uncountable** noun, yet it takes 'a' before it.

- E.g.: (a) Do not make **a** noise.
 (b) In **exclamatory sentences**, **A/An** is used after '**what**' and '**how**' and before the singular countable noun that comes in the sentence.

- E.g.: (a) What **a** grand building!
 (b) What **a** pretty girl!

3. **In place of 'per'**, '**a/an**' can be used.

- E.g.: (a) This car runs twenty kilometres **a** litre.
 (b) I earn ten thousand **a** month.
 (c) This train runs 27 kilometres **an** hour.

4. With a few words that denote the number of countable nouns such as '**hundred**', '**thousand**', '**million**', '**dozen**', '**couple**' etc '**a**' is used.

- E.g.: (a) **A** dozen apples.
 (b) I have **a** hundred pens.

5. '**A'** is used before fractions and **half/fractions**.

- (a) $2\frac{1}{4}$ m - two and **a** quarter metre.

- (b) $3\frac{1}{2}$ km - Three and **a** half metre.

- (c) She has to run **half a** mile everyday.

6. When a verb is used as a noun, it takes article '**A/An**' before it.

- E.g.: (a) He goes for **a walk** daily.
 (b) He has gone for **a ride**.
 (c) I had **a talk** with them.

7. If **many/rather/quite/such** takes a singular noun after them, '**A/An**' is used before the noun.

- (a) Many **a** citizen would welcome such a change.
 (b) It is rather **a** pity.
 (c) It was quite **an** impossible task.
 (d) It was such **a** foolish decision.

➤ In a few phrases **A/An** is used.

In a fix, in a hurry, In a nutshell, make a noise, make a foot, keep a secret, as a rule, at a stone's throw, a short while ago, at a loss, take a fancy to, take an interest in, take a liking, a pity, tell a lie.

E.g.: (a) Never tell a lie.

(b) Do not make a noise.

(c) Twelve inches make a foot.

➤ In a few phrases **A/An** are not used. Some of these phrases are-

To lose heart, to set foot, to give ear, at home, last but not least, to catch fire, in hand, set on fire, by car/bus etc, at last, by mistake, in danger, to take heart.

E.g.: (a) I am at home.

(b) The house was set on fire.

(c) I go to college by bus.

Where do we omit '**A/An**' ?

➤ It should **not** be used with a plural noun.

E.g.: A boys have come (x)

pl.n.

Boys have come (✓)

The boys have come (✓)

➤ **A/An is not used with uncountable nouns.**

Advice, Accommodation, Baggage, Luggage, News, Permission, Progress, Scenery, Weather, Traffic, Knowledge, Music, Wine, Equipment, Information, Poetry, Furniture, Hair, Business, Mischief, Bread, Stationery Crockery, Postage, Wastage, Money, Jewellery, Breakage, Work, Evidence.

E.g.: (a) He gave me an advice (remove 'an')

(b) I will buy a furniture today (remove 'a')

➤ **NOTE:** A few words are used before certain uncountable nouns to make them countable.

E.g.: (a) I have a piece of information for you.

(b) I had a slice of bread.

(c) He gave me a piece of work to do.

➤ Articles are not used before the nouns, in sentences, starting with '**what kind of**', '**what sort of**', '**what type of**' and '**what variety of**'.

E.g.: (a) What sort of a man he is ! (x)

What sort of man he is ! (✓)

➤ **Use of Definite article 'The'**

➤ '**The**' is used before **definite nouns** towards which we can **point out**; the nouns that we can **visualize** or that has **already been introduced**. '**The**' is hence called **Definite article**.

E.g.: (a) Once upon a time, there lived a **king**. **The king** was very kind. One day, he met an **old man**. **The old man** was very poor.

In the first sentence 'a **king**' is introduced. In the second sentence, we have become familiar with the character '**king**' and hence '**the**' comes before '**king**'. In the third sentence '**an old man**' is introduced and in the fourth sentence after we have become familiar with the character '**old man**', '**the**' comes before '**old man**'.

- (b) **The man** in white shirt is my brother.
(c) **The boy** standing near the gate is my brother. In sentence (b)& (c), '**the**' is used to be specific about the noun we are talking about.

USE OF ARTICLE WITH DIFFERENT KINDS OF NOUN

PROPER NOUN

1. Article **never comes with the names of any person or place**.

E.g.: Ram was an obedient son.

Rome is an ancient city.

Exceptions:-

In the following cases article **A/An** is used before **proper nouns**.

E.g.: (a) **A Mr. Sharma** has come to meet you.

- (b) This book is written by **a Dinesh Mishra**.

In sentences (a) and (b), the nouns '**Mr. Sharma**' and '**Mr. Dinesh Mishra**' are not known to the speaker and he knows only the name that has been conveyed to him, so **A** is used before '**Mr. Sharma**' and '**Mr. Dinesh Mishra**'

- When a **person or place** is mentioned in a sentence for **comparative purpose**, '**the**' comes before that proper noun.

(a) He is **the Ram** of modern India.

(b) He is **a Hitler**.

(c) Jaipur is **the Rome** of India.

- '**The**' comes before the **names of a few places**.

E.g.: **The Ukraine**

The Great Britain

The Netherlands

The Hague.

2. '**The**' does **not** come with the **names of States**. Exception- '**The Punjab**'.

3. '**The**' is **not** used with the **name of any country**.

E.g.: America, Russia, China etc.

However, if '**Union**', '**United**', '**Republic**' or '**Kingdom**' comes with the names of the country, '**the**' is used.

E.g.: The U.S.A., The Soviet Union, The Irish Republic.



4. 'The' comes before the names of mountain ranges.

E.g.: 'The Himalayas', 'The Alps'.

Note: 'Aravali' is not a mountain range. Hence 'the' doesn't come before it.

> 'The' doesn't come before the names of mountain peaks.

E.g.: Mt. Everest, Mt. Abu.

5. 'The' comes before 'nationality' but not with the name of any 'language'.

E.g.: The English speak English.

The English defeated the French.

6. Article does not come before the name of any disease.

Exceptions: The Measles, The Rickets, The Mumps, The Plague, The Flu.

7. 'The' is used with the following Proper Nouns:-

- (i) Names of Rivers: The Yamuna, the Ganga, the Godawari, the Sutlej.
- (ii) Names of Seas: The Arabian sea, the Caribbean sea.
- (iii) Names of Oceans: The Indian Ocean, the Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean.
- (iv) Names of Groups of islands: The Lakshadweep, the Andaman and Nicobar Islands.
- (v) Names of Heavenly Objects: The Sun, the Venus,
- (vi) Names of Bays: The Bay of Bengal.
- (vii) Names of Deserts: The Sahara Desert.
- (viii) Names of Canals: The Suez Canal.
- (ix) Names of Newspapers: The Hindu, The Times of India.
- (x) Names of Movements: The Quit India Movement
- (xi) Names of Union: The U.N.
- (xii) Names of Airways/ Trains: The Jet Airways, the Intercity, the Rajdhani Express.
- (xiii) Names of Political Parties: The BJP, the Congress.
- (xiv) Names of Statutes/Acts: The Indian Penal code, The Legislature.
- (xv) Names of Musical Instruments: The flute, the violin.
- (xvi) Names of Religion: The Hindus, the Muslims, the Sikhs
- (xvii) Names of Inventions: The telescope, the telephone.
- (xviii) Names of Clubs: The Lions Club,
- (xix) Names of Dynasty: The Marathas, the Peshwas.
- (xx) Names of body parts: Only when a possessive adjective is replaced by any article otherwise articles don't come before parts of body.
E.g.: He was wounded in his/the eye.
- (xxi) Dates: The 10th of May.
- (xxii) Army/Police: The Army, the Police.



- (xxiii) **Names of planets:** The Venus, the Mars.
- (xxiv) **Names of hotels:** The Taj Hotel.
- (xxv) **Names of trophies/Cups:** The World Cup.
- (xxvi) **Names of Era, Revolutions & Wars:** The Middle Ages, The French Revolution.
- (xxv) **Names of things that are unique:** The world, The universe, the environment, the atmosphere.

9. 'The' comes before **space** only when it means 'room'.

E.g.: (a) He tried to park his car but **the** space was not enough.

- (b) Many astronauts dream of going to space.

10. 'The' is used before directions - **The East, The West.**

If direction comes before the name of any place, 'the' is not used.

E.g.: **West Bengal**

Article does not come before **Northern, Southern, Eastern, Western** as they are adjectives and will not take any article unless followed by a suitable noun.

E.g.: **Western India**

Some more examples-

1. **The sun rises in the east.**
2. **He is going to North America.**
3. **Rajasthan is in Western India.**
4. **Sweden is in Northern Europe.**
11. **Before the names of holy books:** The Gita, The Bible.
12. **Before the names of monuments :** The Taj Mahal, the Red fort.

Note: 'The' does not come before the names of **buildings, monuments** and **sacred books** if the name comprises two or more words out of which **one is the name of a person or place**,

E.g.: Delhi Airport, Victoria Palace, London Zoo, Jai Singh Palace, Indira Gandhi Airport, Valmiki's Ramayan, Banabhatt's Kadambiri.

13. Names of movements: The Quit India Movement.

14. Names of Posts: The chairman, The director

Here A/An can also be used before the names of the posts if we are talking about one out of many similar posts.

E.g.: She is a director of many companies.

➤ **Articles do not come with :**

- (i) **Names of months :** July, September etc.
- (ii) **Names of days:** Sunday, Monday etc.
- (iii) **Names of subjects:** Maths, Physics etc.

ARTICLE

- (iv) **Names of roads:** Mall road, M. K. Road etc.
- (v) **Names of meals:** Lunch, Dinner etc.
- (vi) **Names of languages:** English, Hindi etc.
- (vii) **Names of Hobbies:** Gardening, Singing etc.
- (viii) **Names of Games:** Hockey, Cricket etc.
- (ix) **Before noun complement:** appoint, make, elect, select.

E.g.: They elected him **the** president.

(x) 'The' is not used before 'Heaven', 'Hell', 'God' and 'Parliament'.

E.g.: (i) Go to hell.

(ii) God resides in heaven.

(iii) The bill was passed in Parliament.

➤ **COMMON NOUN**

1. If an object is **already known** to both the speaker and the listener, article 'The' is used before it.

E.g.: (a) Kindly return **the** book . (That I gave you)

(b) Can you turn off **the** light.(The light in the room)

2. If an **article** comes before a **singular common noun**, it can represent the **entire species**.

E.g.: A dog is a faithful animal.

NOTE: Man doesn't come under this rule because the word 'man' means a human being.

E.g.: Man is mortal.

3. When we talk about a **personality present inside a person**, article comes with the name of that personality.

E.g.: (a) **The** judge (moral of judge) in him, prevailed upon **the** father (love of father for his son) and he sentenced his son to death.

(b) **A** mother (feelings of motherhood) was born in her when she saw the baby.

4. If **Schools, colleges, Temple** are denoted in reference to their primary purpose, article is not used.

E.g.: Children should go to school.

I go to temple every morning.

- An article is used if school, college,temple etc. denotes a place or a building and not its primary purpose.

E.g.: My house is behind **a** school.

The college is next to **the** temple.

➤ **Abstract Noun/Material Noun**

No Article is generally used with abstract nouns. They are uncountable nouns hence A/An cannot be used with them.

E.g.: Gold is precious.

Honesty is the best policy.

> Note: If nouns are followed by 'of' an article **preceeds** the noun.

Article + Noun + of + ...

(1) The cotton of Egypt is known for its superior quality.

(2) The honesty of this boy is liked by all.

> **Use of article with adjectives:-**

(1) 'The' is often used before **superlative degree**.

(a) He is **the best** student of our class.

(b) She is **the most** beautiful girl of the town.

Note: Article 'A/An' can also be used if we talk about one out of many nouns qualified by superlative adjectives.

E.g.: This is a most useful book needed for competitive exams.

(2) 'The' is used before **the comparative degree**, when two comparative degrees are shown to be directly or inversely proportional to each other.

E.g.: (a) **The more** electricity you use, **the higher** your bill will be.

(b) **The higher** you rise, **the greater** is the fall.

(3) If one out of two are chosen, a comparative degree is used **preceded by 'the'** and followed by 'of'.

E.g.: (a) He is **the stronger** of the two players.

(b) He is **the better** of the two wrestlers.

> But if one out of many are chosen, a comparative degree is used, **preceded by 'the'** and followed by 'of'.

E.g.: She is **the best** of all the players.

(4) When 'the' is used before adjectives like **honest, rich, poor, meek** etc., it denotes the entire class and becomes plural common noun. Such nouns take plural verb.

E.g.: (a) **The honest** are always rewarded.

(b) **The rich** exploit the poor.

(c) **The young and the old, the poor and the rich**, all demand corruption free India.

(5) When any adjective or a noun qualifies a proper noun, article 'the' is used with the proper noun.

E.g.: Ashoka **the great**,

The great Akbar,

Napolean, **the warrior**.

(6) 'The' is used before **Ordinal numbers (first, second, third etc)**. **Cardinal numbers such as one, two, three** do not take any article before them.

ARTICLE

- E.g.: (a) Chapter two of this book is very difficult.
(b) The second chapter of this book is very difficult.
(c) Volume one is on Grammar.
(d) The first volume is on Grammar.

(7) 'The' is used before adjective 'same' and 'whole' and after 'all' and 'both'.

- E.g.: (a) He is the same boy that met me in the market.
(b) The whole period was wasted.

- (8) When Article 'a' or 'the' is used with few and little, the sentence takes a different meaning.

- Few** (a) A few - Not equivalent to zero.
(b) Few - Equivalent to zero but not equal zero.
(c) The few - All that is available,

- Little** (a) A little - Not equivalent to nothing.
(b) Little - Equivalent to nothing but not equal to nothing.
(c) The little - All that is available.

This has been given in detail in chapter Adjective.

➤ If so, as, too, how and quite are used before **adjectives**, A/An is used if the noun that follows the adjective is singular.

- E.g.: (a) It is too heavy a box for me to carry.
(b) Rohit is not so big a businessman as you think.

USE OF ARTICLE ACCORDING TO SUBJECT - VERB AGREEMENT

- If an article is placed before the 1st subject only, it means the person/thing is the same for which two nouns are used. Hence singular verb will be used.

- E.g.: (a) A white and black gown was bought by her.
S.V.

- (b) Churchill was a great orator and a great politician of his time. (x)
Churchill was a great orator and politician of his time. (✓)

➤ But if an article is used before every subject, it refers to different people/things. Hence plural verb will be used.

- E.g.: (a) The director and the producer have come.(✓)
P.V.

- (b) The secretary and the treasurer were present there.
Here secretary & treasurer are different individuals.

➤ Difference between A/An and One:

- ### **1. A and An are articles. One is an adjective**

2. 'A' is used in the sense of 'per' as in per day, per week, per kg etc.

E.g.: Ten rupees a kilo, four times a day, sixty kilometres an hour, twelve rupees a dozen.

3. Use of 'A' and 'One' gives different meanings to a sentence when used before a noun.

- E.g.: **One** cow is not enough for our joint family (we need two or more as the consumption of milk is huge.)
A cow is a useful animal. (cows are useful)
4. **One** can be used with **another/other** but '**a**' cannot be used.
- E.g.: (a) One student wants to study, another wants to play.
(b) One day he comes, the other day he does not.
5. '**One**' comes before **day/week/month/year/summer/winter** etc., when we are referring to an incident on that particular day/week etc.
(a) One night there was a terrible storm.
(b) One day Ravana came to Sita's cottage.
6. Use of '**one day**' does not point to any particular day.
- E.g.: (a) One day you will realize your mistake.
(b) One day you will feel sorry for what you have done.
7. '**One**' can be used as **a /an pronoun** too.
- E.g.: (a) Did you get any berth? Yes, I managed to get one.
- Note:** Plural of 'one' is 'some'.
- E.g.: Did you get berths for your party workers ? Yes, I managed to get some.
8. To Avoid repetition of a 'noun' we use pronoun '**one**'.
- E.g.: This car is better than that one.

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) The loss of jobs/ (b) is regarded by some as an necessary evil/ (c) in the fight against inflation./ (d) No error.
2. (a) It is a/ (b) quarter to ten/ (c) by my watch./ (d) No error.
3. (a) Gita doesn't usually/ (b) wear jewellery but yesterday/ (c) she wore ring./ (d) No error.
4. (a) The police asked us/ (b) about our movements/ (c) on a night of crime./ (d) No error.
5. (a) In science the credit goes to a man/ (b) who convinces the world,/ (c) not to the man to whom the idea first occurs./ (d) No error.
6. (a) It is only after/ (b) the match is over/ (c) that people realize/ how exciting it is./ (d) No error.
7. (a) Of the two/ (b) sisters, she/ (c) is better./ (d) No error.
8. (a) It is unfortunate enough/ (b) to lose few friends we make/ (c) during our school days./ (d) No error.
9. (a) There were a number of intelligent gentlemen at the party/ (b) but it was Mr. Subramaniam, an eminent scientist,/ (c) who remained a centre of attraction./ (d) No error.
10. (a) I have been/ (b) informed that/ (c) Mr. Sharma, the director and the chairman will visit Patna the following month./ (d) No error.

ARTICLE

11. (a) He is/ (b) the best worker/ (c) of the factory but unfortunately least paid./ (d) No error.
12. (a) He has come out/ (b) with an unique proposal/ (c) for his friends (d) No error.
13. (a) When the house was/ (b) set on the fire, all the people/ (c) started shouting at the top of their voices./ (d) No error.
14. (a) Little knowledge/ (b) of medicine that he possessed/ (c) proved to be a blessing for him when he was in great pain./ (d) No error.
15. (a) It was/ (b) by a mistake/ (c) that he injured her hand./ (d) No error.
16. (a) These orders of/ (b) the Manager/ (c) may put the lives of two thousand workers in a danger./ (d) No error.
17. (a) I inspired him/ (b) to take the heart/ (c) in all adverse situations and deserve to be called a real hero./ (d) No error.
18. (a) The most happy/ (b) marriage would be/ (c) a union of a deaf man and a blind woman./ (d) No error.
19. (a) John suggested to/ (b) the children of his village that they should/ (c) go to the school regularly and do their home work sincerely./ (d) No error.
20. (a) Some people say that/ (b) her husband is in the jail/ (c) and so she lives alone./ (d) No error.
21. (a) The Greek peoples/ (b) are considered/ (c) very brave/ (d) No error.
22. (a) His father/ (b) asked him to go/ (c) to the temple every morning/ (d) No error.
23. (a) There was little/ (b) milk in the refrigerator and she gave it/ (c) to her crying son./ (d) No error.
24. (a) He leads/ (b) a very luxurious life / (c) so he goes to every part of India by a car./ (d) No error.
25. (a) Thanks to an effort/ (b) and persistence of the doctors, the victims of the blast/ (c) have been able to start a normal life again./ (d) No error.
26. (a) In a hour's time/ (b) I will be back/ (c) but now I have to go./ (d) No error.
27. (a) Terrorist organizations/ (b) kill innocent people/ (c) to spread a violence./ (d) No error.
28. (a) Whole world is/ (b) today facing the threat of extinction/ (c) due to the inventions of Science./ (d) No error.
29. (a) The answer/ (b) to all the sufferings of / (c) human beings lies in the Science./ (d) No error.
30. (a) The police should exercise/ (b) their authority with little/ (c) bit of sensitivity and humanity./ (d) No error.
31. (a) This is/ (b) most important/ (c) lesson which we will have to study very carefully./ No error.
32. (a) The Ganges/ (b) is for North India/ (c) what Krishna is for South India./ (d) No error.
33. (a) I like to travel/ (b) by the air as/ (c) I am a very busy person./ (d) No error.
34. (a) The Chairman and the Trustee/ (b) was removed from his/ (c) post because he had misappropriated the fund./ (d) No error.
35. (a) She found/ (b) herself in a trouble/ (c) when she saw the stalker following her persistently./ (d) No error.
36. (a) All the people/ (b) of India know that/ (c) Gandhi ji was a very wise and a noble soul./ (d) No error.

37. (a) The man / (b) is the only creature / (c) that is endowed with the art of humour./
(d) No error.
38. (a) It is very difficult/ (b) to find out the number of/ (c) the creatures living on
the earth./ (d) No error.
39. (a) While climbing/ (b) the hill, to his amazement , the/ (c) poor man found the box
of pearls./ (d) No error.
40. (a) The blast derailed the lives / (b) of many people but in an year/ (c) time leaving
apart the victims,no one remembered anything/ (d) No error.
41. (a) Cowards die/ (b) several times,/ (c) the braves die but once/ (d) No error.
42. (a) Akbar became a heir/ (b)to the throne at/ (c) a young age of thirteen/ (d) No
error.
43. (a) The both brothers/ (b) are safe now/ (c) and are recuperating./ (d) No error.
44. (a) When the principal entered the classroom/ (b) all boys shook/ (c) in their shoes/
(d) No error.
45. (a) Father in him/ (b) could not bear the condition of/ (c) his ailing daughter/ (d)
No error.
46. (a) Let judge in you/ (b) decide what/ (c) punishment should be given to him/ (d)
No error.
47. (a) My teacher said that/ (b) Sun is a/ (c) star/ (d) No error.
48. (a) Due to its beauty/ (b) Kashmir is known as/ (c) Switzerland of India/ (d) No
error.
49. (a) Most of the people of Southern India/ (b) do not know/ (c) the Hindi/ (d) No
error.
50. (a) He went for the lunch/ (b) at 1 p.m. and then/ (c) returned/ (d) No error.
51. (a) The honesty/ (b) is/ (c) a virtue./ (d) No error.
52. (a) Every morning the Sun/ (b) rises/ (c) in east/ (d) No error.
53. (a) He is/ (b) best player/ (c) in India./ (d) No error.
54. (a) When I met him/ (b) the couple of days back/ (c) he was writing a new book,/ (d)
No error.

Answers with explanations

1. (b) Use 'a' before the word 'necessary' , 'Necessary' starts with a consonant sound.
2. (a) Remove 'a'.
3. (c) 'Ring' is a singular uncountable noun and is being introduced here in the
sense of 'one'. It will hence take indefinite article 'a'.
4. (c) Change 'a' into 'the'. Here 'night of crime' is definite as it was the night when
the crime that the speaker is talking about took place. Hence definite article
'the' will be used.
5. (a) Change 'a' into 'the'.The person who convinced the world is definite. Hence
definite article 'the' will be used.
6. (b) Change 'the' into 'a'. Here we are not talking about any definite match. Hence
definite article 'a' will be used.
7. (c) Add 'the' before better. When one is chosen out of two, a comparative degree is
used preceded by 'the' and followed by 'of'.

8. (b) Add 'the' before 'few'. Here we are talking about 'the friends we make during school days'. Hence definite article 'the' will be used.
9. (c) Here one person is the centre of attraction. When only one is chosen out of all, article 'the' is used,
10. (c) Here Mr. Sharma holds two posts. Hence 'the' will come before only the first noun 'director'. (see subject-verb agreement)
11. (c) Add 'the' before least, Article 'the' comes before superlative degree of an adjective.
12. (b) Unique does not start with vowel sound. Use 'a' in place of 'an'.
13. (b) 'Set on fire' is the appropriate phrase.
14. (a) Here 'little' denotes 'small quantity' and not 'negligible quantity'. Here 'the' is best suited before 'little'.
15. (b) 'By mistake' is the correct phrase.
16. (c) 'In danger' is the correct phrase.
17. (b) 'To take heart' is the correct phrase. It means to be optimistic.
18. (c) Here we are talking about the union that is between a deaf man and a blind woman. Hence 'the' will be used.
19. (c) Here 'school' is mentioned in relation to its primary purpose. Hence no article will be used.
20. (b) Here 'jail' is mentioned in relation to its primary purpose. Hence no article will not be used.
21. (a) 'Peoples' denotes 'people of different races'. The word 'Greek' denotes only one race. Hence the use of 'the Greeks' or 'the Greek people' must replace 'the Greek peoples'.
22. (c) Here 'temple' is mentioned in relation to its primary purpose. Hence 'the' will not be used.
23. (a) Add 'a' before 'little'.
24. (c) 'By car' is the correct phrase.
25. (a) Here we are talking about the efforts and persistence shown by the doctors. Hence we need definite article 'the' before 'effort'.
26. (a) 'Hour' starts with a vowel sound. Hence use 'an' before 'hour'.
27. (c) 'Violence' is an uncountable noun. Hence 'a' will not be used. 'Spread violence' is the correct phrase.
28. (a) Add 'the' before 'whole world'.
29. (c) 'The' is not used with the name of any subject.
30. (b) Add 'a' before 'little'. Here we mean that the police must have some amount of sensitivity.
31. (b) 'Most' is a superlative degree. Hence add 'the' before 'most'.
32. (c) Add 'the' before 'Krishna'. Article 'the' comes with the names of rivers.
33. (b) 'By air' is the correct phrase.
34. (a) Remove 'the' that has been used before 'chairman'. Both the positions are held by the same person.
35. (b) Remove 'a'. 'Trouble' is an uncountable noun.
36. (c) Remove 'a'. Both the adjectives have been used for the same person.
37. (a) Remove 'the'. The word 'man' is sufficient which means human being.

38. (c) Remove 'the'.
39. (c) The poor man is unaware of the box of pearls. Hence 'a' will be used before 'box of pearls'.
40. (b) 'Year' does not start with vowel sound. Hence 'year' will be preceded by 'a'.
41. (c) 'Brave' is an adjective, it cannot be made plural by adding 's'. It becomes a plural common noun if 'the' is added before it.
42. (a) 'Heir' starts with a vowel sound. Change 'a' into 'an'.
43. (a) Add 'the' after 'both'.
44. (b) Add 'the' after 'all'.
45. (a) Add 'the' before 'father'. When we talk about the personality present inside a person, we use article 'the' before the name of the personality.
46. (a) Add 'the' before 'judge'. When we talk about the personality present inside a person, we use article 'the' before the name of the personality.
47. (b) Add 'the' before 'sun' as it is the name of a heavenly body.
48. (c) Add 'the' before 'Switzerland'. When the name of a person or place is used due to its quality and as an example, an article precedes the proper noun.
49. (c) Remove 'the'. We do not use any article with the names of languages.
50. (a) Remove 'the'. Names of meals do not take any article.
51. (a) Remove 'the'. Article is not used before 'abstract nouns'.
52. (c) Add 'the' before 'East'. The names of directions take article 'the'.
53. (b) Add 'the' before 'best' which is a superlative degree.
54. (b) Change 'The' into 'a'.

14

PREPOSITION

CHAPTER

Preposition, are those words, which are used before a noun or pronoun and denotes the relation between the noun / pronoun and the other part of the sentence.

- E.g. (i) There is a cat sitting under the table.
(ii) We need a roof over us.
(iii) I go to school by bus

Note: Prepositions are placed usually before noun / pronoun, but not always.

- E.g. (i) Who was he talking to ?
(ii) He does not have a pen to write with.

> Confusing pairs of preposition:-

Between	- Among	Beside	- Besides	For	- Since
Across	- Through	on	- upon	on	- over
in	- into	in	- within	by	- with
before	- in front of	at	- in	in spite of	- despite

- > Among is used in reference to the association with or in company of more than two.

E.g. 1. A lot of co-operation is needed among the different States to combat Naxalism.

between

2. Alms were distributed among the beggars.
3. The teacher distributed sweets among them.

- > Between is used in reference to the association of two.

among

E.g. The match will be played between India and Australia.

- > Between can be used in reference to more than two when we talk about a definite number of people etc no matter there are two or more things / persons or when we talk about mutual relationship/co-operation etc.

E.g. (i) There is a tournament to be played between India , Australia and New Zealand.

(ii) There is an alliance between the three European nations.

- > 'Between' is followed by 'and'.(See chapter Conjunction)

E.g. The meeting will be held between 10 a.m. and 4 p.m.

➢ 'Between..... and' takes Objective case of Pronoun .

E.g. There is no enmity between him and me (not He & I.)

➢ Plural noun / pronoun comes with 'Between'.

E.g.: (i) Between the countries

(ii) Between the students

(iii) Between them

(iv) Between us

➢ 'Each / Every' cannot be used after 'Between'.

E.g.: (i) Between each boy. (x)

(ii) Between every girl. (x)

(iii) There are ten millimetres between each centimetre. (x)

➢ Amongst and Among mean the same though slightly different from each other.

(i) Amongst comes before 'The'

E.g.: There was no co-operation amongst the boys.

(ii) Among is used before consonant sound, while amongst is used before vowel sound.

E.g.: (a) among them. ('them' starts consonant sound)

(b) amongst us. ('us' starts vowel sound)

However in modern English, we do not follow this rule. Wherever 'amongst' goes with the rhythm of the sentence, we use 'amongst'.

➢ Amid/Amidst is used for more than two. The difference here is the same as above. 'Amid/Amidst' can be used before uncountable nouns too.

E.g.: (i) The bill was passed amid pandemonium.

(ii) You are sitting amidst us and talking against us.

2. Beside and Besides

Adjacent apart from

Eg.: (i) He sat beside me

(ii) Besides his children his nephews and nieces were also present at the ceremony.

3. For and Since

Denotes period of time denotes point of time

E.g.: (a) I have eaten nothing for a long time.

(b) She has been living here for ten years.

(c) I have been living here since 2009.

Since, is also used to denote 'reason'.

Eg.: - Since I was unwell, I didn't take the test .

'since', 'because' and 'as' are not followed by 'So'/'therefore'/'that's why'.

Since , (✓) As/Because/Since so/therefore/that's why (x)

As(✓)

Because , (✓)

PREPOSITION

Note:- As you sow, so you shall reap (a phrase where 'as' is followed by 'so'.)
For-Indicates the purpose.

E.g.: The police is for our safety.

4. Across



from one to the other side.

I swam across the river.

Through



Via (medium)/Indicates movement from one end to the other end.

1. The message was conveyed to me by him through her.
2. The train passed through the tunnel.

➤ Across has two other meanings too -

(a) **On the opposite side**

E.g.: He is waiting for me across the road.

(b) **Both sides**

E.g.: A tree fell across the railway line that caused an accident.

1. **Come across (to meet by chance/ suddenly)**

When I was going to college, I suddenly came across my childhood friend. (x)

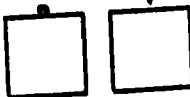
Note:- Come across means to meet suddenly or by chance. Hence 'suddenly' or 'by chance' cannot come with 'come across'.

2. 'With' cannot be used with 'come across'.

E.g.: (i) I came across with him. (x)

(ii) I came across him. (✓)

3. **on upon**



E.g.: (i) The books is on the table.
(ii) The cat jumped upon the rat.

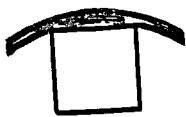
(placed in contact)
(in motion)

6. **over**



Motion or position higher than but no physical contact

E.g.: The fan is over my bed. (no physical contact)



So as to cover the whole surface no matter whether there is physical contact or not.

Eg.: (i) The bridge was built **over** the river.

(ii) Put a blanket **over** the baby.

7. Over Under



'Over' and 'under' respectively indicate placed 'higher' or 'below' something.

Eg.: (i) There is a fan **over** your bed.

(ii) A cat is sitting **under** the table.

8. In Into



Eg.: (i) We are sitting **in** the classroom. (**located inside or within**)

(ii) The boy jumped **into** the river. (Indicates **entry or insertion**)

Note: 'Into' is not used with 'enter' as the sentence becomes superfluous.

E.g.: (i) He entered **into** the room. (Remove 'into')

(ii) He threw the ball **into** the well. (use 'in' place of 'into')

Note: Enter **into** any agreement/alliance, & enter on/upon (to undertake) is correct.

9. On time

In time

on scheduled time

in the given time span

E.g.: (i) We reached the examination centre **in** time.

(ii) The examination starts **on** time.

(iii) We thought that the train would be late but it arrived exactly **in/on** time. ('on' is the appropriate preposition here.)

10. By

With

Indicates the doer

Indicates the means/ equipment.

E.g.: (i) The paper was signed **by** him with a Parker pen **in** black ink.

(ii) The snake was killed **by** him **with** a stick.

(iii) You cannot catch a big fish **with** a small rod.

11. Before

In front of

In advance/at an earlier time

Directly before or ahead of

Eg.: (i) I came **before** you.

(ii) India raised the issue of cross-border terrorism **before** the U.N.

(iii) Don't park your car **in front of** my gate.

12. At

In

Used with a relatively smaller place

Used with a relatively bigger place

Eg.: I live at Mukherjee Nagar **in** Delhi.

13. In spite of

Despite

Regardless of/notwithstanding/nevertheless

Eg.: In **spite of** working hard, he failed.

Note: Do not use 'of' with 'despite'. 'Despite' and 'inspite of' mean the same.

PREPOSITION

Eg: Despite being rich, he is not happy.

14. By

Mode of transportation takes

preposition when it comes

with 'go'/'come'/'travel'/'arrive' etc.

In
Indicates within limits/inclusion.

Eg.: (i) I am sitting in the car. (✓)

(ii) I am going in car. (✗)

(iii) I am going by car. (✓)

'On foot' means 'walking'.

Eg.: I go to Paramount on foot.

15. Exact time (hour) month year day date
at. in in on on

E.g.- I reached Delhi at 7 o' clock.

in May

on Monday

in 2005

on 7th September

► 'At' is used with the following:

at dawn, at dusk, at day break, at sunrise, at noon, at sunset, at night, at midnight etc.

Note: 'In' is used with 'morning'/'evening'. If date/day is mentioned with morning/evening , 'on' comes before the date/day.

Eg.: (i) in the morning.

(ii) in the evening.

(iii) on Sunday morning.

(iv) on the evening of May, the 2nd.

► Today, tomorrow, yesterday, the following day, the next day, yesterday evening, yesterday afternoon, last night, this morning, this afternoon, tonight, tomorrow morning, tomorrow evening do not take preposition before them.

E.g.: (i) He will go there on tomorrow. (remove 'on')

(ii) They arrived here on last night. (remove 'on')

16. After (later in time or place) and Before (preceding in time)

E.g.: (i) He came to India after a long time.

(ii) I left America before Christmas.

17. Till / until is used for 'point of time'. They are usually interchangeable and 'till' is not the contracted form of 'until'. 'Till' is rather the older form.

E.g.: (i) The Government will not pass any bill until/till next session.

Exercises

18. By is used for 'point of time' as a preposition of time.

E.g.: (i) We shall have finished the syllabus by the end of next month.

19. During denotes at some point of time in the course of some action.

E.g.: (i) During the strike, many people died.

➤ Up Down Upto
 ↑ ↓ →

E.g.: (i) He climbed up the tree.

(ii) He ran down the stairs.

(iii) Children can get free education upto the age of 14. (Upto indicates extension as far as a specific place)

➤ A few other prepositions-

➤ 'To' denotes destination.

E.g.: (i) Ram is going to college

(ii) Send him to school.

➤ 'Towards' denotes 'in the direction of'.

E.g.: (i) He is going towards the college.

➤ For can indicate goal or destination too.

E.g.: (i) He is leaving for America tonight.

➤ Along- In the line matching the length or the direction of/parallel .

E.g.: (i) I walked along the railway line.

(ii) He walks along the road. (not 'on the road')

➤ Along with- Together with someone or something.

Eg:- Come along with me.

➤ Against-

(a) In opposition to / contrary to.

Eg:- It is difficult to sail against the current.

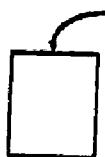
(b) Hostility to

Eg:- I am against terrorism.

(c) In contact with

Eg:- Do not stand against the railing. You may fall down.

➤ Onto



'to a position on'

PREPOSITIONS

E.g.- He jumped **onto** his horse and rode away.

➤ **With**

Indicates 'combination, accompaniment or addition'.

E.g.- I am **with** you through thick and thin.

➤ **Beyond**

Out of the reach or sphere of

E.g.- The case is **beyond** the jurisdiction of the court.

➤ **About**

(a) **Concerning**

E.g.- I know **about** him.

(b) **Approximately**

E.g.- It is **about** 100 kilometres away from Delhi.

(c) **about + infinitive** (To indicate 'intention to do action')

E.g.- I am **about to** start a new lesson.

➤ '**about + to+V₁**', '**going + to+V₁**' and '**be** + **to + V₁**' mean the same.
any form

E.g.: (a) I am **going to** start a new lesson now.

(b) The minister **is to** deliver a speech.

➤ **Above** - Means to a higher position than a level / standard / mark. 'Below' is the opposite of 'above'.

E.g.(i) The river is flowing **above** the danger level.

(ii) His English is **below** average.

(iii) The selling price of every commodity in the multiplex is **above** MRP.

(vi) The score was **below** hundred when the team lost its last wicket.

➤ **'of'**

(a) Indicates 'belonging to/possession' for non-living things.

2. Chair's leg (x)

Leg **of** chair (✓)

E.g.- 1. Table's wood (x)

Wood **of** table (✓)

(b) Indicates **Origin**

E.g.(i) He comes **of** a royal family.

(c) **Reason**

➤ die **of** disease.

➤ die 'from' reason.

E.g.(i) He died **of** cancer.

(ii) He died **from** thirst.

(d) Indicates **characteristics**

E.g.(i) The problems **of** Delhi.

➤ **'Off** - Indicates physical separation

E.g.- (i) Keep the dog **off** the flower beds.

➤ **Behind**- In, towards the back or later in time.

E.g.(i) The police are running **behind** the thief.

(ii) She hid **behind** the curtain.

(iii) The train was behind time.

► More about Preposition

(a) Objective case comes after a preposition.

E.g.: (i) I do not depend on him.
 Prep. Objective Case

(ii) She relies on me.
 Prep. Objective Case

► If two verbs/ adjectives etc take two different prepositions, we must mention both the prepositions, we cannot simply use one preposition with the last verb/adjective.

E.g.: (i) She is conscious of and engaged in her work.

(ii) I was surprised at as well as pleased with her performance.

(iii) He is senior and older than I. (Use 'to' after 'senior')

(iv) His watch is different and cheaper than mine. (Use 'from' after 'different')

(v) She is younger and taller than her brother. (✓)

► 'To' is followed by 'V₁' in case of Infinitive but when 'to' is used as a preposition, it is followed by 'V₁+ing', if a verb comes after the preposition.

E.g.: (i) He is afraid to do anything against his boss.
 to+V₁

E.g.: (ii) He is afraid of going out after sunset
 V₁+ing

Note: The following phrases end in 'to' and are followed by 'ing' form of a verb.

Questions based on these phrases are generally asked.

Be used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, prone to.

E.g.: I am looking forward to going to London
 V₁+ing

► No Preposition is used before 'home', if any of the following verbs is used.
Bring, go, come, arrive, reach, get.

(i) I went home by car.

Note: If possessive adjective or a noun with an apostrophe is used before 'home', 'to' is used before 'home' only when specific verbs are used. (Not 'arrive' and 'reach')

E.g.: (i) I went to his home.

(ii) I decided to go to Ram's home.

► Stress, emphasise, investigate, comprise, accompany, consider, violate, pervade, precede, succeed, invade, resist, enter, eschew, direct, join, sign, affect, ensure, board, discuss, describe, reach, order, tell, demand, attack, control, resemble and ridicule, are not followed by any preposition if they are used in active voice.

PREPOSITIONS

- E.g.(i) The teacher emphasised on the need of discipline in life. (Drop 'on').
(ii) I have ordered for a cup of tea. (Drop 'for')
(iii) I shall discuss about the problem with you. (Drop 'about')
(iv) (a) He described / (b) about the incident / (c) in his story. / (d) No error
(Remove about)

> 'To' should not be used with the following verbs when followed by an object. Such verbs are - **advise, tell, ask, beg, command, encourage, request, inform, thank, welcome, warn, forbid, order, remind, congratulate, compliment.**

E.g.(i) I advised **to** him to go. (Drop 'to')

- (ii) I informed **to** the police of the accident. (Drop 'to')
(iii) I was told to postpone the meeting. (✓)

> 'To' is used after **say, suggest, propose, speak, reply, explain, complain, talk, listen, write, report, pray and describe** if the object is a person.

E.g.(i) You **suggested to** him that he should leave the place.

- (ii) She **said to** me that she would help me.
(iii) He did not **reply to** me.

> **Object of the verbs (direct object/indirect object) in the following cases, decides the preposition that follows the verb.** Such verbs are - **Furnish, Entrust, Present, Provide, Supply etc.**

E.g.(i) I provided him money. (✗)

I provided him **with** money. (✓)

Or

I provided money **to** him. (✓)

(ii) **Compensate, Explain, Fine, Propose, Recommend, Rob, Suggest take preposition according to the object of the sentence.**

E.g.(i) Rob a person **of** something.

- (ii) We informed the police **of** an accident.
(iii) I explained the matter **to** him.
(iv) He robbed her **of** her jewellery.

> **Some Phrase Preposition**

(1) **According to - as stated by**

E.g. **According to** the terms and conditions, he will have to finish it in two days.

(2) **By dint of - by force of**

E.g. I passed the exam **by dint of** hard work.

(3) **In case of - in the event of**

E.g. In **case of** emergency, call 100.

(4) **By virtue of - by the authority of**

E.g. The judge can pass the order **by virtue of** his powers.

(5) **Owing to - due to**

'Owing to' means 'due to' but there are a few differences.

- E.g. (a) A sentence should start with '**owing to**' and not '**due to**'.
Due to heavy rains, I could not come. (✗)

Owing to heavy rains, I could not come. (✓)

However this rule is not important as far as modern English is concerned.

Note: 'Due to' comes after different forms of 'be'

E.g.: The accident was owing to heavy rains. (✗)
form of 'be'

The accident was due to heavy rains. (✓)
form of 'be'

➤ **With reference to - in context of**

E.g.: With reference to your letter, dated 27th July 2011, I hereby submit my reply.

➤ **In order to - for the purpose of**

E.g.: We vacated the premises **in order to** avoid litigation.

➤ **In course of - during**

E.g.: **In course of** time, I faced many problems.

➤ **On behalf of - as a representative of**

E.g.: He came to receive the award **on behalf of** his brother.

➤ **Agreeably to - willing**

E.g.: **Agreeably to** the terms of the agreement, we will pay you Rs. 1 lakh.

➤ **By means of - through the use of**

E.g.: He amassed a lot of money **by means of** sharp practices.

➤ **For the sake of - indicates purpose**

E.g.: Save plants atleast **for the sake of** your children.

➤ **In favour of - to the benefit of**

E.g.: He voted **in favour of** his friend.

➤ **In lieu of - in the place of**

E.g.: He got fifty thousand rupees **in lieu of** his claim.

➤ **On account of - by reason of**

E.g.: **On account of** his negligence, the company has suffered heavy loss.

➤ **In relation to - in connection with**

E.g.: There are some rules **in relation to** the organization of the match.

➤ **See the difference**

1. I acted **according to** your order.

I acted **in accordance with** your order.

2. Mother Teresa had **affection for** all.

Mother Teresa was **affectionate to** all.

3. He has **ambition for** fame.

He is **ambitious of** fame.

4. I am **capable of** doing hard work.

I have **capacity for** doing hard work.

5. I have **confidence in** myself.

I am **confident about** myself.

6. He has **desire for** money and fame.

He is **desirous of** money and fame.

USE OF APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS

A

Abhorrence of	से नफरत
Abhorrent to.....	से नफरत होना
Absorbed in	में व्यस्त
Abstemious in	में पहरेज
Abstinence from	से पहरेज
Acceptable to	को स्वीकार्य
Access to.....	तक पहुँच होना
Accessible to	तक पहुँच
Accession to.....	किसी पद तक पहुँचना
Accomplished in	में निपुण
Accurate in	में सटीक
Accused of.....	में आरोपी होना
Accustomed to	का आदी होना
Acquaintance with	से वाकिफ
Acquainted with	से वाकिफ होना
Acquit of.....	से बरी होना
Adapted to	के अनुकूल होना
Addicted to	का लत होना
Adjacent to	के बगल में
Affable to.....	से लगाव
Affection for	से लगाव होना
Affectionate to	से त्रस्त होना
Afflicted with	से डरना
Afraid of	के अनुकूल
Agreeable to	किसी व्यक्ति से सहमत होना
Agree with someone	किसी चीज/योजना से सहमत होना
Agree to something	के जैसा होना
Akin to	से/पर स्तब्ध होना
Alarmed at	से अंजान/अभिज्ञ होना
Alien to	वफादार/पक्ष में होना
Allegiance to	से सन्धि/संबंध होना
Alliance with	का विकल्प होना
Alternative to	का लक्ष्य होना
Ambition for	इच्छुक होना
Amenable to	के जैसा होना
Analogous to	

angry with (someone)	yoursmahboob.wordpress.com प्रेस्विंग से गुस्सा होना
Angry at (something)	किसी बात/चीज़ पर गुस्सा होना
annoyed at (something)	किसी चीज़ से परेशान हो/चिढ़ जाना
annoyed with (someone)	किसी व्यक्ति से परेशान हो/चिढ़ जाना
Antidote to	किसी जहर का काट होना
Antipathy to	से नफरत होना
Anxiety for	की चिन्ता होना
anxious about something	किसी कारण चिन्तीत होना
Apologise for a fault	गलती के लिए माफ़ी माँगना
Apologise to a person	किसी से माफ़ी माँगना
Apology for	का खेद होना
Appetite for	का भुख होना
Applicable to	पर लागू होना
Apply for a post etc.	पद के लिए आवेदन करना
Apply to a person, office etc.	किसी को आवेदन करना
Appoint to a post	किसी पद पर नियुक्ति होना
Apprehensive of	की आशंका होना
Apprise of	के बारे में सूचित करना
Approach to	को संपर्क करना
Appropriate to	के अनुकूल होना
Approve of	की स्वीकृति देना
Argue before someone	बहस करना (के सामने)
Argue with a person	किसी से बहस करना
Arrive at (a place)	पहुँचना (जगह पर)
Arrive in (a country)	पहुँचना (देश में)
Ashamed of	के लिए लज्जित होना
Ask for (a thing)	माँग करना (किसी चीज़ का/किसी से)
Ask of or from somebody for something	माँग करना (किसी से) किसी चीज़ के लिए
Assent to	की स्वीकृति देना
Assiduous in	में मेहनती होना
Associated with	के साथ/सहयोगी हो जाना
Assurance of	का भरोसा
Assure of	का भरोसा दिलाना
Astonished at	पर अचंभित होना
Attachment to	से लगाव होना
Attend to (duty etc.)	निभाना (कर्तव्य इत्यादि)
Attention to	के तरफ ध्यान देना
Attract to or towards (a person or thing)	के तरफ आकर्षित होना
Avail of (opportunity etc.)	का लाभ उठाना

PREFPOSITION

Airrise to	नापसंद होना
Aware of	से वाकिफ होना
Abound in (mineral etc.)	में सम्पन्न होना
Abound with (things)	से भरा
Absolve from (guilt, promise, duty etc.)	से मुक्त/बरी होना
Absorb in (work)	में व्यस्त
Abstain from (bad habits)	से परहेज
Accede to (a request or proposal)	मान जाना (किसी निवेदन को)
Adhere to (rules)	का अनुपालन करना
Approve of (proposal)	की स्वीकृति देना
Acquaint with	से अवगत
Attain to (a position/post)	पर पहुँचना
Attraction for (a thing or person)	के प्रति आकर्षण
Aloof from (bad company)	से अलग
Abide by (rules)	का पालन करना
Admit to (school etc.)	में भर्ती करना
Admit of	की गुंजाइश
Alight on (the ground)	पर उतरना
Alight from (a bus, car, train)	से उतरना
Amuse at	का मजाक उड़ाना
Amuse with	के साथ लुत्फ उठाना
Answer to (a person)	को जवाब देना
Answer for (etc.)	का जवाबदेह होना
Antipathy to (a thing)	किसी चीज से विरक्ति
Antipathy against (a person)	किसी व्यक्ति से विरक्ति
Affiliated to (a University or Board)	से सम्बद्ध
Affiliated with (a party)	से साथ होना
Attend to	के तरफ ध्यान देना
Antidote to (poison)	का नाशक
Antidote against	का इलाज
Agree with (a person)	किसी से सहमत होना
Agree on (a point)	किसी मुद्दे पर सहमत होना
Agree to (views)	किसी विचार से सहमत होना
Atone for (a fault, sin)	का प्रायशिचत करना
Acquiesce in	में सहमति देना
Act upon (advice etc.)	का अनुपालन करना
Adept in (art etc)	में निपुण
Adept at (thing)	(किसी कार्य में) निपुण
Adapt to (environment)	के अनुकूल बनना

Aspire after (same)	yoursmahboob.wordpress.com (प्रसीढ़ि) की लालसा करना
Aspire at (the post)	(पद) की लालसा करना
Attracted to	के तरफ आकर्षित होना
Avail of	का लाभ उठाना
Abide by	नियमों का अनुपालन करना
Admit to	में दाखिल/ भर्ती होना
Alight at	उतरना
Account for	विवरण देना, व्याख्या करना
Allowance for	गुंजाईश करना, स्वीकार करना
Aptitude for	में प्रतीभा दर्शाना

*****B*****

Backward in	में पिछड़ा होना
Bargain with	से मौल-भाव करना
Bathe in	में नहाना
Beg for (a thing)	किसी चीज़ का भीख माँगना
Beg of (a person)	किसी से भीख माँगना
Begin with	से शुरू करना
Belong to (a person, place, etc)	कहीं से/का होना
Beneficial to	के लिए लाभकारी होना
Bent on (doing something)	तुल जाना
Bereft of	से बंचित होना
Beset with	से ग्रस्त होना
Bestow (something) upon (a person)	नवाज़ना/देना
Beware of (something)	से सावधान होना
Bigoted in	में अंधा हो जाना (धर्म/विचार में)
Blame for	का आरोप लगाना
Blind in (love etc)	में अँधा होना
Blind in an eye	आँख से अँधा होना
Blind to (something)	किसी चीज़ के प्रति अँधा होना
Born of parents/Born in family	पैदा होना (Parents के साथ 'of' और family के साथ 'in' लगेगा)
Born to them (past participle when used passively)	Passive voice में 'born to' का प्रयोग होता है।
Borrow of or from a person	से उधार लेना
Break into (a building etc.)	जबरन/विना अनुमति दाखिल देना
Break with (a person)	से संबंध खत्म करना
Burdened with (work etc.)	काम का भार पड़ना
Busy with	में व्यस्त होना
Blush at (praise)	से झोंप जाना
Blush for (a fault)	के कारण लज्जित होना

PREPOSITIONS

Benefit by से लाभावित होना
 Believe in में विश्वास/ श्रद्धा रखना
 Benefit from से फायदा/ लाभ उठाना

C

Callous to	के प्रति क्रूर होना
Candidate for	का प्रत्याशी होना
Capacity for	की क्षमता होना
Care for or about (something)	किसी चीज़ का परवाह होना
(take) Care of child etc.	ध्यान रखना
Careful about.....	को लेकर सावधान रहना
Cautious of	से सावधान होना
Certain of	सुनिश्चित होना
Characteristic of	की विशेषताएँ
Charge of	नेतृत्व में होना
Charge with (responsibility, blame etc.).	की जिम्मेदारी/ इल्जाम डालना
Cheat a person of money etc.	व्यक्ति के साथ cheat में कोई Preposition नहीं लगता है। चीज़ के साथ cheat के बाद of लगायें।
Cling to (a seat, job or place)	से चिपकना
Command on (language)	पर पकड़ होना
Common to	आम होना
Comparable to	की तुलना में
Comparison with	से तुलना
Compassion for	के प्रति हमदर्दी
Compatible with	के अनुकूल होना
Compensation for	के लिए मुआवजा
Compete with (a person etc.)	से प्रतिस्रधा करना
Competent for a job.	में सक्षम होना
Complain against (someone)	(व्यक्ति) के विरुद्ध शिकायत करना
Complain of (something)	(चीज़) के विरुद्ध शिकायत करना
Complain to (a person)	को शिकायत करना (Complain (verb) के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।)
Complaint with	(Complaint (Noun) के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग
Comply with (rules, wishes etc.)	के अनुसार चलना/ का अनुसरण करना
Composed of	से बना होना
Concede to (a request)	निवेदन मान लेना
Concession to	को रियायत
Condemned to	अवांछित स्थिति में डाल देना
Conducive to (health)	लाभकारी होना

Confer honour on (a person)	को सम्मान से नवाज़ना
Confidence in a person	में विश्वास होना
Confident of	सुनिश्चित होना
Confined to	में सीमित होना
Conformity with/to	अनुरूपता होना
Congenial to	के अनुकूल होना
Conscious of	से अवगत/वाकिफ़ होना
Consent to (a proposal)	की स्वीकृति देना
Consistent with	अटल/एक सा
Contempt for	के प्रति असम्मान होना
Content with	से संतुष्ट होना
Contrary to	के विपरीत
Conversant with	से वाकिफ
Convicted of	का दोषी
Convinced of	से संतुष्ट/ निश्चित
Convulsed with	से ऐंठ जाना
Copy from a book	से उतारना/नकल करना
Copy of something	का प्रतिलिपि होना
Count on something	पर निर्भर रहना
Covetous of	का अभिलाषी
Craving for	का लालायित होना
Cure for	का इलाज होना
Cured of (disease)	(बिमारी से) ठीक होना
Compensate for (loss etc.)	की क्षतिपूर्ति करना
Cure of (a disease)	से रोगमुक्त होना
Cure for (treatment)	का इलाज
Compete with (person)	से प्रतिस्पर्धा करना
Cling to (something/someone)	से चिपक कर रहना
Cordon off	हर तरफ से घेर कर सुरक्षित किया जाना
Commit to (a promise, pledge, sentence)	के प्रति वचनबद्ध होना
Confide in (a person)	को राज बताना
Consist in	में होना
Consist of	से बना होना
Commence with	से शुरू होना
Clamour for	के लिए जोरदार तरीके से माँग करना
Clamour against	का विरोध करना
Cause for	का कारण होना
Cause of	का नतीजा होना
Condole with (a person)	के साथ सहानुभूति रखना
Count on	पर निर्भर

PREPOSITION

Charge of (noun)	(किसी कुकृत्य) का इल्जाम
Charge with (verb)	(किसी कुकृत्य को करने) का इल्जाम लगना
Cope with	का मुकाबला करना/ सामना करना
Cash in on	का लाभ उठाना
Contribute to	सहभागी बनना/ भाग लेना
Commence (On a day, at time, in a month)	शुरू होना
Concern for	को ले कर चिन्तित होना/गम्भीर होना
Concerned with	से सम्बन्ध या मतलब होना
Congratulate on	पर बधाई देना

*****D*****

Deaf to	के प्रति बहरा होना
Deal in (a commodity)	में व्यापार करना
Deal with (a subject or person)	से निपटना
Defective in	में श्रुटिपूर्ण होना
Defend from or against danger	से बचाना
Deficient in	की कमी होना
Delight in	में खुशी पाना
Delighted with	से खुश होना
Deliverance from	से छुटकारा पाना
Deluged with	से सराबोर होना
Depend on or upon something	पर निर्भर करना
Deprive of (advantage, right etc.)	से वंचित होना
Derogatory to	के प्रति अपमानजनक होना
Descent from	का वंशज होना
Desire for	का अभिलाषी होना
Desirous of	से वंचित होना
Destitute of	हानिकारक होना
Detrimental to	से वंचित
Devoid of (certain quality)	को समर्पित होना
Devoted to	के लिए मरना
Die for (a cause)	(कारण) से मरना
Die from (reason like thirst/ hunger etc.)	(बिमारी) से मरना
Die of (some disease)	से अलग होना
Differ from a thing	पर (मुद्दा) अलग मत रखना
Differ on a point.	से (व्यक्ति) अलग मत होना
Differ with a person	से अलग
Different from	में हिचकिचाहट
Diffident of	में मेहनती होना
Diligent in	

Disastrous to	के लिए दुर्भाग्यपूर्ण
Disgrace to	के लिए लज्जाजनक
Disgusted with	से चिढ़ा होना
Displeased with	से नाखुश होना
Distinguish between two things	के बीच अंतर करना
Distinguish one thing from another	एक का दूसरे से अंतर बताना
Divide into shares, parts	में बाँटना
Doubt of	में शंका होना
Drenched in	से सराबोर होना
Due to	के कारण
Duty to (parents etc.)	के प्रति कर्तव्य होना
Dwell in (a house etc.)	में निवास करना
Disappoint of (hopes)	से निराश होना
Despair of (hopes)	से निराश होना
Dabble in/at (art, politics etc.)	में हल्का दिलचस्पी लेना
Destined for (some future)	के लिए नियत होना
Disgrace on (family etc.)	के लिए कलंक
Dispense with	से छुटकारा पाना
Dispense	बाँटना (कोई Prep का प्रयोग नहीं)
Dispose of	बेच देना/दे देना
Disposed to	के प्रति सुकाव होना
Decamp with (cash etc.)	चम्पत हो जाना/भाग जाना
Disgust with (a person, life)	से परेशान
Disgust at (an act)	(किसी काम/ घटना) से परेशान
Discriminate against	से दुर्व्यवहार करना
Discriminate between	के बीच भेदभाव करना
Dwell on/upon	पर विस्तृत रूप से लिखना/ बोलना

*****E*****

Eligible for (appointment/ election etc.)	के योग्य होना
Enamoured of	से मोहित होना
Endowed with	से लैस/सम्पत्र होना
Enmity to	से दुश्मनी होना
Enquire into (a matter)	किसी मामले में छान बीन करना
Enquire of (a person)	से (व्यक्ति) पूछताछ करना
Entitled to	का अधिकार प्राप्त होना/के लायक होना
Entrust a person with a responsibility, work etc. ..	काम सौंपना
Enveloped in	से ढका होना
Envious of	से इष्या रखना
Equal to	के बराबर होना

Escape from	से बच निकलना
Essential to (health, etc.)	जरूरी होना
Exception to	अपवाद होना
Exemption from	से छूट प्राप्त होना
Experience of	का अनुभव रखना
Experienced in	में अनुभव रखना
Embark on (venture)	किसी काम में लग जाना
Enter {place}	किसी Prep का प्रयोग नहीं
Enter into (alliance, agreement)	शामिल होना (समझौता इत्यादि में)
Enrage at (a thing, an act)	(किसी चीज़/ घटना) से गुस्सा होना
Enrage with (a person)	(किसी व्यक्ति) से गुस्सा होना
Enrage upon/on	ज्यादा कहना या लिखना
Enamoured with (a person)	मोहित होना/आसतिन

F

Failed in	में असफल होना
Failure of	की असफलता
Faithful to	के प्रति वफादार होना
False to (promise)	(वादे का) झूठा
Familiar to	से अवगत होना
Familiar with (a subject)	(किसी विषय) से अवगत होना
Famous for (something)	(किसी कारण) प्रसिद्ध होना
Fatal to (life/ future prospects etc.)	घातक होना
Fatigued with	से थकावट होना
Favourable to	के अनुकूल होना
Fearful of	से डरना
Fertile in	में उपजाऊ होना
Fond of	पसंद होना
Fondness for	पसंद
Foreign to	से अनजान होना
Fought against	से लड़ना
Free from (worries)	(चिन्ता) से मुक्त होना
Free of cost	बिना कीमत के
Full of	से भरा होना
False of (heart)	से झूठा
Fascinated by (a thing)	किसी चीज से मोहित
Fascinated with (a person)	किसी व्यक्ति से मोहित
Fly into (anger)	अचानक गुस्से में आना
Feed on (live on)	पर जिंदा रहना
For lack of	कुछ (कमी) के कारण

कुछ (कमी) के कारण
For short of

कुछ (कमी) के कारण
For want of

*****G*****

Get at (the truth).	(सच) तक पहुँचना
Get on (with a person).	से अच्छा तालमेल होना
Get out of (gate etc.)	से बाहर जाना
Get over (the difficulty).	(कठिनाई) से उबरना
Gifted with	से समृद्ध/धनी होना
Good at (English/ singing etc).	में अच्छा
Grateful to a person.	के प्रति कृतज्ञ होना
Greedy of (wealth etc.)	का लालची होना
Guilty of (an offence)	का दोषी होना
Grieve for (a person)	किसी (व्यक्ति) का मातम मनाना
Grieve over (a thing)	किसी (चीज) का मातम मनाना
Grieve at (an event)	किसी (घटना) का मातम मनाना
Guard against (mistakes, temptations)	गलती/लुभावन से सचेत करना
Guard from (a danger, a thing etc.)	किसी खतरे/चीज से बचाना
Glance at (someone etc.)	पर एक नजर डालना
Glance through (letter etc.)	पढ़ना
Good for (nothing)	किसी काम का नहीं

*****H*****

Hatred of or for something.	के प्रति नफरत होना
Heedless of	से असावधान
Heir to (the throne).	का उत्तराधिकारी होना
Honest in	में इमानदार
Hope for (good or success etc).	की आशा रखना
Hopeful of (some result)	के प्रति आशावित होना
Hostile to	से प्रति शत्रुतापूर्ण
Hurtful to	के प्रति हानिकर/चोट पहुँचाने वाला
Hear from (a person)	से कोई खबर मिलना
Hear of (something)	के बारे में सुनना
Hear by (post, communication)	ज्ञात होना (किसी श्रोत से)
Hard by	नजदीक
Hard up	तंगी होना
Hanker after	के पीछे पड़ना
Healed of (a disease)	ठीक होना (बिमारी से)

*****I*****

PREPOSITION

Ignorant of	से जानभिजा होना
Ill with	से बिगार
Immaterial to	के लिए महत्वहीन
Impertinent to	के प्रति गुरसाथ
Impervious to	के लिए गोप्ता
Implicated in	में फंसाना/आरोपित होना
Inclined to	के प्रति शुक्राय
Indebted to	के प्रति कृतज्ञ
Indifference / indifferent to	के प्रति उदासीन/ उदासीन होना
Indigenous to	का मूल निकासी होना
Indispensable to	के लिए अपरिहार्य होना
Indulge in	में लिप्त होना
Infatuated with	से आकर्षित होना
Infected with	से ग्रस्त होना
Inference from	से निष्कर्ष
Inferior to (something or somebody)	से खराब (quality में)होना
Infested with	से ग्रस्त (काफी अधिक संख्या में)
Informed of	सूचित
Inimical to	का विरोधी
Injurious to	के लिए हानिकारक होना
Innocent of	से दोषमुक्त
Inquired of	का पुछताछ करना
Insensible to	के प्रति संवेदनहीन
Insist on	पर जोर देना
Inspired with	से प्रेरित
Interested in	में दिलचस्पी
Interfere in a matter	में दखल देना
Intimacy with	से घनिष्ठता
Intimate with	से घनिष्ठ होना
Introduce to	किसी से परिचय करवाना
Inured to	प्रतिरोधी होना
Invitation to	का आमंत्रण
Invite to	पर आमंत्रित करना
Involved in	में शामिल
Irrelevant to	के लिए अप्रासार्गिक
Irrespective of	का ध्यान/विचार किए बिना
Impress with (a thing)	से प्रभावित होना
Impress upon (a person)	पर छाप/प्रभाव छोड़ना
Inquire for/about (a thing)	किसी चीज के बारे में पुछताछ करना
Inquire after (welfare)	का हालचाल पुछना

Inquire of (ask a person)	जाँच पड़ताल करना
Inquired into (investigate)	टॉग अड़ाना
Interfere in (a thing)	अड़चन डालना
Interfere with (course of justice etc.)	से प्रभावित होना
Influenced with (a person)	पर प्रभाव (किसी व्यक्ति का)
Influence over (the people)	किसी चीज का प्रभाव किसी पर
Influence of something on someone	बिना इजाजत अंदर आना
Intrude into (room)	Privacy में दखल देना
Intrude on (privacy)	गुस्सा होना
Incensed at (thing)	से रुष्ट होना
Indignant at (thing)	में अंतरदृष्टि
Insight into (reality, situation)	प्रभावित करना
Impress (with a thing)	के साथ।
Invest with (authority)	प्रभाव/असर
Influence on (a thing)	चिढ़ जाना/खोज जाना
Irritated at (thing)	चिढ़ जाना/खोज जाना
Irritated against (person)	

J

Jealous of (a person)	से ईर्ष्या होना
Junior to (a person)	से कनिष्ठ होना
Judge of (things)	राय देना
Judge by	आँका जाना
Jump to (conclusion)	तुरंत निष्कर्ष पर पहुँचना
Jump at (an offer)	उछल पड़ना
Jeer at (a thing)	का मजाक उड़ाना
Jest at (a thing)	का मजाक उड़ाना

K

Key to	की कुंजी
Kind to (a person)	के प्रति दयालु होना
Knock at (the gate)	खटखटाना
Known to	Passive voice में known के साथ 'to' प्रयोग होता है।
Known by	के कारण जाना जाता हो
Known for (a quality)	के लिए जाना जाता हो
Knock at (the door)	खटखटाना (अगर 'knock' verb हो तो)
Knock on	खटखटाहट (अगर 'knock' noun हो तो)

L

Lame of (a leg)	से लंगड़ा
------------------------------	-----------

PREPOSITION

Laugh at (a person or thing)	पर हँसना
Lean in	में शिथिल होना
Lean against	पर (टेक लगा कर) झुकना
Leniency to	के प्रति नर्मा
Liable to	के प्रति उत्तरदायी
Liable to (punishment)	(सजा कर) हकदार होना
Liking for	की चाहत
Limited to	में सीमित
Listen to	को ध्यान से सुनना
Live by (hard labour)	मेहनत कर जीना
Live on (a meagre income/ food)	पर (संसाधन) जीना / पर निर्वाह करना
Live within (means etc).	(संसाधन इत्यादि) के अंदर जीना
Look after	ख्याल रखना
Look at something	किसी चीज़ के तरफ देखना
Look for	खोजना
Look into	जाँच-पड़ताल करना
Lost to (one's opponent)	हार जाना
Loyal to	के प्रति वफादार
Laugh with (others)	के साथ हँसना
Laugh at	पर हँसना
Lean on (someone)	पर निर्भर करना
Lean to	के तरफ झुकाव होना
Live in (region, area, country)	रहना (जब बड़े स्थान का उल्लेख हो)
Live at (indicate the place)	रहना (जब छोटे स्थान का उल्लेख हो)
Live by (livelihood, manner)	(आजीविका व रीति-रिवाज) के अनुसार जीना
Live off (source)	(श्रोत) पर जीना
Liable for	का हकदार होना
Liable to (punishment)	का हकदार होना
Lacking in	कुछ (कमी)
Likeness to	समानता
Limit to	सीमित होना/मर्यादा में होना

*****M*****

Mad after/about/for/on (a thing or subject)	के लिए पागल होना
Mad with anger.	गुस्से से पागल होना
Malice against a person.	किसी व्यक्ति के प्रति दुर्भावना होना
Match for	की वरावरी
Material to /Immaterial to	के लिए महत्व रखना/महत्वहीन होना

Menace to	yoursmahboob.wordpress.com
Motive for	का मंशा
Muse upon a subject	पर विचार करना
Move to (tears)	रो पड़ना
Move with (pity)	(दया से) पिघल जाना
Married to (a woman)	से विवाह (जब पुरुष स्त्री से करें)
Married with (a man)	से विवाह (जब स्त्री पुरुष से करें)
Mix with (a thing)	मिलना
Mock at (a thing)	का मजाक उड़ाना
Meditate on (past act)	भूतकाल की घटना पर विचार करना
Meditate (future act)	भविष्य काल की घटना पर विचार करना
Menace to	के लिए खतरा/ समस्या होना।

N

Natural to	के लिए स्वभाविक
Necessary to	के लिए जरूरी
Need for	की जरूरत
Negligent / neglectful of one's duty	के प्रति लापरकाह होना
Neglectful of (a person, work, a thing)	से लापरकाह
Negligent in (duty)	में लापरवाह होना
Neglectful of (a person, working a thing)	उदासीन होना
Need of	इच्छा/जरूरत होना

O

Obedience to	के प्रति फर्माबिरदारी
Obedient to a person	का आज्ञाकारी होना
Objected to	के खिलाफ आपत्ति करना
Objection to	का विरोध/एतराज
Obliged by or to a person	से/के प्रति कृतज्ञ होना
Obstruction to	के लिए रुकावट
Offensive to	के लिए अपमानजनक
Opportunity for	के लिए अवसर
Opposite to	के विरुद्ध
Originate in	में उत्पन्न होना
Overwhelmed with (joy)	से अभिभूत होना
Originate in (place as a source)	में उत्पन्न होना
Originate with (a person)	को पहली बार सुझाना
Occupied in (doing a thing)	(काम) करने में व्यस्त
Occupied with (a thing)	(कोई काम) में व्यस्त
Operate on/upon (leg etc.)	का ऑपरेशन करना

Oblivious of	से बेखबर
Offend at (thing)	(कारण) से अप्रसन्न
Offend with (person)	(व्यक्ति) से अप्रसन्न
Overwhelm with (feelings)	(भावनाओं) से भर जाना
Overwhelm by (a book etc.)	(किताब) से प्रभावित होना

*****P*****

Painful to	के लिए कष्टदायक
Part from (a person)	से (व्यक्ति) जुदा होना
Parted with (something)	से (चीज़) अलग होना
Partial to	के प्रति पक्षपातपूर्ण
Passion for	के लिए अत्यन्त लगाव
Peculiar to	निज का
Penetrate into something	में समाना
Pertinent to	प्रासादिक
Pity for	के लिए तरस/दया
Pledged to	का शपथ लेना
Popular with	के बीच प्रसिद्ध
Postscript to	का उपलेख
Pray to God for something	भगवान को प्रार्थना करना (किसी चीज़ के लिए)
Precaution against (disease)	(बिमारी) से बचाव करना
Predilection for	के प्रति इुक्ताव
Preface to	का प्रस्तावना
Prefer to	के तुलना ज्ञाना पसंद करना
Preferable to	से श्रेयस्कर
Prejudicial to	के प्रति पूर्काश्रित
Prepared for	की तैयारी करना
Preside over	की अध्यक्षता करना
Pretext for	के बहाने
Prevent from (doing an act)	से बचना / रोकना
Prior to	से पहले
Productive of	का फलप्रद
Proficient in	में कुशल
Profit by	से लाभार्थित होना
Profitable to	के लिए लाभदायक
Prone to	के प्रति रुक्षान/झूकाव
Proof of	का सबूत
Proud of	के लिए गौरवान्वित/पर गर्व
Provide with	उपलब्ध कराना
Partiality for (a thing)	पसंद होना

Partiality to (a person)	के पक्ष में होना
Perish by (famine, sword)	नष्ट होना/मरा जाना
Perish with (hunger)	से (भुख) से नष्ट होना/ मर जाना
Point at	आरोप लगाना
Point to	उल्लेख करना
Preside at (a party)	का मुख्य अतिथि होना
Preside over (meeting, president)	का अध्यक्षता करना
Provided against (adversity)	उपलब्ध कराना (प्रतिकूल समय के लिए)
Provided for (family etc.)	के लिए उपलब्ध कराना
Pine for	का लालसा करना
Pine away	शोक से मर जाना
Play at (cards)	(ताश) खेलना
Play upon (a musical instrument)	(वाद यन्त्र)बजाना
Partake of (food)	में अपना हिस्सा लेना
Prey on	शोषण करना
Passion for	तीव्र लालसा होना
Feel(Pity) for (noun)	दया करना
Take(Pity) on (noun)	दया करना
Pity (verb)	Pity अगर verb है तो कोई Prep का प्रयोग नहीं होता
Pride on (verb)	पर गर्व करना
Pride in (noun)	पर गर्व होना
Prompt in	पर तुरंत/फूर्तीला
Prevail against (a thing, face)	सामना करना व जीतना
Prevail on/upon (a person, to compel)	बहकाना/मजबूर करना/जोर देना
Popular for (a good quality)	प्रसिद्ध व लोकप्रिय होना
Popular with (the people)	के बीच लोकप्रिय

Q

Quarrel over (some affair)	किसी मुद्दे पर लड़ना
Quarrel with (some person)	से लड़ना
Quest for (knowledge)	(ज्ञान) की लालसा होना
Quick at (a thing)	में फूर्तीला
Quick in (doing a thing)	(काम) करने में फूर्तीला

R

Rebel against (government , customs etc.)	का विरोध करना
Recovered from	से उबरना
Reduced to	घट कर होना
Reference to	के संदर्भ में
Refrain from (an act)	से बचना/परहेज करना
Regard for	के प्रति सम्मान होना

PREPOSITION

Regardless of	के तरफ बिना ध्यान दिए
Rejoice at (success)	खुशी मनाना
Related to	से संबंधित
Relations with	से संबंध
Relevant to	के लिए प्रासंगिक
Remorse for	का पश्चाताप होना
Remarkable for	के लिए विशिष्ट
Remiss in	में सुस्त
Replete with	से भरना/पूरा करना
Reply to	का जवाब
Repugnance to	के लिए अरुचिकर
Repugnant to	के प्रति अरुचिकर होना
Reputation for	के लिए नाम होना/जाना जाना
Resemblance to	का प्रतिरूप
Respite from	से मुक्ति
Responsible to	के प्रति जिम्मेदार
Restricted to	में सीमित
Result of	का परिणाम
Revenge on (a person or anything)	का बदला लेना
Revolt against (king, dictatorship, etc.)	के विरुद्ध बगावत करना
Revenge oneself (a person)	से बदला लेना
Revenge for (noun) (an injury)	का बदला लेना
Reconcile oneself to (a thing)	(हालात इत्यादी) को स्वीकार कर
Reconcile with (a person)	से
Reckon on/upon	पर निर्भर करना
Remonstrate with (a person)	विरोध प्रकट करना
Remiss in (duty)	में लापरवाह होना
Reason with (a person)	तर्क करना/बहस करना/सोंच-विचार करना
Replace by	नई से बदलना/बदलना
Repent of	पश्चाताप/प्रायशिच्त करना
Recourse to	उपाय/सहारा/सहायता

*****S*****

Sacred to	के लिए पावन
Sanguine of	के प्रति आशावित
Satiated with	से तृप्त
Satisfied with	से संतुष्ट होना
Save from	से बचाना
Search for (something)	की खोज करना
Search into (a matter)	(मामले में) पड़ताल करना

See into (a case)	से वाकिफ
Sensible of	के प्रति संवेदनशील
Sensitive to	सजा प्राप्त करना
Sentenced to (imprisonment/death/etc.)	का अगला भाग
Sequel to (a film etc.)	की कमी होना
Short of (funds)	से ग्रस्त/परेशान/बिमार
Sick of	पर खुश होना
Smiled on	के लिए अफसोस करना
Sorry for	पर अड़िग रहना
Stick to (promise, etc.)	सशर्त
Subject to (conditions etc.)	के समक्ष अधीनता
Submission to	पर निर्वाह
Subsist on	के अनुक्रम
Succession to	से ग्रस्त होना
Suffering from	के लिए प्रचुर होना
Sufficient for (a purpose)	के लिए उपयुक्त होना
Suit to (a purpose)	के लिए उपयुक्त
Suitable to	से बेहतर होना
Superior to	का अनुपूरक
Supplement to	के प्रति आश्वस्त
Sure of	पर आश्चर्य चकित होना
Surprised at	समर्पण करना
Surrender to (a person)	का ग्रहणशील
Susceptible to	का संदेही होना
Suspicious of	से संवेदना व्यक्त करना
Sympathise with	दिखावा करना
Show off	के पक्ष में बोलना
Speak for (someone)	का तारीफ करना
Speak of (praise)	(यात्रा) शुरू करना
Start on (journey)	की कोशीश करना
Strive for	से प्रतिस्पर्धा करना
Strive with	का पक्ष लेना
Side with (someone)	खोजना
Search for (a thing)	की कोशीश करना
Seek (shelter)	माँग होना
Seek after	सहना (घाटा)
Suffer (loss)	ग्रस्त होना (बिमारी से)
Suffer from (disease)	का मजाक उड़ाना
Smile at	

PREPOSITION

Smile on	पर मेहरबान होना
Substitute for (for old object)	कि विकल्प
Shoot at , Strike at , Hit at , Catch at (unsuccessful in attempt)	जब प्रयास असफल हो
Shoot, strike, hit, catch (successful in attempt)	जब प्रयास सफल हो
Spark off	शुरू करना
Seek for	जीतने का प्रयत्न करना
Seething with (anger etc.)	(गुस्से से) बोखलाना/उबलना
Slow at	धीमा
Scare of	भयभीत करना/डराना
Sentence to (death, etc.)	दण्डित करना/दण्ड देना

*****T*****

Talk over (a matter)	किसी मामले पर बात करना
Talk to someone	से बात करना
Tantamount to	के समान होना
Taste for	का परख होना
Teeming with	से भरा होना
Temperate in (one's behaviour)	में शान्त
Temptation to	के लिए प्रलोभव
Think of	के बारे में सोचना
Think over (a matter)	किसी मामले पर सोचना
Threaten with (revolver/bad consequences, etc.)	से डराना
Tired of (bad person/continued sickness, etc.)	से त्रस्त हो जाना/थक जाना
Tired with (hard labour)	(मेहनत) से थक जाना
Tolerant of	के प्रति सहनशील
Touched with	से द्रवित होना
Trade in commodity	का व्यापार करना
Trade with someone	से व्यापार करना
Traitor to	के प्रति गद्दार
Triumph over (enemy etc.)	पर विजय प्राप्त करना
True to (one's word/one's soil)	का सच्चा
Trust in	में विश्वास करना
Turn to a direction	के तरफ मुड़ना
Trifle with	मजाक उठाना
Trespass on land	अनाधिकृत प्रवेश करना
Trespass against (law)	का उल्लंघन करना
Treat of (a subject)	उपाय/संसाधित करना/समाधान निकालना

U

Useful for	में लाभदायक होना
Useful to (a person)	किसी व्यक्ति के लिए लाभदायक होना
Usher in	परिचय करवाना/संचालन करना

V

Versed in	में दक्ष
Victory over (enemies etc.)	पर विजय प्राप्त करना
Void of	से रहित
Vote for (a person)	को वोट देना
Vote on (resolution)	पर वोट देना
Vote to (power)	जीतना
Vain of	का घमंड होना
Vexed with (person)	(व्यक्ति) से परेशान होना
Vexed at (a thing)	(वस्तु) से परेशान होना
Venture upon	जोखिम उठाना

W

Wait for a person, etc.	का इन्तजार करना
Want of	की कमी
Warn of (danger/bad consequences etc.)	की चेतावनी देना
Weary of	से थका
Wonder at	पर अर्चंभित होना
Worthy of (trust, etc.)	के लायक
Wait for (person, thing)	का इंतजार करना
Weary of (a thing)	से थक जाना
Warn against (fault, danger)	से सावधान करना
Warn of (danger)	से सावधान करना
Wish for (a thing)	की कामना करना
Ward off (evils etc.)	को दूर रखना
Warn of	खतरे से संतर्क करना
Wanting in	की कमी होना

Y

Yield to (force/ threat, etc.)	हार मान जाना
Yearn for	की लालसा करना

Z

Zeal for (social reform etc.)	उत्साह होना
--	-------------

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) He took / (b) leave of / (c) four days. / (d) No error.
2. (a) Children / should always / (b) listen the advice of their elders / (c) and well wishers. / (d) No error.
3. (a) He will not / (b) listen / (c) what you say. / (d) No error.
4. (a) Nobody denies / (b) that my ideas / (c) are different than yours. / (d) No error.
5. (a) It was I who was responsible of / (b) making all the arrangements for the / (c) successful completion of his studies. / (d) No error.
6. (a) She was in the courtyard / (b) when the burglars / (c) entered into her house. / (d) No error.
7. (a) Our teacher / (b) emphasised on / (c) the use of correct grammar. / (d) No error.
8. (a) On the time / (b) of the opening ceremony of the theatre / (c) a large crowd had assembled. / (d) No error.
9. (a) While they were returning / (b) from school, / (c) a stalker attacked on them with a knife. / (d) No error.
10. (a) The decline of his moral values / (b) has caused a lot / (c) of pain to his parents / (d) No error.
11. (a) Without thinking / (b) for a moment he / (c) entrusted me in all the responsibilities. / (d) No error.
12. (a) Sudha fell in / (b) the well and nobody / (c) tried to save him. / (d) No error.
13. (a) I / (b) prefer coffee / (c) than tea / (d) No error.
14. (a) Suresh is busy / (b) in his work / (c) for his presentation. / (d) No error.
15. (a) While crossing the road / (b) an old man was / (c) run out by a bus. / (d) No error.
16. (a) Amphibians / (b) can live / (c) in water as well as land. / (d) No error.
17. (a) My mother is fond off / (b) cooking different / (c) types of dishes. / (d) No error.
18. (a) Our teacher / (b) cannot / (c) control on the students. / (d) No error.
19. (a) The lawyer has been waiting / (b) for the prisoner / (c) since two hours. / (d) No error.
20. (a) Mr. Bacon has / (b) great affection to / (c) his family. / (d) No error.
21. (a) Rekha has a great / (b) enmity for her / (c) brother's friend. / (d) No error.
22. (a) He threw the bucket / (b) into the river / (c) and returned home without any water. / (d) No error.
23. (a) There appears / (b) to be very little / (c) understanding among the two brothers. / (d) No error.
24. (a) She was / (b) angry on me because I / (c) had not invited her to the party. / (d) No error.
25. (a) He got a prestigious job though / (b) he was not worthy / (c) for it. / (d) No error.
26. (a) He described about / (b) the incident / (c) in a very interesting way. / (d) No error.
27. (a) My father / (b) deals / (c) with garments. / (d) No error.
28. (a) I cannot / (b) deal from / (c) those unruly students. / (d) No error.
29. (a) Despite of / (b) working hard / (c) he failed. / (d) No error.
30. (a) Ashok / (b) married with / (c) Rekha last month. / (d) No error.
31. (a) The earth's atmosphere / (b) comprises of / (c) three layers. / (d) No error.
32. (a) The court held / (b) the local MLA responsible / (c) for the loss or damage to any public property. / (d) No error.

33. (a) He was debarred to attend / (b) the monsoon session / (c) of the Parliament. / (d) No error.
34. (a) We will have to await for / (b) the result / (c) as the manager is on strike. / (d) No error.
35. (a) He should refrain / (b) to associate himself with any party / (c) because people have faith in his integrity. / (d) No error.
36. (a) The songs of / (b) the old movies are / (c) worth listening to. / (d) No error.
37. (a) It should be obvious to you / (b) that if you persist bothering him, / (c) he will get angry with you / (d) No error.
38. (a) I certainly / (b) differ with you / (c) in this matter (d) No error.
39. (a) He had a suspected fracture, / (b) so he was / (c) admitted into the hospital / (d) No error.
40. (a) If you put your / (b) heart to it, / (c) you will be a winner / (d) No error.
41. (a) He walked / (b) ten miles / (c) by foot / (d) No error.
42. (a) He is good / (b) in mathematics / (c) but his friend isn't. / (d) No error.
43. (a) Those who are in power / (b) have to be sensitive of / (c) the sufferings of the poor / (d) No error.
44. (a) Which newspaper / (b) do you / (c) subscribe for? / (d) No error.
45. (a) We thought that the train / (b) would be late but / (c) it arrived exactly in time. / (d) No error.
46. (a) Despite of repeated warnings, / (b) he touched a live electric wire, / (c) and was electrocuted. / (d) No error.
47. (a) It is my pleasure / (b) to congratulate you for your success / (c) in the Civil Services Examination / (d) No error.
48. (a) I will avail / (b) myself with / (c) this golden opportunity / (d) No error.
49. (a) It is half / (b) past two / (c) in my watch / (d) No error.
50. (a) She can / (b) cope up with any difficult situation / (c) as she is a braveheart. / (d) No error.
51. (a) Ravi / (b) told to his friend / (c) to buy a car. / (d) No error.
52. (a) He is / (b) accused with / (c) committing the murder. / (d) No error.
53. (a) The poet / (b) described about / (c) the spring season. / (d) No error.
54. (a) The atmosphere / (b) comprises of / (c) many inert gases also. / (d) No error.
55. (a) We disposed off / (b) our old furniture / (c) before moving to Mumbai. / (d) No error.
56. (a) He was / (b) bereft from / (c) all his possession. / (d) No error.
57. (a) He assented of / (b) my proposal / (c) as it was very attractive. / (d) No error.
58. (a) A large sign near / (b) the entrance warns the visitors / (c) to beware about bears. / (d) No error.
59. (a) The teacher was tense / (b) when he entered / (c) the class which comprised of / (d) a hundred students. / (e) No error.
60. (a) There is no rule / (b) regarding the length of a precis / (c) with relation to / (d) that of the original passage. / (e) No error.
61. (a) He / (b) is suffering / (c) with flu. / (d) No error.
62. (a) He wanted to go / (b) to home / (c) as he was sick. / (d) No error.

Answers with Explanation

1. (b); 'leave for four days' is the correct form.
2. (b); 'listen' is followed by 'to'.
3. (c); 'Listen' is followed by 'to'.
4. (c); 'different' is followed by 'from'.
5. (a); 'responsible' is followed by 'for'.
6. (c); 'entered' is not followed by 'into'.
7. (b); 'emphasised' is not followed by 'on'.
8. (a); 'On' will be replaced by 'at'.
9. (c); 'attack' is not followed by 'on'.
10. (a); 'decline' is followed by 'in'.
11. (c); 'entrusted' is followed by 'with'.
12. (a); 'fell into' is the correct form here.
13. (c); 'than' must be replaced by 'to'. 'Prefer' takes 'to' after it.
14. (b); 'busy' is followed by 'with' and not 'in'.
15. (c); 'run out' must be replaced by 'run over'. 'Run over' means 'to come under the wheels of'.
16. (c); 'Land' will be followed by 'on'.
17. (a); 'Fond' is followed by 'of'.
18. (c); If 'control' is used as a verb, it is not followed by 'on'.
19. (c); 'Since' must be replaced by 'for'. 'Two hours' is a period.
20. (b); 'affection' is followed by 'for' and not 'to'.
21. (b); 'enmity' is followed by 'towards' and not 'for'.
22. (b); Here 'threw' will be followed by 'in' and not 'into'.
23. (c); 'among' must be replaced by 'between'.
24. (b); 'angry' is followed by 'with' if a person comes in place of object.
Note-angry with someone.
angry at something.
25. (c); 'worthy' is followed by 'of' and not 'for'.
26. (a); 'describe' is not followed by any preposition.
27. (c); 'Deal in' means 'to trade'.
28. (b); 'Deal with' means 'to tackle.'
29. (a); 'Despite' is not followed by 'of'.
30. (c); Remove 'with'.
31. (b); In active voice, a 'Comprise' is not followed by 'of'.
32. (c); 'Loss' is followed by 'of'.
33. (a); 'debarred from attending' is the correct form.
34. (a); 'await for' must be replaced by 'wait for'.
35. (b); 'Refrain' is followed by 'from' and not 'to'.
36. (c); 'listen' is followed by 'to' but 'worthlistening' is not followed by any preposition.
37. (b); 'persist' is followed by 'in'.
38. (b); 'differ' is followed by 'from' and not 'with'.
39. (c); 'admitted to' will be the correct form here.
40. (b); 'put your heart into it' is the correct form which means 'to do something with sincere efforts and energy'.
41. (c); 'on foot' must be used here'.

42. (b); 'Good' is followed by 'at'.
43. (b); 'Sensitive' is followed by 'to'.
44. (c); 'subscribe' is followed by 'to'.
45. (c); The word 'exactly' makes 'On time' a more suitable option.
46. (a); 'Despite' is not followed by 'of'.
47. (b); 'Congratulate' is followed by 'on'.
48. (b); 'avail' is followed by 'of'. 'Avail myself of this' is the correct form.
49. (c); 'in' must be replaced by 'by'.
50. (b); 'Cope with' is the correct form which means 'to handle'.
51. (b); 'told' and its forms do not take 'to'.
52. (b); 'accused' is followed by 'of'.
53. (b); 'described' is not followed by 'about'.
54. (b); If the sentence is in active voice, 'comprise' is not followed by 'of'.
55. (a); 'disposed' is followed by 'of' and not 'off'.
56. (b); 'bereft' is followed by 'of'.
57. (a); 'assented' is followed by 'to' and not 'of'.
58. (c); 'beware' is followed by 'of' and not 'about'.
59. (c); In active voice,a 'Comprise' is not followed by 'of'.
60. (c); 'with relation to' must be changed into 'in relation to'.
61. (c); 'with must be changed into 'from'. 'Suffer' is followed by 'from'.
62. (b); Remove 'to'.

FILL IN THE BLANKS WITH APPROPRIATE PREPOSITION

13. Ram agreed _____ my proposal.
(a) through (b) from (c) with (d) by

14. He is addicted _____ smoking.
(a) with (b) for (c) on (d) to

15. He sat _____ the shade of a tree.
(a) under (b) into (c) on (d) for

16. There is something wonderful _____ him.
(a) of (b) about (c) in (d) on

17. When will you hand _____ your assignment?
(a) in (b) back (c) for (d) in side

18. A new minister has taken _____ after the election.
(a) to (b) over (c) down (d) into

19. There is a bridge _____ the river.
(a) over (b) on (c) off (d) down

20. Please make yourself _____.
(a) with (b) at (c) down (d) across

21. The brave youth immediately jumped _____ the river to save the drowning child.
(a) in (b) into (c) inside (d) on

22. We can make no progress if we continue working _____.
(a) into (b) with (c) under (d) to

23. Keep your dog _____. It may damage the flowers.
(a) out (b) from (c) beside (d) for

24. _____ a moment she felt disappointed for no stockings hung from the fire place.
(a) just (b) for (c) at (d) since

25. We were completely taken _____.
(a) for (b) on (c) off (d) in

26. We were completely taken _____.
(a) for (b) on (c) off (d) in

27. Dr. Sharma concluded his speech _____ explaining the importance of charity.
(a) by (b) with (c) at (d) in

28. Shivaji Maharaj fought _____ every kind of aggression.
(a) against (b) to (c) with (d) at

29. Don't depend _____. others; you must stand on your own feet.
(a) at (b) on (c) to (d) for

30. Our life promises a lot _____. pleasure and we must learn to enjoy it.
(a) with (b) for (c) of (d) at

31. He travelled all _____. the world when he was eighty years old.
(a) in (b) over (c) with (d) of

32. My father lives _____. Delhi.
(a) in (b) at (c) inside (d) on

33. Madhav is good _____. English.
(a) in (b) at (c) on (d) with

34. Naina did not disclose the fact _____. her husband.
(a) to (b) before (c) from (d) on

35. The child did not approve _____. the father's plan.
(a) to (b) by (c) of (d) with

35. The tribes lived _____ customs different from the English had ever seen.
 (a) on (b) by (c) off (d) with
36. The strike has been called _____.
 (a) of (b) at (c) off (d) by
37. We warned her _____ the danger.
 (a) from (b) about (c) against (d) of
38. We laughed _____ the affair.
 (a) over (b) about (c) for (d) on
39. Put a blanket _____ the baby.
 (a) over (b) about (c) at (d) on
40. Stay _____ your limits.
 (a) within (b) in (c) at (d) on
41. She was happy to partake _____ the festivities.
 (a) in (b) of (c) at (d) for
42. I can cope _____ any problem.
 (a) up with (b) with (c) up (d) from
43. His manners _____ him.
 (a) speak of (b) speak out (c) speak up (d) speak for
44. A thorough search of the aircraft was carried _____ in the airport.
 (a) out (b) off (c) on (d) along
45. Discrimination _____ any form should be avoided.
 (a) of (b) by (c) from (d) in
46. A large number of people have fallen victim _____ dengue fever.
 (a) to (b) of (c) from (d) with
47. She scoffed _____ the idea of revolution.
 (a) for (b) at (c) about (d) on
48. This work of art is worthy _____ praise.
 (a) of (b) for (c) for (d) to
49. It is our duty to get _____ the truth.
 (a) to (b) over (c) into (d) at
50. For a child, a blow _____ self-esteem is a terrible thing.
 (a) of (b) with (c) to (d) on
51. He is a descendent _____ the Mughal royalty.
 (a) of (b) from (c) in (d) for
52. Fate smiled _____ him in all his ventures.
 (a) above (b) below (c) on (d) at
53. Don't put _____ until tomorrow what you can do today.
 (a) up (b) off (c) on (d) off
54. The train is arriving _____ platform number 4.
 (a) at (b) on (c) before (d) upon
55. The criminal was totally taken _____ when the police recognized him.
 (a) aback (b) up (c) for (d) away
56. The examination will begin _____ Monday.
 (a) from (b) in (c) at (d) on

PREPOSITION.

Answer Key

1. (b) 2. (d) 3. (d) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (c) 10. (c)
11. (d) 12. (b) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (c) 16. (b) 17. (a) 18. (b) 19. (c) 20. (c)
21. (b) 22. (c) 23. (d) 24. (b) 25. (d) 26. (a) 27. (a) 28. (b) 29. (c) 30. (c)
31. (a) 32. (b) 33. (a) 34. (c) 35. (b) 36. (c) 37. (d) 38. (a) 39. (c) 40. (c)
41. (a) 42. (b) 43. (d) 44. (a) 45. (d) 46. (a) 47. (b) 48. (a) 49. (c) 50. (c)
51. (a) 52. (c) 53. (d) 54. (a) 55. (a) 56. (d) 57. (b) 58. (b) 59. (a) 60. (c)

12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
15

ADVERB

CHAPTER

► An adverb is a word that qualifies-

(a) A verb

Eg.: He works hard
 verb Adv.

(b) An adjective

E.g.: He is very good
 Adv. Adj.
 ↑ ↑

(c) An adverb

E.g.: She works very hard.
 Adv. Adv.
 ↑ ↑

(d) A preposition

E.g.: The helicopter hovered exactly over his house.
 Adv. Prep.
 ↑ ↑

(e) A conjunction

E.g.: He likes her simply because she has a clear conscience.
 Adv. Conj.
 ↑ ↑

(f) A complete sentence

E.g.: Fortunately, no one was hurt.
 Adv. Sentence
 ↑ ↑

► Usually an adjective qualifies a noun or a pronoun but a few adverbs for e.g. 'only, even, at last, almost' can also be used for the same purpose.

ADVERB

E.g.: 1. Only I know the truth.
 Adv. Pronoun

2. Only Rohit can help you.
 Adv. Noun

ADVERBS ARE OF THREE TYPES

1. Simple Adverb
2. Relative Adverb
3. Interrogative Adverb
1. Simple Adverb

It denotes time, place, number, frequency of manner, reason, degree, affirmation or negation.

- (a) **Adverb of Manner** : - An adverb of manner tells us how a verb is done.

E.g.: He works **honestly**.

He walks **slowly**.

Remember: The adverb ending in 'ly' generally comes under adverb of manner.

Adjective

Slow

Glad

Honest

Adverb

Slowly

Gladly

Honestly

- **Miser, niggard, scholar and coward**, are a few nouns in which we often get confused between their **adjective** and **adverb** forms.

Noun	Adjective Form	Adverb Form
Coward	Cowardly	In a cowardly manner
Niggard	Niggardly	In a niggardly manner
Miser	Miserly	In a miserly manner
Scholar	Scholarly	In a scholarly manner

➤ **Look at the following sentences:**

1. He is miser. (x) (Add 'a' before miser which is a noun)
2. He is a miser man. (x) (use adjective 'miserly' to qualify man which is a noun)
 He is a miserly man.(✓)

3. He behaved miserly. (x) ('behave' is a verb, and adverb of 'miser' will be used to qualify the verb)
He behaved in a miserly manner.(✓)

Remember:

➤ A few words have the same adverb and adjective forms.

E.g.: **Fast, straight, outright, direct, hard, late, high, safe and quiet.**

E.g.: Adverb

He works **hard**.

Adjective

This is a **hard** task.

He wakes up **early**.

He came by an **early** flight.

Do not talk **loud**.

We should not speak in a **loud** tone.

Run **fast**.

He is a **fast** runner.

He waited **long** for me.

He went on a **long** journey.

Come **near**.

He is of my **near** relation.

➤ A few adverbs have **different meanings in 'ly' form.**

(a) Late

After the usual or proper time

Lately

Recently/of late

E.g.: (i) I haven't seen Akila **lately**.

(ii) He came **late** for the meeting.

(b) Hard

With great effort

Hardly

with difficulty

E.g.: (i) She works **hardly** to make both ends meet. (x)

(ii) She works **hard** to make both ends meet. (✓)

(iii) He **hardly** does any work. (✓)

(c) Free

Without charge

Freely

with freedom

E.g.: (i) We can move about **freely** in India.

(ii) Rides are provided **free** in this water park.

➤ **Both 'loudly' and 'aloud'** are adverbs but different in meaning.

Loudly means '**in high volume**'.

Aloud means '**audibly**'.

E.g.: (i) Please speak **aloud**. The students sitting on the last bench are unable to hear you.

(ii) We cannot play music **loudly** in this park.

➤ **Adverb of time: after, ago, early, late, now, then, soon, today, tomorrow etc** are adverbs of time.

It shows **when the action took place**.

ADVERB

E.g.: I came late.

➤ **Adverb of place** : Here, there, in, out, up, down, within, above, below etc.
Shows where the action took place.

E.g.: I could not find him anywhere.

➤ **Adverb of frequency / number**: Once, twice, thrice, always, never, seldom,
often, frequently etc
It shows how often.

E.g.: I can never behave in such a reckless manner .
She seldom goes there.

She often comes to meet me.

➤ **Adverbs of degree**: very, much, more, too, quite, little, almost etc.
It shows how much.

E.g.: This work is almost complete.

I am quite well.

➤ **Adverb of reason**: So, hence, therefore, on account of, consequently etc.
Adverb of Reason shows why the action took place.

E.g.: I could not come because I was not well.

I don't like him since he has cheated many people.

➤ **Adverbs of affirmation**: Surely, certainly, truly etc.

E.g.: She will truly help you.

I will surely repay the loan.

➤ **Adverbs of negation**: E.g.: no, not, never, etc.

E.g.: He did not reply to my letter.

I have never cheated anybody.

➤ **Relative Adverbs**: when, where, why and how.

Relative Adverbs joins sentences. It points towards its **antecedents** (noun/pronoun) and **denotes place, reason or manner**.

E.g.: I don't know where he has gone.

He will come when I call him.

➤ **Interrogative Adverbs**: why, when, where, how.

E.g.: Why are you surprised ?

Where has she seen me?

➤ **Comparison of Adverbs**

	<u>Positive</u>	<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Superlative</u>
(a)	Hard	harder	hardest
	Fast	faster	fastest
	Soon	sooner	soonest
	Near	nearer	nearest
	Early	earlier	earliest
(b)	Beautifully	more beautifully	most beautifully
	Carefully	more carefully	most carefully
	Swiftly	more swiftly	most swiftly
	Slowly	more slowly	most slowly
	Wisely	more wisely	most wisely
(c)	Ill, Badly	worse	worst
	Forth	further	furthest
	Far	farther	farthest
	Late	later	latest, last
	Little	less	least
	Much	more	most
	Well	better	best

➤ **Position of Adverb**

Adverb is always placed adjacent to the word that it modifies. If the position of adverb is changed, the meaning of the sentence changes.

E.g.: **Only** she saw my dress. (Dress was seen by just one person)

She **only** saw my dress. (She did not do anything else)

She saw **only** my dress. (She did not see the dress of any other person)

She saw my **only** dress. (I had just one dress)

She saw my dress **only**. (Not my shoes, accessories etc.)

➤ Adverbs can come at the beginning of a sentence :

(i) **Interrogative Adverb is always used in the beginning of a sentence.**

E.g.: **When** are you returning home ?

(ii) **In order to modify a complete sentence, an adverb is used at the beginning of a sentence.**

E.g.: **Surely**, I will take care of you.

(iii) **To emphasize the adverb, it is used in the beginning.**

E.g.: **Off** she goes.

Here comes the chief guest.

➤ Adverbs can come at the middle of a sentence :

(i) **Adverb of time (always, never, ever, often, seldom, sometimes) are used before the verbs that they modify.**

But if these adverbs come at the beginning of the sentence, the sentence takes inversion form which means the verb/helping verb comes at the beginning of the sentence.

1. Seldom he comes to Delhi. (x)
2. **Seldom does** he come to Delhi. (✓)
2. Never I'll go there. (x)
3. **Never shall** I go there. (✓)
3. No sooner she reached the station than the train left. (x)
No sooner did she reach the station than the train left. (✓)
4. Hardly she had reached the station when the train arrived. (x)
Hardly had she reached the station when the train arrived. (✓)
5. So quickly she ran that she overtook her friends. (x)
So quickly did she run that she overtook her friends. (✓)
6. His wife comes here and **so** does he. (✓)
7. He doesn't know any one here and **neither** do I. (✓)

➤ If both the auxiliary verb and the main verb come in a sentence, the adverb of frequency/ degree is put between the auxiliary verb and the main verb.

E.g.: He will **never** come here.
H.V. M.V.

I have **seldom** gone there.
H.V. M.V.

(iii) No matter whether 'to be' and its forms are used as a helping verb or a main verb, the adverb of frequency/degree comes always after 'be'.

E.g.: She is **always** happy.
M.V.

I am **never** sad.
M.V.

He is **always** praised for his sweet voice.
H.V. M.V.

➤ See the following sentences:

1. He comes often every Sunday. (place often before comes)
2. He goes usually to shop every Sunday. (place usually before goes)
3. He is always happy. (✓)

➤ Use of some adverbs:

1. Difference between very and much-

(a) **very** is used with positive degree.

E.g.: very good, very wise, very lucky, very honest.

2. **Much** is used with comparative degree.

E.g.: Much better, much wiser, much luckier, much more honest.

Note:

- (a) **Very much + comparative degree** is also used in a sentence.
E.g.: Very much better, very much wiser, very much luckier etc.
- (b) **Very/much is used with superlative degree** too.
E.g.: The ver best boy.
The+ very+ Sup.
- (c) **Very is used before Present Participle.**
E.g.: very interesting, very daring, very confusing, very boring, very entertaining.
- (d) **Much is also used with past participle.**
E.g.: much surprised, much grieved, much admired.
- (e) **Very is not used with Past Participle, but it is used with the following past participles.**
E.g.: Very tired, very dejected, very contented, very discontented, very pleased, very drunk, very limited, very delighted.
3. **'Quite' means 'perfectly/completely'. It is not used in place of 'very'.**
- (1) She is **quite lovely.** (x)
She is **very lovely.** (✓)
- (2) You are **quite handsome.** (x)
You are **very handsome.** (✓)
4. **Fairly and Rather**
- A. **Fairly is used with positive degree.**
E.g.: fairly wise, fairly good.
Rather is used with **positive and comparative degree.**
E.g.: rather bad, rather difficult, rather worse, rather hotter.
- B. **'Fairly' is not followed by 'too'.** In such sentences use '**Rather**' in place of 'fairly'.
E.g.: Fairly too good (x)
Rather too good. (✓)
- C. **Desirable Adjectives** are used after 'fairly'.
E.g.: fairly wise, fairly beautiful.
- **Unpleasant adjectives are used after 'rather'.**
E.g.: Rather wicked, rather difficult, rather troublesome, rather dull.
- Note:** Rather amusing, rather good, rather clever, rather pretty, rather beautiful are also correct.
5. (a) **'Too' means 'also' but 'too' usually takes the place of 'also' when needed after some clause or subject.**
E.g.: I also was invited for tea. (x)
I too was invited for tea. (✓)

(b) It too means **more than required**. Hence 'too' should not be used with pleasant adjectives.

E.g.: **too bad, too naughty, too wicked, too fat, too dull etc.**

E.g.: I am too glad to meet you (x)

I am **very glad** to meet you.(✓)

(c) 'Too....to' can take pleasant adjectives too.

E.g.: He is **too** intelligent **to** be cheated.

The sentence given above means 'he is so intelligent that he cannot be cheated'.
More examples of '**too + adjective**'

(i) He is **too** tall. (He is awkwardly tall)

(ii) She is **too** slim. (She is awkwardly slim)

(iii) It is **too** cold. (It is bitterly cold)

(iv) '**So**' cannot be used in place of '**very**'.

E.g.: (1) I am **so** happy. (x)

(2) I am **very** happy.(✓)

(3) I am **so** happy **that** I am unable to control my feeling. (✓) ('So...that' is a place of conjunction)

7. **Enough:** It acts as both an adjective and an adverb. If it works as adverb, it is used after adjective which it modifies. When used as an adjective it is placed before a noun. **Enough precedes a noun but follows an adjective.**

E.g.: (1) She is wise **enough** to understand your intention.

(2) He has **enough** money to buy this car.

➤ Positive degree of adjective / adverb is used before enough.

E.g.: (1) (A) He is / (B) faster enough / (C) to defeat / (D) you. / (E) No Error. (x)

(2) (A) He is bravest / (B) enough to be / (C) selected for / (D) the post of soldier / (E) No Error.(x)

➤ In sentence 1, use 'fast' in place of 'faster' and in sentence 2, use 'brave'.

➤ In sentence 1, use 'fast' in place of 'faster' and in sentence 2, use 'brave'.

8. **Yet:-** means-up to the moment/ time of speaking. It is used in interrogative /

negative sentences. It is placed after verb or verb + obj.

Note: It is generally used in present perfect negative sentence not in past tense.

E.g.: (i) The postman did not come yet. (x)

(ii) The postman has not come yet. (✓)

(iii) Didn't the postman come yet? (x)

(iv) Hasn't the postman come yet? (✓)

Some rules relating to Adverb-

Rule 1:

- 'Else' is followed by 'but'. and 'than' follows 'rather', 'other' and 'otherwise'.

E.g.: (i) I would rather die than beg.

(ii) It is nothing else than sheer foolishness. (Use 'but' in place of 'than')

(iii) Rahul had no other alternative but to work hard. (Use 'than' in place of 'but')

(iv) Rohit has no one else to talk to except his wife. (Use 'but' in place of 'except')

Rule 2:

- Adverbs, **seldom**, **never**, **nowhere**, **nothing**, **hardly**, **scarcely**, **neither**, **barely**, **rarely** are negative in meaning.

E.g.: (i) I rarely went to meet nobody. (Use 'anybody' in place of 'nobody')

(ii) She hardly knows nothing about me. (Use 'anything' in place of 'nothing')

(iii) I hardly know somebody in the city. (Say 'anybody' in place of 'somebody')

Rule 3:

- Negative words like **not/never** is not used with **deny**, **forbid**, **both**, **unless**, **until**, **lest**, **hardly**, **scarcely**, **rarely**, **seldom** and **too.....to**.

E.g.:

(i) She denied that she had not done anything wrong. (Delete 'not')

(ii) Both of us are not going there. (✗)

Neither of us is going there. (✓)

(iii) Unless he will not come, I will not go. (✗)

Unless he comes, I will not go. (✓)

Note: He did not deny that he was not present at the scene of crime (✓)

[**Meaning** - He accepted that he was present there]

Rule 4:

- (A) **Adverb 'as'** can be used with **-Regard**, **describe**, **define**, **treat**, **view**, **know**.
(B) **Adverb 'as'** cannot be used with **Name**, **elect**, **think**, **consider**, **call**, **appoint**, **make**, **choose**.

E.g.: (i) I regard him my brother. (Add 'as' after 'him')

(ii) Biology has been defined the study of organisms. (Add 'as' after 'defined')

(iii) She is considered as the best student of my class. (Drop 'as' after 'considered')

(iv) The teacher called him as stupid. (Drop 'as')

(v) The principal appointed him as lecturer. (Remove 'as')

(vi) He thinks her as a fool. (Remove 'as')

Rule 5:

- 'Too', 'as well' is used as 'Besides', 'in addition to' or 'also' in affirmative sense.
'Also' should not be used at the end.

E.g.: She found her bag and money **too/as well**.

ADVERB

Rule 6:

- 'Seldom or never', 'seldom, if ever', 'little or nothing', 'little, if anything' are correct but it is wrong to say 'seldom or ever' or 'little or anything'.
E.g.: He **seldom or never** goes to see movies.

Rule 7:

- **Verbs of sensation (Taste, Smell, Feel, Appear, Seem, Sound, and look)**, should take adjective and not adverb after them.

E.g.: I look honest.
 Verb of Adjective
 sensation

I work honestly.
 ordinary adverb
 verb

I felt bad.
 verb of adj
 sensation

I sing badly.
 Ordinary Adv
 verb

- **be, become, turn, get, grow, keep, make and prove** are also certain verbs that take adjective and not adverb after them.

E.g.: He got angry.
 adj

RULE 8:

- **Manly, masterly, slovenly, friendly, orderly, gentlemanly, sickly, weekly, monthly** are adjectives. They must not be mistaken as adverbs just because they end in 'ly'.

E.g.: He behaved friendly. (x)
 He behaved in a friendly manner. (✓)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) A soldier is / (b) taught never to / (c) fight cowardly. / (d) No error.
2. (a) A man of fifty / (b) cannot be called / (c) as young. / (d) No error.
3. (a) He is being / (b) very politely / (c) for the reason best known to him. / (d) No error.
4. (a) He is enough tall / (b) to be selected as Sub Inspector / (c) in Delhi Police. / (d) No error.
5. (a) He is niggard / (b) and saves each / (c) and every paise. / (d) No error.
6. (a) I am full of energy / (b) today because I / (c) soundly slept last night. / (d) No error.
7. (a) I did not know hardly / (b) anyone in the college / (c) and so I felt lonely all the time. / (d) No error.

8. (a) I have never seen / (b) a coward man / (c) like Sohan. / (d) No error.
9. (a) I never remember / (b) to have met a more intelligent / (c) man in my life. / (d) No error.
10. (a) I refused to accompany him / (b) because he was / (c) so boring. / (d) No error.
11. (a) I refused to consider / (b) him as an honest boy / (c) as he had cheated many people. / (d) No error.
12. (a) I see him often / (b) at the / (c) bus terminal. / (d) No error.
13. (a) Mangoes taste / (b) more sweetly than / (c) any other fruit of this world. / (d) No error.
14. (a) My father / (b) is very quicker than / (c) I at chess. / (d) No error.
15. (a) Never in the history / (b) there has been / (c) as shrewd a mentor as Chanakya. / (d) No error.
16. (a) Outright rejection / (b) of my plea / (c) disappointed me. / (d) No error.
17. (a) She did her job / (b) as better as she / (c) could do. / (d) No error.
18. (a) She does her / (b) work good as she / (c) is a trained nurse. / (d) No error.
19. (a) She had barely / (b) nothing to wear / (c) when she came to me for help. / (d) No error.
20. (a) She is either / (b) dumb or deaf, / (c) if not both. / (d) No error.
21. (a) She knows / (b) riding / (c) a horse. / (d) No error.
22. (a) Great leaders tried / (b) to eradicate social evil practices / (c) with tooth and nail. / (d) No error.
23. (a) It rained / (b) like cats and dogs / (c) throughout the night. / (d) No error
24. (a) The State Government / (b) appointed him as / (c) officer-in-charge. / (d) No error.
25. (a) The teacher asked / (b) the students to / (c) talk loudly. / (d) No error.
26. (a) Though he was brave, / (b) he could not face the ups and downs / (c) of life manly. / (d) No error.
27. (a) We must try / (b) to save our hardly / (c) earned money. / (d) No error.
28. (a) We seldom or ever / (b) go out these days / (c) because it is too hot now-a-days. / (d) No error.
29. (a) We should / (b) keep our belongings / (c) orderly. / (d) No error.
30. (a) Vijay could not scarcely conceal / (b) his happiness / (c) at my resignation. / (d) No error.
31. (a) When I read his biography, / (b) I hardly found something / (c) in his character that I could admire. / (d) No error.
32. (a) When she received the good news, / (b) she ran straightly / (c) to call up her parents. / (d) No error.
33. (a) You always / (b) come lately / (c) to class. / (d) No error.
34. (a) You have / (b) acted nobler than / (c) all of us. / (d) No error.
35. (a) You should have / (b) sufficiently collateral / (c) to pay back the loan. / (d) No error.
36. (a) Veena worked / (b) very hardly / (c) as she wanted to be a surgeon. / (d) No error.
37. (a) She sounded / (b) very sadly after / (c) the death of her pet. / (d) No error.
38. (a) Her speech was not clearly / (b) but we understood / (c) the underlying meaning. / (d) No error.
39. (a) All the pupils / (b) stood up respectively / (c) as the Guru entered the room. / (d) No error.

Answers with explanation

1. (c) 'In a cowardly manner' is the correct form. 'Cowardly' is an adjective. 'Fight' is a verb and needs an adverb to qualify it.
2. (c) Remove 'as'.
3. (b) Change 'Politely' into 'polite' because an adjective follows 'be' and its forms.
4. (a) 'Enough' comes after an 'adjective'. Put 'enough' after 'tall'.
5. (a) Add 'a' before 'niggard' (noun)
6. (c) Slept (verb) will take 'soundly'(adverb) after it.
7. (a) Hardly cannot take 'not' after it.
8. (b) Man (noun) must be qualified by an adjective 'cowardly'.
9. (a) 'Never' will come after 'remember'.
10. (c) Replace 'so' with 'very'.
11. (b) Remove 'as'. Consider is not followed by 'as'.
12. (a) 'Often' will come before the main verb 'see'.
13. (b) 'Taste' is a verb of sensation that takes an adjective and not an adverb. Change 'more sweetly' into 'sweeter'.
14. (b) 'Much' will come with 'quicker (comparative degree)
15. (b) Never (adverb) will be followed by a helping verb (has) first and then the subject.
16. (d)
17. (b) 'As.....as', will take the positive degree of adjective/adverb in between them. 'As well as' is the correct form here.
18. (b) 'Good' is an adjective. Use adverb 'well' here.
19. (b) 'Barely' will not take 'nothing' after it. Change 'nothing' into 'anything'.
20. (c) Change 'if not both' into 'if neither'.
21. (b) 'Knows how to ride' is the correct form here.
22. (c) Remove 'with'.
23. (b) Remove 'like'.
24. (b) Remove 'as'. 'Appoint' is not followed by 'as'.
25. (c) Change 'loudly' into 'aloud' (audible).
26. (c) Change 'manly' into 'mansfully'. 'Manly' is adjective. It means 'brave/strong'.
27. (b) Change 'hardly' into 'hard'.
28. (a) 'Seldom' is followed by 'never'.
29. (c) 'Orderly' is an adjective. 'In an orderly manner' is correct.
30. (a) Scarcely cannot be used with 'not'.
31. (b) 'Hardly' will come with 'anything'.
32. (b) 'Straight' is both adverb and adjective . 'Straightly' is a wrong word.
33. (b) 'Lately' means 'recently'. 'Late' is the correct word here.
34. (b) Use 'more nobly'. 'Nobler' is an adjective and here we need an adverb.
35. (b) 'Collateral' is a noun and hence will be qualified by an adjective 'sufficient'. 'Sufficiently' is an adverb.
36. (b) 'Hard' must replace 'hardly' here.
37. (b) 'Sound' (verb of sensation) will be qualified by 'sad'
38. (a) 'Speech (noun) will be qualified by an adjective 'clear'.
39. (b) Change 'respectively'(in the order given) into 'respectfully' (marked by respect).

16

WORD OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED

CHAPTER

S.N.	<u>WORD</u>	<u>हिन्दी में अर्थ</u>	<u>Meaning in English</u>
1.	Accept	स्वीकार करना	To receive a thing.
	Except	के अलावा	Leaving apart or excluding.
2.	Expect	उम्मीद करना	To hope
	Suspect	आशंका करना	To apprehend
3.	Adopt	अपनाना/गोद लेना	To accept/to take another person's child legally.
	Adept	निपुण	Proficient
	Adapt	ढालना	To change accordingly.
4.	Allude	उल्लेख करना	Refer to
	Elude	बचना	To escape
5.	Alternate	एक छोड़ कर एक	One after another.
	Alternative	विकल्प	Available instead /substitute
6.	Aural	कान से संबंधित	Of ear
	Oral	मौखिक	Verbal
7.	Access	पहुँच	/
	Excess	प्रचुरता में	Approach
8.	Averse	नापसंद करना	More than due.
	Adverse	विपरीत	To dislike
9.	Advice (N)	सलाह	Unfavourable
	Advise (V)	सलाह देना	An opinion
10.	Affect (V)	असर करना	To offer an opinion.
	Effect (N)	परिणाम	To influence
11.	Apposite	उपयुक्त	Result
	Opposite	के सामने/विपरीत	Proper
12.	Amend	संशोधन करना	In front of/ contrary
	Emend	अशुद्धियाँ निकाल देना	To improve
13.	Amoral	निनैतिक	To remove the mistakes
	Immoral	अनैतिक	Having no moral sense.
			Not conforming to moral standards.

WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED

14. Antics	हँसाने के लिए की गई हरकत	Tricks
Antiques	प्राचीन कला की वस्तुएं	Ancient pieces of art.
15. Appraise	मूल्यांकन करना	Assess the quality/ value of.
Apprise	सूचित करना	Inform
16. Allusion	संदर्भ में (अप्रत्यक्ष रूप से)	Indirect reference
Illusion	भ्रम	Deception
17. Beside	के बगल में	By the side of
Besides	के अलावा	Apart from
18. Bridle	लगाम	Headgear of horse
Bridal	दुल्हा/दुल्हन से संबंधित	Related to bride/ bridegroom
19. Beneficial	लाभदायक	Useful
Beneficiary	लाभान्वित व्यक्ति	One who receives benefit.
20. Boar	सुअर	A pig
Bore	बर्दाश्त करना/ पैदा करना	To tolerate or to produce (V ₂ of bear)
21. Bought	खरीदना	V ₂ and V ₃ of buy.
Brought	लाना	V ₂ and V ₃ of bring.
22. Catch	गतिशील को पकड़ना	To take hold of something when it is moving.
Hold	थामना	To take hold of something when it is static.
23. Childish	बेवकूफी भरा	Foolish
Childlike	मासूम	Innocent
24. Continual	नियमित रूप से	Happening repeatedly
Continuous	लगातार	Without break
25. Credible	विश्वसनीय	Believable
Creditable	सम्मानीय	Praiseworthy, honourable
26. Censure	निन्दा करना	To criticise
Censor	प्रतिबन्धित करना	Official licensing of films etc.
27. Canon	नियम	Rule
Cannon	तोप	A powerful gun fixed to wheels.
28. Canvas	मोटा कपड़ा	Coarse cloth
Canvass	घूम-घूम के बोट माँगना	Visit houses to get political support.
29. Cemetery	कब्रिगाह	A burial place
Symmetry	एक सा	Harmony
30. Casual	उदासीन, अनौपचारिक	Not formal, not taking much interest.
Causal	कारक संबंधी	Relating to cause
31. Climactic	उत्कर्ष से संबंधित	Relating to climax

Climatic

जलवायु संबंधित

Relating to climate

32. Coarse	भद्दा/ मोटा/ समतल नहीं	Rough
Course	किसी कार्य का सिलसिलेवार रास्ता	A line of action.
33. Confidant	राजदार	A person who is entrusted with secrets.
Confident	आत्मविश्वास के साथ	Sure and certain.
34. Contagious	बिमारी जो छूने से फैले	A disease that spreads by contact.
Contiguous	सिमांत	Near
Infectious	बिमारी जो हवा एवं पानी से फैले	A disease that spreads by air or water.
35. Corps	सेना की टुकड़ी	A division of army.
Corpse	मृत शरीर (इंसान का)	A dead body.
Carcass	किसी बड़े जानवर का मृत शरीर	The dead body of a large animal.
36. Conscious	अवगत	To know
Conscientious	ज़मीरखाला	With a sense of duty.
37. Complain (V)	शिकायत करना	To say that something is wrong or not satisfactory.
Complaint (N)	शिकायत	A report of a problem.
38. Complacent	आत्म संतुष्ट	Self-satisfied.
Complaisant	आज्ञाकारी	Obedient and compliant.
39. Complement	पूरक	N-a thing that completes or improves. V-add to something in a way that it improves.
Compliment	तारीफ	A remark of admiration.
40. Custom	सामाजिक नियम	Social usage.
Habit	आदत	Personal usage.
41. Compose	बनाना	Make up the whole.
Comprise	से बना होना	Consist of.
42. Career	पेशा	Course through life.
Carrier	सामान ढोने की गाड़ी	That which carries.
43. Credible	विश्वसनीय	Believable
Credulous	जो आसानी से विश्वास कर ले	Too ready to believe.
44. Discreet	(सचेत ताकि किसी को व्यवहार या भाषा से चोट न पहुँचे)	Careful not to cause offence by speech or behaviour.
Discrete	(पृथक)	Separate, distinct.
45. Disease	बिमारी	Ailment or illness.
Decease	मृत्यु	Death.
46. Decent	सम्म	Nice, respectable.
Descent	ढ़लान	Downward motion.
Dissent	मतभेद	Difference of opinion.

WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED

47. Dual	दोहरा	With two parts.
Duel	द्वंद्व युद्ध	A fight between two persons using guns or swords.
48. Deface	विकृत करना	Disfigure.
Efface	मिटा देना	Wipe out.
49. Deny	खंडन करना	To declare untrue.
Decline	अस्वीकार करना	Refuse to accept an offer.
Refuse	इन्कार करना	Show unwillingness towards.
Refute	खंडन करना (सबूत के साथ)	Prove wrong.
50. Defy	उल्लंघन करना	To break the law.
Deify	ईश्वर बना देना	To make someone or something a god.
51. Defuse	तनाव कम करना	Remove the tension.
Diffuse	फैलाना/अस्पष्ट	Spread out; not clear or concise.
52. Desert	N- रेगिस्तान, V- त्याग देना	N- An area where there is little rain. V- To leave someone.
Dessert	भोजन के बाद का मीठा व्यंजन	Sweet dish eaten at the end of a meal.
53. Depression	गड़बड़ा/अवसाद	Hollow/ A mental state of despair.
Depreciation	मूल्य कम होना	Undervalue.
54. Disinterested	निष्पक्ष	Impartial.
Uninterested	दिलचस्पी ना होना	Not interested.
55. Delightful	प्रसन्नतादायक	Very pleasant.
Delicious	स्वादिष्ट	Pleasing to taste.
56. Deprecate	नापसंद करना	To hate.
Depreciate	मुल्य कम करना	To reduce in value.
57. Defective	त्रुटिपूर्ण	Having a certain imperfection.
Deficient	कमी होना	Lacking something.
58. Decided	निर्णय किया हुआ (निश्चित)	Clear and definite.
Decisive	निर्णायक	Deciding.
59. Effective	असरदार	Producing effect.
Efficacious	जो निश्चित ही उत्तम परिणाम दे	Able to produce the desired result.
Efficient	कार्यकुशल	Competent.
60. Elicit	उत्पन्न कर पाना	To get or produce something.
Illicit	अवैध	Illegal or disapproved of by society.
61. Economical	कम खर्च वाला	Involving less expenditure.
Economic	अर्थव्यवस्था सम्बन्धित	Relating to economy.
62. Enduring	लम्बे समय तक कायम	Existing for a long time.
Endurable	सहन करने लायक	Bearable.

63. Emigrant	प्रवासी	A person who leaves his country to settle in another.
Immigrant	अप्रवासी	One who comes to another country.
64. Enormity	अति, घोर	Extreme seriousness.
Enormousness	ज्यादा होना	Great in size or scale.
65. Ensure	सुनिश्चित करना	To make sure.
Insure	बीमा करना	To protect against risk.
Assure	दिलासा देना	To make certain of.
66. Envelop	(ढ़क देना)	To cover or surround something completely.
Envelope	(लिफाफा)	A flat usually square paper container for a letter.
67. Especially	विशेष कर	In particular, above all.
Specially	किसी विशेष अवसर के लिए	For a special purpose.
68. Excite	उत्तेजित करना	To arouse feelings of happiness or enthusiasm.
Incite	उकसाना / भड़काना	To arouse unpleasant or violent feelings.
69. Expedient	सही/ लाभदायक	Helpful or useful in a particular situation.
Expeditious	शीघ्र/ फूर्ती से	Prompt.
70. Extinct	विलुप्त	No longer existing.
Instinct	मूल प्रवृत्ति	Inborn impulse.
71. Flair	जन्मजात प्रवृत्ति	Natural ability.
Flare	धधकना, फैलना	A burst of flame or light/ to become angry.
72. Flaunt	दिखावा करना	Display ostentatiously/to show off.
Flout	उत्त्लंघन करना	Disregard a rule or custom.
73. Fortuitous	आकस्मिक	Happening by chance.
Fortunate	भाग्यशाली	Lucky.
74. Felicity	प्रसन्नता	A blessing, happiness.
Facility	सुविधा	Ease or comfort
Faculty	कार्यशक्ति/ कॉलेज का विभाग /कॉलेज के अध्यापकगण	Ability/departments of college/ the people who teach
75. Fatal	घातक	Deadly
Fatoful	महत्वपूर्ण/परन्तु नकारात्मक परिणामयुक्त	Important but with usually negative effect.
76. Fain	खुशी से	Gladly
Feign	दिखावा करना (जो सच नहीं है)/बहाना बनाना	To pretend to feel something.

WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED

77. Floor	फर्श	The flat surface of room on which we walk.
Ground	जमीन	The surface of earth outside the room.
78. Graceful	भव्य	
Gracious	दयालु	Handsome or attractive
79. Gate	द्वार	Merciful
Gait	चलने का तरीका	An entrance
80. Gourmand	पेटू	A particular way of walking.
Gourmet	पाक कला का पारखो	A glutton
81. Hear	सुनना	A food connoisseur.
Listen	ध्यान से सुनना	To receive sound.
82. Hoard	छिपाकर संग्रह करना	To hear carefully.
Horde	एक बड़ा समूह	To store in a secret place.
83. Humility	विनम्रता	A large group of people.
Humiliation	अपमान	The quality of being humble.
84. Historic	महत्वपूर्ण	Disrespect
Historical	ऐतिहासिक	Important
Histrionic	नाटकीय एवं बढ़ा चढ़ाकर	Relating to history
85. Human	मानव	Dramatic and exaggerated
Humane	दयालु	Relating to man
86. Illegal.	गैरकानूनी	Kind
Illicit	अवैध	Against the law
87. Incredible	अविश्वसनीय	Disapproved of by society.
Incredulous	जो विश्वास न करें	Unbelievable
88. Ingenious	बढ़िया एवं नई युक्ति भरा	Not ready to believe something/ someone.
Ingenuous	निष्कपट, सरल	Clever and involving new ideas.
89. Intense	तीव्र	Honest and sincere.
Intensive	गहन	Extreme and forceful.
90. Invent	आविष्कार करना	Involving a lot of effort.
	खोज करना	To create something which never existed before.
		To find something for the first time which nobody was aware of.
91. Industrial	उद्योग संबंधी	Relating to industry
Industrious	मेहनती	Hard-working
92. Imperious	दबंग	Haughty
Imperial	राजसी	Majestic, relating to empire.
93. Incumbent	जरूरी	To be necessary
Recumbent	लेटा हुआ	Lying down
94. Jealous	ईर्ष्यालु (जब वस्तु हमारी हो)	When we are afraid of losing the person/ thing we love, we feel jealous.



Envious	ईर्ष्यालु (जब वस्तु हमारी नहीं हो)	When we wish we had what someone else has, we feel envious. Envy and jealousy are slightly different in meaning.
95. Judicial	न्याय संबंधी	Relating to a judge or justice.
Judicious	समझदार	Wise, prudent
96. Light	V- जलाना-प्रकाशित करने के लिए N- रोशनी, Adj- हल्का	Verb-to start flames in order to spread light/ Noun-radiance/Adj-not heavy.
Burn	V- जलाना-नाश करने के लिए, N- फफोला	V-to start flames to destroy something/N- the part of body damaged due to heat.
97. Lightening	उजाला करना, हल्का करना, गेहू करना	To make bright/ less heavy/ pale/ less serious.
Lightning	बिजली-जो आसमान में दिखती है	A flash of bright light seen in the sky.
Lighting	बिजली की व्यवस्था	The arrangement of lights.
98. Loath	अनिच्छुक	Reluctant, unwilling
Loathe	घृणा करना	To hate
99. Loose	ढीला	Not tight.
Lose	खोना/हारना	Be defeated.
Loss	घाटा/हानि	The state of not in posession of something or having it less than before.
100. Luxuriant	प्रचुरता में उगना	Strong in growth
Luxurious	विलासितापूर्ण	Very comfortable and expensive.
101. Lovely	प्यारा, सुंदर	Beautiful
Lovable	प्यार करने योग्य	Worthy of love
102. Metal	धातु	A chemical element. Eg-gold, iron etc.
Mettle	क्षमता	Ability.
103. Metre	लम्बाई को इकाई	A unit of length.
Meter	एक यंत्र	A device used to measure the amount of something that is used.
104. Negligent	लापरवाह	Careless
Negligible	नगण्य	Very little
105. Momentary	क्षणिक	Short-lived
Momentous	महत्वपूर्ण	Very important
106. Minor	नाबालिग	Underage
Miner	खदान कर्मी	One who works in mines.
107. Militate	प्रतिकूल होना	To hinder
Mitigate	तीव्रता कम करना/शान्त करना	Make less severe.
108. Naval	नेवी संबंधित	Relating to a navy.

Navel	नाभी	
109. Notable	ध्यान देने लायक	Small round part in the middle of the stomach.
Notorious	कुख्यात	Important and deserving attention.
Famous	प्रसिद्ध	Known for bad qualities.
Eminent	प्रसिद्ध एवं सम्माननीय	Well known
110. Official	आधिकारिक	Well known and respected
Officious	सलाह देने के लिए तत्पर	Relating to an office.
111. Ordinance	अध्यादेश	Too eager to tell others what to do.
Ordnance	सेना का साजो-सामान	A law made by the government. Military material such as weapons, ammunition etc.
112. Pane	खिड़की/दरवाजे का काँच	A flat piece of glass used in a window/door.
Pain	दर्द	Feeling of physical suffering.
Pains	अथक प्रयास	A lot of efforts.
113. Palate	तालू	The roof of the mouth/ the sense of taste.
Palette	रंग मिलाने का बर्तन	An artist's mixing board.
Pellet	किसी चीज़ का छोटा गोला	A small ball of any substance.
114. Pedal	पैर से चलाने वाला	A foot-operated lever.
Peddle	घूम-घूम कर सामान बेचना	To sell goods by going from one place to another.
115. Perpetrate	करना (गुनाह)	To commit (a crime).
Perpetuate	किसी कार्य/हालात के जारी रहने का कारण बनना	To cause something to continue.
116. Personal	निजी	Private
Personnel	कर्मी	Staff
117. Pore	छेद	Small hole.
Pour	बहना, उड़ेलना	Flow, cause to flow.
118. Practice (N)	अभ्यास	Regular activity.
Practise (V)	अभ्यास करना	To do something regularly.
119. Practicable	व्यवहारिक	Able to be done.
Practical/	वास्तव में/प्रयोगात्मक	Effective or realistic.
120. Prescribe	सलाह देना (के रूप में)	To recommend
Proscribe	गैर कानूनी करार देना	Forbid or condemn.
121. Proceed	आगे बढ़ना	To continue
Precede	पहले आना	To come before/happen before.
122. Popular	प्रसिद्ध	Liked by all.

WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED

Populous	घनी आवादी वाला	Thickly populated.
123. Pray	प्रार्थना करना	To offer prayer to God.
Prey	(V) शिकार करना/(N) शिकार	Hunt and kill/ victim
124. Principal	प्रधानाचार्य/ मुख्य	One who is in charge of a school/ first in order of importance.
Principle	सिद्धान्त	Most important basic idea / moral rule.
125. Quite	पूर्ण/थोड़ा	Completely
Quiet	चुप	To be silent
Quit	छोड़ देना	to give up
126. Respectable	सम्माननीय	Worthy of respect.
Respectful	सम्मानजनक	Showing respect
Respective	विशिष्ट, अलग-अलग	Particular
127. Resource	संसाधन	Means
Recourse	रास्ता	Resort
128. Refute	खण्डन करना	Prove to be wrong.
Repudiate	सही या सच मानने से इंकार करना	Refuse to accept as true or correct.
129. Regrettable	खेदजनक	Causing regret, undesirable.
Regretful	दुखी	Feeling sorry
130. Rise	उठना/जागना/तरक्की करना	To get up, to progress.
Raise	उठाना	To lift
Raze	ध्वस्त करना	To demolish
Rage	गुस्सा	Anger
131. Ride	दोपहिया या जानवर की सवारी करना	To sit on an animal or two-wheeler and travel.
Drive	चार-पहिया की सवारी करना	To travel by a four-wheeler.
132. Rout	धराशाही करना	To defeat completely and easily.
Route	रास्ता	Path
Root	जड़	The underground part of a plant.
133. Septic	एक चिकित्सा संबंधी समस्या	A medical term involving sepsis.
Sceptic	सदैही	Doubtful of an idea or belief.
134. See	देखना	Perceive with eyes.
Look	ताकना/नजर डालना	To direct the eyes in order to see.
Watch	देखना (कुछ अंतराल तक)/ नजर रखना	To look at something for a period of time/ to keep an eye on.
Stare	घूरना	To look continuously for a long time.
Peep	झाँकना	To see secretly or through a hole.
Glance	नजर डालना	To give a quick short look.
Glare	गुस्से में घूरना	To stare angrily.
Glimpse	एक झलक देखना	To see someone very briefly.
Glower	गुस्से से देखना	To see angrily.

WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED

135. Sever Amputate	अलग करना शरीर के किसी बाहरी अंग (हाथ या पैर) को काट कर अलग करना, क्योंकि वह स्थायी रूप से क्षतिग्रस्त हो चुका है	To break / to separate. Cut off a body part that is permanently damaged.
Maim	शरीर के किसी अंग को स्थायी रूप से क्षतिग्रस्त करना	To damage any body part permanently.
Severe	तीव्र	Extreme
Sewer	नाला	Drain
136. Story Storey	कहानी	Account of any event.
Story	तल	Floor
137. Suit Soot Suite	वाद/अभियोग कालिख सेट	Action in a law court. Black substance in smoke. A set of rooms / furniture.
138. Statue Statute	मूर्ति लिखित कानून	Image Written law
139. Straight Strait	सीधा जलसंधि	Extending without a curve. Narrow passage of water.
140. Stationary Stationery	स्थिर पैन, कॉपी इत्यादि	Not moving. Things needed for writing.
141. Sight Site Cite	दृष्टि/ नजारा कार्यस्थल उल्लेख करना	Ability to see/view. A place of construction. To mention.
142. Shear Sheer	काटना (बाल, इत्यादि) पूर्ण रूप से	To cut off-hair, wool etc. Utter, complete
143. Toe	पैर की ऊँगली	Any of the five separate parts at the end of the foot.
Tow	खींच कर गाड़ी ले जाना	To pull a vehicle using a rope or chain tied to another vehicle.
144. Temper Tamper	गुस्सा छेड़-छाड़ करना (किसी चीज से)	Anger, rage To interfere with.
145. Temporary Temporal	क्षणिक, तत्कालिक सांसारिक	Short lived Earthly or worldly
146. Titillate	उत्तेजित करना	Stimulate or excite especially in a sexual way.
Titivate	सुन्दरता बढ़ाना	To make smarter or more pretty.
147. Topical Tropical	प्रासांगिक/आधुनिक विषय से उष्ण	Related to present time. With hot climate
148. Vain Vein	बेकार में/घमंडी नाड़ी	Not successful/arrogant. Tube that carries blood to the heart in our body.

149. Verbal	शाब्दिक	Relating to words
Verbose	शब्दों से भरा	Containing more words than necessary
Oral	मौखिक	Spoken
Verbiage	जरूरत से ज्यादा शब्दों भरा जिससे अर्थ समझना कठिन हो जाए	Use of too many words due to which it becomes difficult for one to understand the speech or article.
150. Virtuous	नैतिक रूप से अच्छा	Having good moral qualities
Virtual	आभासीय	In effect, though not in fact
151. Vile	नीच	Immoral
Wile	युक्ति	Tricks
152. Vale	घाटी	Valley
Veil	नकाब, घूँघट	Cover of face
Wail	रोना	Weep
153. Vocation	व्यवसाय	Profession
Vacation	अवकाश	Holidays
154. Violence	हिंसा, प्रहर	Force
Violation	नियम की अवहेलना	Infringement of law
155. Wither	मुरझा जाना	To fade
Whither	कहाँ	Where
Weather	मौसम	Atmospheric condition (of a short period)
Whether	या.....या	'Whether or' is a co-relative
156. Wave	लहर (N)/ लहराना (V)	Raised mass of water in sea/ to move.
Waive	त्याग देना	To give up

VOCABULARIES

S.N.	WORD	हिन्दी में अर्थ	Meaning in English
1.	Abase	नीचा दिखाना	Degradate.
2.	Abash	लज्जित करना	To embarrass.
3.	Abattoir	बूचड़ खाना	Place where animals are killed.
4.	Abdicate	त्याग देना	Give up.
5.	Aberrant	असामान्य	Abnormal.
6.	Abetment	दूषप्रेरण	The act of helping someone in wrongdoing.
7.	Abeyance	निलंबित अवस्था	Suspended action.
8.	Abhor	घृणा करना	Detest, dislike, hate.
9.	Abject	बुरी हालत में	Extremely poor or unhappy.
10.	Abjure	सौगन्ध खा कर त्याग करना	Renounce upon oath.
11.	Ablution	शुद्धि हेतु स्नान	The act of washing oneself.
12.	Abnegation	त्याग देना-अधिकार या दावा	To give up a right or a claim.
13.	Abode	निवास	The place where someone lives.
14.	Abolish	उम्मूलन करना	To put an end to.
15.	Abominable	घृणित	Very bad or unpleasant.
16.	Aboriginal	आदिवासी	Native.
17.	Abortive	निष्फल	Fruitless, futile.
18.	Abrasive	घिसने का सामान	Substance used for rubbing.
19.	Abridge	संक्षिप्त करना	Shorten.
20.	Abrogate	खत्म करना (किसी परम्परा/ कानून को)	Abolish some custom etc.
21.	Abscission	चीरा	Cutting off.
22.	Abscond	भाग जाना	Depart secretly.
23.	Absolute	पूर्ण रूप से	Complete.
24.	Absolve	दोष से मुक्त करना	Pardon.
25.	Abstain	रोकना, परहेज करना	Refrain from.
26.	Abstract	संक्षेप दस्तावेज/सिर्फ भावना के रूप में ही मौजूद	A shortened form of speech/existing as an idea or feeling only.

27. **Abstruse** मुश्किल, कठिन Difficult to understand.
28. **Abysmal** बहुत बुरा Not measurable, very bad.
29. **Accede** मान जाना Agree to do.
30. **Acclaim** प्रशंसा करना Applaud.
31. **Accolade** पुरस्कार Award of merit.
32. **Accomplice** गुनाह का साथी Partner in crime.
33. **Accord** सामंजस्य से Do something in complete agreement.
34. **Accused** आरोपी One who is under trial in a court.
35. **Acme** शिखर Peak.
36. **Acquit** बरी करना Declare to be not guilty.
37. **Adapt** अनुकूल बनाना To change to suit different environment.
38. **Adept** निपुण Proficient.
39. **Adolescent** किशोर One who is growing into an adult.
40. **Adulteration** मिलावट Mixing some undesired commodity.
41. **Adultery** विवाहेतर संबंध, व्याभिचार To have sex outside marriage.
42. **Adverse** प्रतिकूल Unfavourable.
43. **Aftermath** किसी अप्रिय घटना के बाद का समय The period which follows an undesired event.
44. **Aghast** हत्प्रभ रह जाना Sudden feeling of shock and worry.
45. **Agile** लचीला Able to move your body quickly.
46. **Agony** दर्द Extreme sufferings.
47. **Aisle** सीट के शृँखला के बीच जाने-आने का Narrow, long space between the two rows of seats.
48. **Alchemist** पारस One who tries to turn other base metal into gold.
49. **Alimony** तलाक पश्चात दी जाने वाली रकम Money paid usually to a wife after break-down of marriage.
50. **Altar** बेदी Table/place where offerings are put in a religious place.
51. **Altercation** वाक युद्ध, कहा-सुनी A loud argument.
52. **Ambiguous** अस्पष्ट, द्विअर्थी Having more than one possible meaning.
53. **Amenable** सुझाव स्वीकार करने को तैयार Willing to accept a suggestion.
54. **Amiable** दोस्ताना Pleasant and friendly behaviour.
55. **Angst** चिन्ता Great anxiety.

VOCABULARIES

56.	Anguish वेदना, व्यथा	Extreme unhappiness.
57.	Annotate टिप्पणी	To add a brief explanation.
58.	Anonymous गुमनाम	Made/done by someone unknown.
59.	Antecedent पूर्वगामी	Something/someone existing before.
60.	Apathy उदासीनता	Lack of interest/enthusiasm/emotion.
61.	Appalling बहुत भयावह	Very bad and shocking.
62.	Appeasement तुष्टीकरण	The act of giving advantage to one party.
63.	Archives ऐतिहासिक/ सरकारी दस्तावेज जहाँ रखा .	Place where historical records are kept.
64.	Argumentative	बहस करने वाला	Often arguing or ready to argue.
65.	Articulate अच्छा वक्ता	A good orator.
66.	Asceticism सन्यास/ वैराग्य	Religious beliefs and avoidance of life of pleasure.
67.	Assault मारपीट करना	A violent attack.
68.	Asset सम्पत्ति	Valuables.
69.	Atrocities जुल्म	Violent and cruel act.
70.	Attenuate शान्त करना	To calm or soothe.
71.	Attrition सनिधर्षण	The gradual weakening of something.
72.	Augment बढ़ाना	Add to/increase.
73.	August महत्त्वपूर्ण/राजसी	Important/Magestic.
74.	Aura आभा	A feeling or character a person/place seems to have.
75.	Averse नापसंद	Strong disliking.
76.	Awful अत्यंत बुरा	Hateful.
77.	Babble बड़बड़ाना	Talk in a way which is difficult to understand.
78.	Bacchanalian शराबी	Drunken.
79.	Backbite चुगली करना	To speak something at the back of someone.
80.	Badger परेशान करना	Annoy.
81.	Badinage मजाक में चिढ़ाना	playful teasing/banter.
82.	Baffle चकरा देना	Confuse.
83.	Bait चारा	Snare, Trap, Decoy.
84.	Baleful घातक, हानिकारक	Deadly.
85.	Balk अनिच्छुक होना	To be unwilling to do something.

86. **Balmy** गर्म Pleasantly warm.
87. **Bane** अभिशाप Curse.
88. **Banter** मजाक में चिढ़ाना Conversation which is funny and not serious.
89. **Barb** काँटा Sharp projection from fish hook.
90. **Barbaric** बर्वर Savagely cruel.
91. **Bard** कवि Poet.
92. **Barefaced** बेशर्म Shameless.
93. **Baroque** सजा हुआ Highly ornate.
94. **Barrage** बांध Structure built across a river.
95. **Beeline** सीधी रेखा/रास्ता Direct or quick route.
96. **Beget** पैदा करना To father or produce.
97. **Begrudge** बेमन से देना To give unwillingly.
98. **Beguile** दिशा भ्रमित करना Cheat or mislead.
99. **Behemoth** बहुत बड़ा जीव Huge creature.
100. **Behest** के निवेदन/ आदेश पर At the request or order of.
101. **Benevolence** दया Kindness.
102. **Betray** धोखा देना To be disloyal/ to deceive.
103. **Blackguard** आवारा, अनैतिक व्यक्ति A man who has no moral principles.
104. **Blatant** बेशर्मी के साथ खुलेआम Open and unashamed.
105. **Blister** फकोला Swellings on skin.
106. **Blizzard** बर्फाला तूफान Stormy weather.
107. **Blunder** बहुत बड़ी गलती A big mistake.
108. **Blush** शर्म से लाल होना To become pink in the face due to shyness.
109. **Boisterous** शोर-गुल मचाने वाला, जोश से भरा Noisy and full of energy.
110. **Bombast** बड़ी-चढ़ी वात Pompous language with little meaning.
111. **Boost** बढ़ाना To improve/increase.
112. **Booze** शराब पीना To take alcoholic drink.
113. **Brickbat** बक-झक An insult, spoken attack.
114. **Brutal** बर्वर Savagely violent
115. **Buckle** दबाव में टूट जाना Crumble under pressure.
116. **Bully** परेशान करना/ डराना To hurt/frighten someone.
117. **Bunk** बिना अनुमति के चले जाना To leave without permission.
118. **Butcher** हत्या करना To kill/murder someone.
119. **Cabal** घट्यन्त्र करने वाला समूह Group of people who plan secretly.
120. **Cache** छिपाने का स्थान Hiding place.

VOCABULARIES

121.	Cacophony शोरगुल Harsh mixture of sound.
122.	Cadaver शव A dead human body.
123.	Cadence स्वर का उतार चढ़ाव Regular rise and fall of voice.
124.	Cahoots बड़यन्त्र Acting together generally for a dishonest purpose.
125.	Calamity संकट Disaster.
126.	Caldron कढ़ाई Large kettle.
127.	Calibre क्षमता Ability.
128.	Calligraphy सुंदर लेखन कला Art of writing beautifully.
129.	Callous निर्दयी Cruel.
130.	Callow अनुभवहीन One with little experience or knowledge.
131.	Canvass घूम-घूम कर बोट माँगना Seek votes.
132.	Capitalize पैंजी उपलब्ध कराना To supply money to a business.
133.	Capitulate आत्मसमर्पण करना Surrender.
134.	Capricious सनकी Fickle-minded.
135.	Carcass मृत शरीर (जानवर का) A dead body of a large animal.
136.	Cardinal प्रमुख most important.
137.	Careen तेजी से आगे बढ़ते हुए बाएं-दाएं हिलना Sway from side to side while moving forward quickly.
138.	Carnage जनसंहार Slaughter/massacre.
139.	Casanova दिलफेंक One who has lots of sexual relationships.
140.	Catastrophe विपत्ति, संकट A sudden destructive event/ unpleasant and disastrous.
141.	Cave (V) दबाव में टूट जाना Collapse/give in to demands.
	Cave (N) गुफा A large hole on the side of a hill.
142.	Censor प्रतिबंधित करना To ban unacceptable parts.
143.	Censure निन्दा करना Strongly criticise.
144.	Chaos अव्यवस्था Complete disorder.
145.	Charismatic आर्कषक Attractive.
146.	Chaste पवित्र Pure.
147.	Chauvinism बड़प्पन की भावना (अपनी नस्ल/ मर्द ... होने पर) Feeling of superiority due to race or gender.
148.	Cheat धोखेबाज/ धोखा देना One who cheats or deceives/the act of deceiving.

149. Chide	डॉटना	To reprimand and to speak severely to someone.
150. Clamour	शोर मचा कर माँग या शिकायत करना ..	To make a loud complaint or demand.
151. Clandestine	गुप्त	Planned/done in secret.
152. Clasp	जोर से धासना	To hold something firmly.
153. Cloak	लम्बा चोगा/ छिपाना	Long gown/ to hide.
154. Coalition	साझा	A temporary alliance.
155. Coddle	कुछ ज्यादा ही देखभाल करना	To protect something/ someone too much.
156. Collate	क्रम में रखना, गलती ढूढ़ने हेतु मिलान करना	To put in proper order.
157. Collision	टक्कर	The act of hitting something with another thing.
158. Combat	लड़ाई	A fight especially during a war.
159. Commendable .	प्रशंसनीय	Praiseworthy.
160. Commute	यात्रा करना जो नियमित हो/ बदल देना ...	To make the same journey regularly/ to change.
161. Complement ...	पूरक	A thing that improves.
162. Conceal	छिपाना	To hide.
163. Concede	स्वीकार कर लेना	Admit to be true.
164. Concurring	सहमत होना	To agree with someone.
165. Condolence	संवेदना व्यक्त करना	Sympathy for the family of a person who has recently died.
166. Confrontation टकराव		Fight/argument.
167. Consecrate	पवित्र बनाना/पवित्र घोषित करना.....	Make or declare sacred.
168. Conspicuity	प्रत्यक्ष होना.....	Clarity.
169. Conspirator	षड्यंत्रकारी	One who plans something illegal.
170. Contemplate ...	विचार करना	Think of a particular thing for a long time.
171. Convalesce	स्वास्थ्य लाभ करना	Regain health after illness.
172. Conversant	ज्ञान होना.....	Having knowledge of.
173. Convict	दोषी सिद्ध करना/दोषसिद्ध व्यक्ति	One proved guilty/to be proved guilty.
174. Conviviality	दोस्ताना	Friendly.
175. Corporal	शारीरिक	Bodily.
176. Corpse	मुर्दा शरीर.....	A dead body of a person.
177. Corroborate	पुष्टि करना.....	Confirm or support.
178. Countenance ...	चेहरे का भाव.....	The expression of the face.
179. Couplet	एक सुर की दो पंक्तियाँ	Two successive rhyming lines of verse.

180. Cramp	याथा डालना/परोड़	Hamper or restraint/painful involuntary tightening of a muscle.
181. Credentials	योग्यता एवं अनुभव	Qualities/documents proving ability and experience.
182. Crooked	बेर्इमान/ सीधा नहीं	Dishonest/not forming a straight line.
183. Culminate	तक पहुँचना तब खत्म होना	To reach a point and then finish.
184. Culprit	दोषी	Someone who has done something wrong.
185. Curb	अंकुश लगाना	To check/restrain.
186. Dab hand	किसी काम में निपुण	An expert in something.
187. Dabble	सिर्फ ऐसे ही कोई कार्य करना	Work in non-serious way.
188. Daft	मूर्ख	Silly or stupid.
189. Dainty	छोटा एवं सुन्दर	Small and graceful.
190. Dally	कोई कार्य धीरे-धीरे करना	Procrastinate/to waste time or do something slowly.
191. Damsel	अविवाहित युवती	A young unmarried girl.
192. Dank	भोगा हुआ	Damp/wet.
193. Dapper	साफ-सुथरा	Neat and tidy.
194. Dappled	चितकबरा	Spotted.
195. Daub	लेपना	Smear.
196. Daunt	डराना	Intimidate, frighten.
197. Dauntless	निडर	Bold.
198. Dearth	कमी	Lack of.
199. Debauched	पथप्रष्ट (शराब, सेक्स इत्यादि में लिप्त) One who is given to sex, alcohol etc.	
200. Debilitate	कमजोर बनाना	Weaken.
201. Debonair	दोस्ताना	Friendly.
202. Debunk	कम महत्वपूर्ण उहरना	To show that some thing is less important.
203. Debut	पहला अवसर	Something performed for the first time.
204. Decency	सम्म तरीका	good and moral behavior.
205. Decimate	हत्या करना	Kill/destroy.
206. Decipher	किसी लिखित दस्तावेज को पढ़ कर अर्थ स्पष्ट करना	Decode.
207. Declivity	ढाल	Downward slope.
208. Deface	बदशावल बनाना	Disfigure.
209. Defacto	वास्तविक	Existing in fact.

VOCABULARIES

210. Defeatist	निराशावादी	One who accepts defeat easily.
211. Deference	सम्मान	Respect.
212. Defiant	अवज्ञाकारी	Disobedient.
213. Deforestation ..	जंगल साफ करना.....	Cutting down of trees in a large area.
214. Defuse	तनाव कम करना	Reduce tension.
215. Deluge	बाढ़	A large amount of rain/water.
216. Demographer ..	जन्म का विवरण रखने वाला	A person who studies changes in number of births.
217. Denounce	निन्दा करना	To criticize strongly.
218. Deplorable	घृणित	Very bad.
219. Deposition	बयान	A testimony.
220. Derail	पटरी से उतरना	To come off the railway track.
221. Desecration	पवित्रता भंग करना.....	Treatment of something sacred with disrespect.
222. Desperate	किसी कार्य या चीज के लिए तीव्र इच्छा .	Feeling involving great willingness.
223. Despicable	घृणित	Unpleasant, causing strong feeling of dislike.
224. Detente	तनाव की कमी	The easing of hostility between countries.
225. Deterrent	हतोंसाहित करने वाला	Discouragement from action.
226. Detimental	नुकसानदायक	Harmful.
227. Diffuse	फैल जाना	Spread over a wide area.
228. Dine	रात्रि खोज करना	Eat dinner.
229. Discord	सामंजस्य की कमी	Lack of agreement.
230. Disembarked ...	उतरना जहाज से	To leave a ship/plane after the journey.
231. Disillusion	निराशा/मोह भंग	Disappointment.
232. Disinterested ..	निष्पक्ष	Impartial.
233. Disparagement ..	उपेक्षा	Insult/abuse.
234. Dispassionate ..	तटस्थ	Not influenced by emotion.
235. Dispense with ..	छुटकारा पाना	Get rid of or manage without.
236. Disseminate	फैलना	Spread widely.
237. Docile	आज्ञाकारी	Obedient.
238. Dolorous	दुखी	Sad.
239. Draconian	अत्यंत कठोर	Extremely severe.
240. Drain	बहा देना, नाला	(V) removing things; (N) pipes and sewage.

241. Drizzle	भूंता बाँटी होना.....	Rain in very small light drops.
242. Drowsy	शपाफ़ी.....	Sleepy.
243. Ebb	घट जाना/ पीछे हटना.....	Recede.
244. Ebullient	उत्साहिता	Very energetic and positive.
245. Eccentric	सनकी	Of strange behaviour.
246. Eclectic	विभिन्न श्रोतों से चुने हुए	Selected from various sources.
247. Ecstasy	अत्यन्त खुशी	A state of extreme happiness.
248. Edict	राज्य घोषणा	Official command, order.
249. Edify	शिक्षित करना खास कर नीतिक या..... आध्यात्मिक धिकार के लिए	To educate morally or spiritually.
250. Eerie	डरावना	Weird/ strange in a frightening way.
251. Efface	मिटा देना	Wipe out,
252. Effect	परिणाम	Result.
253. Effeminate	औरताना गुण	Having womanly traits.
254. Effete	कमजोर	Weak and without power.
255. Effigy	पुतला.....	A model representing someone, Dummy.
256. Effluvium	बदबू	Noxious smell.
257. Effrontery	अत्यन्त असम्मान	Extreme rudeness.
258. Egalitarian	समतावादी	Believing all people are equal.
259. Egregious	कुछुआत/बहुत बुरा	Notorious/extremely bad.
260. Egress	निकासी	Exit.
261. Elated	खुश	Overjoyed.
262. Elicit	स्पष्ट करना.....	Draw out by discussion.
263. Elite	कुलीन	A superior group.
264. Elope	भाग जाना (शादी हेतु)	To leave home secretly to get married.
265. Elucidate	स्पष्ट करना.....	To make clear and easy to understand.
266. Elusive	पकड़ में न आनेवाला/अवर्णनीय	Difficult to find/describe.
267. Emaciated	दुर्बल	Thin and weak.
268. Emanate	निकालना	Emitting/ejecting.
269. Emancipate	मुक्त करना.....	Set free.
270. Embark	शुरू करना	To begin .
271. Embarrass	शर्मिन्दा करना	To cause someone to feel uncomfortable.
272. Embellish	सुशोभित करना	To ornate or decorate.
273. Embolden	साहसी बनाना	To make someone brave.
274. Eminent	प्रतिष्ठित	Known and respected .

- 275. Emulate** बराबरी करना Try to be equal.
- 276. Endangered** संकटग्रस्त To put at risk.
- 277. Endear** प्रिय बनाना To cause someone to be liked.
- 278. Enmity** दुश्मनी Animosity, a feeling of hatred.
- 279. Enormity** विशालता Of very great size or importance.
- 280. Entrall** मोहित करना Attract.
- 281. Enthusiastic** ... उत्साहित Causing excitement.
- 282. Envisage** पर विचार करना To expect as a possibility.
- 283. Eradicate** उन्मूलन करना Remove/destroy completely.
- 284. Errand** दूतकार्य (ऐसा काम जिसमें आना-जाना .. A short journey to deliver/collect
पड़े)
- 285. Errant** पथभ्रष्ट, गुमराह One who does something wrong.
- 286. Escalate** बढ़ाना To increase/to expand step by step.
- 287. Espouse** समर्थन करना Support/adopt a cause or way of life.
- 288. Estrange** त्याग देना No longer friendly.
- 289. Etch** साफ झलकना Make clearly defined.
- 290. Ethical** नैतिक Beliefs which control behaviour.
- 291. Eunuch** हिजड़ा A person who is neither a man nor a woman.
- 292. Exasperate** क्रोध/ रोष पैदा करना To irritate
- 293. Exceptionable** . आपत्तिजनक Objectionable.
- 294. Exceptional** अपवाद Unusual.
- 295. Excruciating** ... अत्यंत तकलीफदेह Extremely painful.
- 296. Executioner** जल्लाद One who carries the job of executing someone.
- 297. Exhaust** खर्च कर देना/थका देना To spend/to make tired.
- 298. Exhilarate** आनन्दित करना Cause to feel very happy.
- 299. Expostulate** विरोध प्रकट करना Disagree strongly.
- 300. Extravaganza** .. फिजूलखर्ची Exciting and expensive event.
- 301. Fad** फैशन में होना A craze.
- 302. Falter** हिचकिचाना Hesitate.
- 303. Fanatic** कट्टर Extremely enthusiastic of one's religion, belief etc.
- 304. Fancier** जो जानवरों का प्रजनन करवाता हों Breeder or dealer of animals.
- 305. Farce** तमाशा के जैसी घटना An absurd event.
- 306. Fatal** घातक Having serious and deadly effect.
- 307. Fate** भाग्य Destiny.
- 308. Fateful** महत्वपूर्ण पर दुर्भाग्यपूर्ण Having important but negative effect.

VOCABULARIES

309. Fatuous	मूर्खतापूर्ण	Foolish.
310. Fauna	किसी क्षेत्र के जानवर	Animals of a particular area.
311. Faux pas	सामाजिक गलती	Word/behaviour that is a social mistake.
312. Feasible	व्यवहारिक	Practical.
313. Feeble	कमज़ोर	Weak and without energy.
314. Feign	नखरे करना	To pretend.
315. Felicity	खुशी	Happiness/ bliss.
316. Felony	जघन्य अपराध	A major criminal act.
317. Feral	जंगली	Wild.
318. Ferry	नदी को पार करना, नाव	To transport people or goods/a boat for transportation.
319. Fetter	बेड़ी अथवा सीमा में रखना	To keep someone within limits.
320. Fiends	पिशाच, पिशाच तुल्य	An evil person.
321. Finesse	कुशलता	Great skill or style.
322. Flabbergast	विस्मित करना	Dumbfounded/astonished.
323. Flare	भड़कना	To start suddenly such as violence, pain, anger or flash of light.
324. Flaunt	दिखावा करना	Display ostentatiously.
325. Flex	भुजा का माँस कठोर कर दिखाना	Tighten a muscle.
326. Flog	चावुक या डण्डे से मारना	To beat with a whip or stick.
327. Flout	उल्लंघन करना	To disobey rule/law.
328. Folly	गलती/वेवकूफी	Foolishness.
329. Foresee	पहले से जान जाना	Predicting something.
330. Fragile	आसानी से टूट जाने वाला	Which can be easily broken.
331. Fraught	अप्रिय चीज़ों से पूर्ण/ ओतप्रोत	Full of unpleasant things.
332. Frown	भोहें चढ़ा कर देखना/ गुस्सा करना	Facial expression showing anger/ annoyance.
333. Furore	गुस्सा	An outbreak of public anger.
334. Gag	मुँह में कुछ रूँस देना	To put cloth etc in the mouth.
335. Gallantry	साहस	Bravery.
336. Garish	बहुत अधिक रंगीन	Overbright in colour/gaudy.
337. Garner	इकट्ठा करना	Store up, gather.
338. Gawk	बेवकूफ की तरह देखना	Stare foolishly.
339. Genesis	शुरूआत	The origin of something.
340. Gigantic	विशाल	Extremely large.
341. Glare	घूरकर देखना	A long angry look.

- 342. Glee** खुशी Great delight.
- 343. Glimmer** मंद रोशनी/आशा की किरण A faint light/a slight sign of something good.
- 344. Glum** दुखी/निराश एवं चुप Disappointed or unhappy and quiet.
- 345. Glutton** घैटू One who eats too much.
- 346. Gourmet** पाक कला का पारखी A person who knows a lot about food and cooking.
- 347. Grandeur** भव्य The quality of being very beautiful and attractive.
- 348. Grapple** संघर्ष करना Wrestle.
- 349. Grievous** तकलीफदेह/ गंभीर Having very serious effect or causing pain.
- 350. Grotesque** विकृत, भद्दा Unpleasant /distorted.
- 351. Grumble** बड़बड़ाना (गुस्से में) To complain about something in an annoyed way.
- 352. Guffaw** ठहाका Noisy laughter.
- 353. Haggard** थका/बिमार सा Looking ill or tired.
- 354. Hailstorm** ओले के साथ तूफान A sudden heavy fall of hail.
- 355. Hallucination** .. भ्रम To see or feel something or someone that does not exist.
- 356. Hapless** बेचारा Unlucky/ helpless.
- 357. Hard hearted** ... पत्थर दिल A person who is not kind.
- 358. Harrowing** परेशान करने वाला Extremely upsetting.
- 359. Harry** परेशान करना To annoy.
- 360. Hasten** जल्दी करना Hurry and do things quickly.
- 361. Hatch** करना (षड्यंत्र) To make (a secret plan).
- 362. Haughty** घमंडी Arrogant.
- 363. Hazardous** खतरनाक Dangerous.
- 364. Head Strong** जिद्दी Stubborn.
- 365. Heckle** सवाल अथवा वक्तव्य से परेशान करना. To interrupt with loud unfriendly questions or statements.
- 366. Heinous** जघन्य Atrocious.
- 367. Heir** उत्तराधिकारी One who legally receives money or title.
- 368. Hermetic** वायुरुद्ध Air-tight.
- 369. Hermitage** मठ Home of a hermit.
- 370. Hideous** भद्दा Extremely ugly/bad.

VOCABULARIES

371. Hobble	लैंडा कर चलना	To walk in a way as if the leg is injured.
372. Homage	श्रद्धांजलि	Deep respect shown.
373. Honorary	अवैतनिक	To work without salary.
374. Honourable	आदरणीय	Respectable.
375. Horde	समूह	A large group of people.
376. Horrendous	भयापह	Horrifying.
377. Hulk	बेंडल	Large and heavy.
378. Hurdle	रुकावट	Obstacle.
379. Hush up	रफा-दफा करना	Trying to prevent the discovery of particular facts.
380. Ideal	आदर्श	Without fault/to be perfect.
381. Idle	बेकार, बिना काम का	Not working.
382. Illegal gratification	नाजायज रूप से प्राप्त संतुष्टि	Unlawful satisfaction.
383. Illegible	अपठनीय	Which cannot be read.
384. Illicit	अवैध	Disapproved by the society.
385. Imbecility	मूर्खता	Stupidity.
386. Imbibe	सोख लेना	To absorb/receive.
387. Immerse	इबाना	To become completely absorbed.
388. Imminent	तुरंत	Likely to happen very soon.
389. Immolate	जला कर बलि देना	Offer as a sacrifice by burning.
390. Immune	प्रतिरक्षित होना	Resistant to.
391. Immure	बन्दी बनाना	Imprison.
392. Immutable	अपरिवर्तनीय	Unchangeable.
393. Impairment	अक्षम	Handicap and disabled.
394. Impalpable	जो आसानी से समझ में न आए	Difficult to feel or understand.
395. Impasse	अंधा मोड़	A deadlock.
396. Imperialism	साम्राज्यवाद	System in which a country rules other countries.
397. Implicate	किसी अपराध में फँसाना	To show that someone is involved in a crime.
398. Impound	जब्त कर लेना	Seize and take legal possession of something.
399. Impromptu	बिना तैयारी के	Done/said without preparation.
400. Impulse	कुछ करने का आवेग	Sudden urge to do something.
401. Impunity	दण्ड से रहित	Freedom from punishment.
402. Incarnate	मानव रूप में	In human form

403. Incessant लगातार	Never stopping.
404. Incision चीरा	An opening made by a sharp tool.
405. Incongruous बेमेल	Unusual/different from others.
406. Inconspicuous	. जो आसानी से दिखाई न दे	Not easily noticed or seen.
407. Incumbent आवश्यक	Necessary as a duty.
408. Incur कुछ अप्रिय अनुभव करना जैसे-घाटा	To experience something usually unpleasant.
409. Indelible स्थायी	Unable to be removed.
410. Indigence गरीबी	Poverty.
411. Inducement प्रलोभन	Act done to persuade someone or something.
412. Indulge आसक्त होना	Allow oneself something enjoyable.
413. Inhibition हिचक	A feeling preventing one from acting naturally.
414. Insane पागल	Mentally ill.
415. Instigate उकसाना	To urge to do some action.
416. Interlocutor वार्तालाप करने वाला	Someone involved in a conversation.
417. Intermittent	... रुक-रुक के	Not happening regularly or continuously.
418. Intertwined गैंथा हुआ	To be twisted together.
419. Intimidate डराना	Frighten.
420. Intruder घुसपैठिया	One who enters a place without permission.
421. Irony विड़म्बना	Meaning opposite but in a sarcastic manner.
422. Irrevocable जो बदला ना जा सके	Impossible to change.
423. Isolate अलग-थलग करना	To place apart or alone.
424. Jack उठाना	To raise something/increase the price.
425. Jamboree जमावड़ा (खुशी मनाने के लिए)	A large gathering to have fun.
426. Jeopardy खतरे में	In danger.
427. Jittery परेशान, घबराया हुआ	Nervous.
428. Jovial हँसमुख	Good natured.
429. Jubilation जश्न	Rejoicing.
430. Juncture जोड़	Joining point.
431. knead गूँथना	To prepare dough.
432. Knotty जटिल	Difficult to solve.

VOCABULARIES

433. Languor	शांतिपूर्ण	Quiet/peaceful.
434. Lanky	लम्बा-पतला	Long and thin (not attractive).
435. Latent	गुप्त	Dormant.
436. Laud	तारीफ करना	To praise.
437. Laurels	सम्मान/ तारीफ	Honour/praise.
438. Lax	लापरवाह	Careless.
439. Lechery	विलासिता	Lustfulness.
440. Leery	शंकित	Suspicious.
441. Legend	पुरानी और प्रसिद्ध कथा	Very old and popular story.
442. Legitimate	जायज	Allowed by law.
443. Lenient	उदारात्मक	Not strict.
444. Lessen	कम करना	To make less strong.
445. Lethargic	आलसी	Lacking energy/lazy.
446. Liability	दायित्व	Legally responsible.
447. Lopsided	तिरछा	With one side lower than the other.
448. Loquacious	बातूनी	Talkative/Garrulous.
449. Lunacy	पागलपन	Insanity.
450. Macho	मर्दाना	Masculine.
451. Magnitude	तीव्रता	The large size or importance of something.
452. Majestic	शक्तिशाली/ राजसी	Powerful/dignified and impressive.
453. Malady	बिमारी	An illness.
454. Malcontent	असंतुष्ट	Person dissatisfied with existing state of affairs.
455. Malign	हानिकारक	Baleful, harmful, Deadly.
456. Mammoth	विशाल	Huge.
457. Maniac	सनकी	A person who behaves in an uncontrolled manner.
458. Manifestation	आभिव्यक्ति	Clear to become noticeable.
459. Marine	समुद्रीय	Related to sea.
460. Massacre	नरसंहार	An act of killing many people.
461. Maze	जाल	A complicated set of paths or passages.
462. Melancholy	दुखी	Sad.
463. Menace	समस्या	A dangerous or troublesome person/situation.
464. Milestone	मील का पत्थर	An important event in the history of someone/something.

- 465. Minuscule** काफी छोटा Very small.
- 466. Mirth** खुशी Laughter, happiness.
- 467. Miscreant** बदमाश One who behaves badly/doesn't obey rules.
- 468. Mitigate** कम करना To make/become less severe.
- 469. Momentum** संवेग, बल The force that keeps motion on.
- 470. Monstrous** विशाल/ भयावह Like a monster (cruel and/or very big).
- 471. Morbidity** विकृत/ अस्वस्थ Unpleasant and strange.
- 472. Moron** द्रेवकूफ A stupid person.
- 473. Mounting** बढ़ता हुआ Gradually increasing.
- 474. Mow** कुचल देना Kill by knocking down with vehicle.
- 475. Mull** विचार करना To think carefully about something.
- 476. Muster** एकत्र करना Gather together/sum up a feeling.
- 477. Mutilate** नाश करना To damage severely.
- 479. Mythology** प्राचीन कथा Myths in general.
- 480. Myth** मिथक Ancient story.
- 481. Nadir** निचला स्तर The worst moment/the lowest point.
- 482. Nape** गर्दन The back of the neck.
- 483. Nemesis** प्रतिदंडी जिसे हराना मुश्किल हो Rival that is difficult to defeat.
- 484. Neologism** किसी शब्द का नया अर्थ New meaning.
- 485. Neophyte** नौसिखिया Beginner, novice.
- 486. Nexus** साठ-गाठ Connection.
- 487. Nightmare** दुख्यज्ञ Frightening dream/an unpleasant experience.
- 488. Nocturnal** निशाचर Occurring/ active at night.
- 489. Nomad** अस्थायी आवास वाले जनजाति के सदस्य Member of a tribe who travels from place to place.
- 490. Nonchalant** उदारीन/भाव हीन Careless/ lacking interest.
- 491. Oblivion** विस्मृति The state of being unaware/ forgotten.
- 492. Obnoxious** घृणित Unpleasant.
- 493. Obscene** अश्लील Rude or shocking.
- 494. Obsessive** तीव्र इच्छा रखना Related to thinking about something constantly.
- 495. Obsolete** पुराना Not in use any more.
- 496. Obstinate** हठी Stubborn.

497. Occlude	बंद करना.....	close up or block.
498. Occult	गुप्त (जादू-टोना से सम्बन्धित).....	Secret, mysterious, relating to magical power.
499. Ogre	शैतान	A frightening character of children's stories who eats children.
500. Ombudsman	लोकपाल	Officer who deals with complaints.
501. Ominous	कुछ बुरा होने का आभास	Suggesting that something unpleasant is likely to happen.
502. Opportunist	अवसरवादी	One who grabs every opportunity.
503. Optimistic	आशावादी	One who is hopeful.
504. Orator	वक्ता	A skilled speaker.
505. Ordain	आदेश देना	Order officially.
506. Ostensible	दिखावटी	Showy.
507. Oust	निकाल देना	Force out from the position of power.
508. Outrage	बेइज्जती करना	Insult/offence.
509. Overestimate ..	ज्यादा आकलन करना.....	To think that one is greater than he really is.
510. Palate	तालु/ स्वाद परखने की शक्ति	The top part of the inside of your mouth/Appreciation for food or drink.
511. Palatial	महलनुमा	A huge and splendid house.
512. Paltry	मूल्यहीन	Worthless.
513. Pan	आलोचना करना	Criticise harshly.
514. Panacea	रामबाण	A remedy for all diseases.
515. Panache	निपुणता	Confidence/elegance/style.
516. Pandemic	व्यापक	Widespread.
517. Pandemonium ..	शोर शराबा	Great confusion/noisy disorder.
518. Panic	डर	Sudden uncontrolled fear.
519. Paramount	सर्वोच्च	Supreme, zenith.
520. Parched	सूखा	Dried out due to heat.
521. Pariah	सामाजिक ब्रह्मिकार	Social outcast.
522. Parley	सम्मेलन	Conference.
523. Parochial	संकीर्ण नजरिया वाला	Narrow in outlook.
524. Patronage	संरक्षण	The support given to an organization.
525. Pawn	प्यादा	People of little importance.
526. Peck	हल्का चुम्बन	Kiss lightly.
527. Peddler	रेहड़ी वाला.....	One who travels door to door to sell something.

528. Pellet	छोटा गोला	A small ball of something.
529. Pelt	फेंकना	Throw.
530. Perfidious	विश्वासघाती	Unable to be trusted.
531. Persevere	मेहनत करना (मुश्किलों के बावजूद)	Continue inspite of difficulty.
532. Persist	जारी रहना	Continue and last.
533. Personify	मानवीकरण करना	Represent in human form.
534. Perspire	पसीना बहाना	To sweat.
535. Perturb	तंग करना	Disturb.
536. Perverse	विकृत/भ्रष्ट	Contrary to what is accepted or expected.
537. Pessimist	निराशावादी	One who is not hopeful by nature.
538. Pious	धार्मिक	Religious.
539. Pivotal	मुख्य	Central and important.
540. Plaintiff	याचिका	A legal complaint.
541. Plight	परेशानी/दुख	Unpleasant condition.
542. Polygamy	बहु-विवाह	To have more than one wife/husband.
543. Pomp	धूमधाम	Splendid and colourful ceremony.
544. Populace	आम जनता	Ordinary people.
545. Posthumously	मृत्यु-उपरान्त	Awarded/published after death.
546. Pragmatic	व्यवहारिक	Practical.
547. Precedent	पूर्वगामी	An action already taken place/decision already taken.
548. Precincts	जहाँ कार इत्यादि ले जाना वर्जित है/ अहाता	Part of a city where vehicles are not allowed/limits.
549. Predicament	अप्रिय हालात जिससे निकालना मुश्किल है	An unpleasant situation, which is difficult to get out of.
550. Prejudice	पूर्वाग्रह	Unfair opinion.
551. Preposterous	बेवकूफी भरा	Very foolish/ridiculous.
552. Prey	शिकार	Victim/an animal hunted by another for food.
553. Proclivity	झुकाव	Tendency or inclination.
554. Proliferation	प्रचुर मात्रा में उत्पन्न होना	Increasing greatly and suddenly in number.
555. Promising	आशाजनक	Showing signs of being successful in future.

VOCABULARIES

556. Propensity	बुरे बर्ताव के तरफ झुकाव.....	Tendency towards behaving badly.
557. Provocative	उकसाने वाला	Causing an angry reaction/ inciting.
558. Prudence	समझदारी	Wisdom.
559. Pugnacious	युद्धप्रिय	Quarrelsome.
560. Punitive	दण्डात्मक	Intended as a punishment.
561. Purge	छुटकारा पाना/ शुद्ध करना	To get rid of people you don't like/to make free of harmful things.
562. Pyre	चिता	A large pile of wood on which a dead body is burnt.
563. Quantum	किसी चीज की इकाई	Unit of something.
564. Quell	रोकना	To stop something especially by using force.
565. Quench	बुझाना (प्यास)	satisfy (thirst).
566. Query	शंका/सवाल	A question/doubt.
567. Quiescent	सुप्त	Dormant, at rest.
568. Quietude	शांति	Tranquility.
569. Quotidian	साधारण	Common/ordinary.
570. Racial	नस्लबाद से संबंधित	Connected with a particular race or country.
571. Rancor	नफरत	Bitterness, hatred.
572. Rankle	परेशान करना	Irritate.
573. Rapport	तालमेल	Harmony.
574. Ratify	अंगीकार करना	Confirm formally by signing it or voting for it.
575. Ravenous	बहुत भुखा	Extremely hungry.
576. Raze	नष्ट करना	To destroy.
577. Rebellious	विरोधी	One who opposes the system.
578. Rebuff	सहायता स्वीकार करने से मना करना	To refuse a helpful suggestion.
579. Rebuke	बुरी तरह से डॉटना	Scold harshly.
580. Recalcitrant	उद्दण्ड	One who is unwilling to obey orders.
581. Reckless	असावधान	Without caring for the result of an action.
582. Recluse	अकेला	One who lives alone.
583. Recuperate	ठीक होना बिमारी के बाद	To recover from illness.
584. Redundant	गैर जरूरी	Unnecessary.

585. Refute	खण्डन करना	To say/prove that a person opinion is wrong.
586. Regime	शासन	Rule of.
587. Reign	शासन	The monarch's period of rule.
588. Rein	लगाम/ लगाम लगाना	Piece of leather which helps you to control the headgear of a horse/to bridle/to restrain.
589. Relegate	अवनति करना	Place in a lower position.
590. Reluctant	अनिच्छुक	Unwilling.
591. Remorse	अफसोस	Feeling of guilt or regret.
592. Renewable	नवीनीकरणीय	Which can be used again and again.
593. Repent	पछताना	To be sorry for something.
594. Repercussions .	परिणाम	Consequence.
595. Replica	हु-ब-हु	An exact copy of an object.
596. Reprehensible .	निम्ननीय	Deserving condemnation.
597. Reprieve	बचाव	An escape from a bad situation.
598. Repugnant	प्रतिकूल/ निराशाजनक	Unpleasant behavior or belief.
599. Resentment	नापसंद	Feeling of dislike.
600. Respite	बचाव	Relief from something.
601. Resurgence	किसी विचारधारा का फिर से सर उठाना.	Revival of ideas which had been forgotten for some time.
602. Resurrect	फिर से जीवित करना	To bring someone back to life.
603. Retrieve	फिर से प्राप्त करना	To find and bring back something.
604. Reverence	सम्मान	Respect.
605. Rhetoric	प्रभावशाली भाषण (परन्तु जरूरी नहीं कि इमानदार भी)	Effective speech but not essentially sincere.
606. Rumour	अफवाह	Piece of news that may or may not be true.
607. Ruthless	क्रूर	Cruel.
608. Sacrament	धार्मिक कार्य	An important religious ceremony.
609. Sadist	परपीड़क	One who obtains pleasure by hurting others.
610. Salubrious	स्वास्थ्य के लिए लाभदायक	Good for health.
611. Salvation	मोक्ष	The act of saving someone from danger, loss, sin etc.
612. Sanctity	पवित्रता	The quality of being holy.
613. Sanguine	आशावित	Hopeful.

PECULIARIES

614. Sarcasm	व्यंग्यकारी	Scornful remarks.
615. Scant	अपर्याप्त/ कम	Barely enough.
616. Scrap	टुकड़ा/बकल्जक	Small pieces /Argument.
617. Scum	गंदगी (तरल पदार्थ के सतह पर)	Dirt (on the surface of liquid).
618. Seasoned	परिपक्व	Having a lot of experience.
619. Sensuous	इन्द्रिय सम्बन्धी (शारीरिक रूप से आकर्षक)	Relating to physical senses./ Physically attractive.
620. Severity	तीव्रता	Extremity.
621. Shambles	बुरी हालत में	A state of confusion/untidiness.
622. Shirk	जो चुराना	To avoid work/ duty.
623. Shrewd	धूर्त	Based on clear understanding and judgement.
624. Shroud	छिपाना	Hide.
625. Shrug	कन्धे उचका कर अनभिज्ञता/उदासीनता जाहिर करना	To raise and then lower the shoulder to show lack of knowledge/interest.
626. Site	भवन-निर्माण आदि का स्थल	Place where something is built.
627. Sizzle	काफी गर्म होना	(of food) make a hissing sound when being fried.
628. Skeptical	सन्देही	Doubtful.
629. Slay	हत्या करना	Murder.
630. Solace	दिलासा	Comfort in time of distress.
631. Solidarity	समर्थन	Support.
632. Solitary	अकेला	The only person/thing in given place.
633. Spectre	संदेह	The idea of something unpleasant that may happen in future.
634. Spinster	कुँवारी महिला	A woman who is not married.
635. Sporadic	अनियमित रूप से	Occurring at irregular intervals.
636. Spouse	जीवन साथी	Life partner.
637. Spurious	संदेहास्पद	False and not what it appears to be.
638. Squirm	छटपटाना	To move from side to side in an awkward way because of nervousness, pain etc.
639. Stack	एक के ऊपर एक रखना	Pile on one another.
640. Stagger	लड़खड़ाना	To walk showing imbalance.
641. Strangle	गला घोंट कर मारना	To kill by pressing the throat.
642. Stringent	कठोर	Strict and demanding.

- 643. Stroke** धृपकी/गाढ़ी की भूंत की घंटी An act of hitting/a sound of a striking clock.
- 644. Subdue** जीवता करना To reduce the force of something.
- 645. Substantiate** वकाल्य को प्रमाणित करना To support a claim.
- 646. Subterfuge** कुछ छारिल करने का गलत तरीका A trick or a dishonest way of achieving something.
- 647. Subtle** धूम/वारीक लंकिन महत्वपूर्ण Small but important.
- 648. Succour** समय पर राहायता Help given to someone in need.
- 649. Sully** दाग लगाना Stain/to spoil someone's perfect reputation.
- 650. Sultry** उमस भरा Warm and moist.
- 651. Sumptuous** भरपूर Luxurious/showing wealth.
- 652. Suo-moto** खुद ही On its own.
- 653. Surge** तीव्रता से बढ़ना A sudden or great increase.
- 654. Swathe** कपड़े/जमीन का चौड़ा टुकड़ा Broad strip of cloth/land.
- 655. Sycophancy** चापलूसी Attempt to win favour by flattery.
- 656. Symposium** विचार-गोष्ठी Official meeting.
- 657. Synchronize** एक ही समय पर होना To (cause to) happen at the same time.
- 658. Tangible** जिसे छू कर महसूस किया जा सके Real, which can be touched or experienced.
- 659. Tawdry** सस्ता एवं भड़कीला Cheap and gaudy.
- 660. Temerity** हिम्मत Boldness.
- 661. Temperate** संयम रखने वाला Self controlled.
- 662. Tempestuous** प्रबल भावना से ओत-प्रोत Full of strong emotion.
- 663. Tendentious** किसी मत का पक्षधर होना Supporting a particular opinion.
- 664. Tenements** निवास स्थान A large building divided into apartments.
- 665. Terse** संक्षिप्त Concise/using few words.
- 666. Thumping** महत्वपूर्ण Extremely great or important.
- 667. Thunder** गर्जन Sudden large noise from the sky.
- 668. Thunderbolt** विजली का कड़कना एवं बादल का गर्जन A flash of lightening and sound of thunder.
- 669. Timid** डरपोक Lacking courage/ cowardly.
- 670. Tiptoe** पैरों के ऊँगलियों पर चलना To walk on toes with heels not touching the ground.
- 671. Tormentor** शोषक One who causes sufferings.

VOCABULARIES

672. Tout	दलाल	The act/the person encouraging sale of anything.
673. Toxic	जहरीला	Poisonous.
674. Traffic	गैर कानूनी चीज़ का व्यापार	Illegal trade.
675. Trail	रास्ता / धीरे चलना	Path/ to follow the path of someone/ to move slowly.
676. Traitor	गदार	A person who is not loyal.
677. Trauma	मानसिक आघात	Severe emotional shock.
678. Treason	गदारी	The act of being not loyal.
679. Triumph	बड़ी जीत	A great success.
680. Twitch	फड़कना	Any part of body making sudden, small movement.
681. Unanimous	सर्वसम्मत	To agree/support together.
682. Uncanny	विचित्र	Strange/impossible to explain.
683. Under-privileged	गरीब	Poor.
684. Underestimate	कम करके आँकना	To estimate that one is inferior to what he really is.
685. Uninterested	दिलचस्पी ना होना	Not interested.
686. Unison	एक साथ	Two/more things happening at same time.
687. Unruly	अनियंत्रित	Not easy to control.
688. Upbeat	आशावादी	Cheerful, optimistic.
689. Uproar	शोर-शराबा	A loud noise or disturbance.
690. Uproot	जड़ से उखाड़ देना	To remove from their home place/ root.
691. Vague	अस्पष्ट	Not clearly expressed.
692. Valediction	विदाई भाषण	Speech in which one says goodbye.
693. Validate	प्रमाणित करना	Confirm, Ratify.
694. Vandalism	संपत्ति नष्ट करने की क्रिया	Crime of damaging property.
695. Veil	नकाब/घूँघट	Thing that hides or disguises.
696. Vengeance	बदले की भावना	Revenge.
697. Vengeful	बदले की भावना वाला	To have strong desire to punish someone who has hurt one or one's dear ones.
698. Venom	जहर	Poison.
699. Verbose	बातों से भरा	Using more words than necessary.
700. Verily	सत्यतः/वस्तुतः	In a completely truthful way.

701. Vestige	अवशेष	A still existing small part of something.
702. Veteran	अनुभवी	A person who has a lot of experience.
703. Vicarious	प्रतिनिधिक/सीधे तौर पर नहीं	Experienced in one's imagination rather than directly.
704. Vicious	बुरा/दुष्ट	Violent and aggressive.
705. Victimize	सताना	To treat someone in a cruel and unfair manner.
706. Vigorous	ऊर्जावान	Energetic.
707. Virtuous	नैतिक गुण वाला	Having good moral qualities.
708. Volatile	क्षणिक	Likely to change suddenly.
709. Voluminous	भारी- भरकम	Loose and full.
710. Vow	कसम	Solemn promise.
711. Vulnerable	जिसे आसानी से चोट पहुँचाया जा सकता है।	Prone to physical/ emotional hurt.
712. Vie	प्रतिस्पर्धा करना	To compete with other people to obtain something.
713. Wan	कमज़ोर	Weak/ pale/tired-looking.
714. Wanderlust	घूमने की इच्छा रखना	Strong desire to travel.
715. Wholeheartedly	पूरे दिल से	With complete interest and enthusiasm.
716. Witty	वाकपटु	Using words in a clever manner.
717. Wizard	जादुगर	Magician.
718. Woes	दुख	Sorrow/distress.
719. Wretch	अभागा	An unhappy person.
720. Yawn	उबासी लेना	To breathe taking in a lot of air with mouth open.
721. Yearn	लालसा करना	Crave.
722. Zealous	उत्साहित	Enthusiastic, causing excitement.

SYNONYMS

Directions: in questions no. 1 to 274, out of the four alternatives, choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the given word and mark it in the answer sheet.

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Irrevocable | 8. Docile | 15. Restrict |
| (a) Change | (a) Submissive | (a) Curtail |
| (b) Done | (b) Stubborn | (b) Prohibit |
| (c) Unalterable | (c) Strong | (c) Retain |
| (d) Reversible | (d) Changeable | (d) Retail |
| 2. Adorn | 9. Considerate | 16. Anticipate |
| (a) Trust | (a) Agreeable | (a) Antagonise |
| (b) Writer | (b) Kind | (b) Expect |
| (c) Suspect | (c) Like-minded | (c) Accept |
| (d) Beautify | (d) Thoughtful | (d) Hope |
| 3. Repose | 10. Irresolute | 17. Tremendous |
| (a) Place | (a) Undecided | (a) Awesome |
| (b) Keep | (b) Angry | (b) Remarkable |
| (c) Rest | (c) Ignorant | (c) Considerable |
| (d) Replace | (d) Firm | (d) Excessive |
| 4. Commotion | 11. Frugal | 18. Meticulous |
| (a) Cheer | (a) Economical | (a) Correct |
| (b) Imbalance | (b) Miserly | (b) Clean |
| (c) Disturbance | (c) Splendid | (c) Methodical |
| (d) Movement | (d) Hungry | (d) Painstaking |
| 5. Nurture | 12. Motive | 19. Abundant |
| (a) To encourage | (a) Reason | (a) Sufficient |
| (b) To grow | (b) Occasion | (b) Plentiful |
| (c) To see | (c) Intention | (c) Significant |
| (d) To maintain | (d) Preparation | (d) Vibrant |
| 6. Deny | 13. Pity | 20. Acquaint |
| (a) Regain | (a) Offence | (a) Arouse |
| (b) Refuse | (b) Mercy | (b) Introduce |
| (c) Repair | (c) Kindness | (c) Appoint |
| (d) Reduce | (d) Joy | (d) Acquire |
| 7. Abuse | 14. Quash | 21. Change |
| (a) Use | (a) Question | (a) Alter |
| (b) Praise | (b) Pledge | (b) Renew |
| (c) Scorn | (c) Reject | (c) Review |
| (d) Raise | (d) Slash | (d) Repeat |

SYNONYMS (PRACTICE SET)

22. Surreptitiously	(a) Calmly (b) Secretly (c) Suggestively (d) Quiteley	32. Poach	(a) Catch (b) Hunt (c) Preach (d) Plunder	42. Prospective	(a) Preceded (b) Prosperous (c) Perplexed (d) Possible
23. Forebode	(a) Alarm (b) Foretell (c) Failure (d) Forefront	33. Repartee	(a) Refuse (b) Celebrate (c) Quick witty reply (d) Question	43. Lousy	(a) Unbearable (b) Awful (c) Loose (d) Stinking
24. Genuine	(a) Good (b) Real (c) Attractive (d) Lovable	34. Exhort	(a) Recommend (b) Coax (c) Urge (d) Push	44. Accentuated	(a) Accent (b) Devalued (c) Mitigated (d) Sharpened
25. Adverse	(a) Negative (b) Facilitating (c) Decorative (d) Derogative	35. Lurid	(a) Happy (b) Abundant (c) Bright (d) Shocking	45. Predominantly	(a) Emphatically (b) Forcefully (c) Mostly (d) Profoundly
26. Elastic	(a) Rubbery (b) Flexible (c) Expensive (d) Exciting	36. Familiar	(a) Well-known (b) Familial (c) Relative (d) Common	46. Paucity	(a) Sincerity (b) Shortfall (c) Publicity (d) Downfall
27. Vacillate	(a) Waver (b) Never (c) Quiver (d) Queer	37. Dessert	(a) Wasteland (b) Abandon (c) Sweet-dish (d) Broth	47. Avert	(a) Hide (b) Obey (c) Excuse (d) Avoid
28. Impeccable	(a) Perfect (b) Fair (c) Faultless (d) Criminal	38. Affiliate	(a) Control (b) Associate (c) Copy (d) Discriminate	48. Pensive	(a) Careless (b) Thoughtful (c) Penitent (d) Unattached
29. Impediment	(a) Clear (b) Ailment (c) Incapable (d) Obstruction	39. Explicit	(a) Clear (b) Obvious (c) Cautious (d) Exorbitant	49. Cordial	(a) Smooth (b) Friendly (c) Sophisticated (d) Reserved
30. Advance	(a) Reduce (b) Halt (c) Progress (d) Extend	40. Diligent	(a) Intelligent (b) Energetic (c) Modest (d) Industrious	50. Provisional	(a) Casual (b) Lucky (c) Visible (d) Temporary
31. Prognosis	(a) Diagnosis (b) Forecast (c) Preface (d) Identity	41. Infuriate	(a) Burn (b) Disgrace (c) Threaten (d) Enrage	51. Horrendous	(a) Very huge (b) Greatly unpleasant (c) Mildly sincere (d) Most pleasant

52. **Authentic**
 (a) Admirable
 (b) Genuine
 (c) Adjustable
 (d) None of the above
53. **Rectify**
 (a) Correct
 (b) Alter
 (c) Erase
 (d) Continue
54. **Miraculous**
 (a) Mysterious
 (b) Sudden
 (c) Amazing
 (d) Unexpected
55. **Warranty**
 (a) Threat
 (b) Guarantee
 (c) Order for arrest
 (d) Issue
56. **Knave**
 (a) Emperor
 (b) Enchanter
 (c) Soldier
 (d) Scoundrel
57. **Prodigal**
 (a) Huge
 (b) Prodigious
 (c) Enormous
 (d) Wasteful
58. **Impost**
 (a) Fertilizer
 (b) Dispatch
 (c) Tax
 (d) Postage
59. **Coarse**
 (a) Academic
 (b) Grain
 (c) Rough
 (d) Training
60. **Forego**
 (a) Renounce
 (b) Disown
 (c) Leave
 (d) Accumulate
61. **Recipients**
 (a) Creators
 (b) Donors
 (c) Receivers
 (d) Instigators

62. **Frontier**
 (a) Edge
 (b) Landmark
 (c) Boundary
 (d) Corner
63. **Rout**
 (a) Death
 (b) Defeat
 (c) Loss
 (d) Crash
64. **Irreproachable**
 (a) Remarkable
 (b) Extraordinary
 (c) Faultless
 (d) Immense
65. **Felicity**
 (a) Prosperity
 (b) Honesty
 (c) Bliss
 (d) Sorrow
66. **Judicious**
 (a) Biased
 (b) Sensible
 (c) Exact
 (d) Honest
67. **Transpired**
 (a) Was communicated
 (b) Was discussed
 (c) Happened
 (d) Conspired
68. **Obstinate**
 (a) Foolish
 (b) Unyielding
 (c) Unreasonable
 (d) Mischievous
69. **Sundry**
 (a) Countless
 (b) Various
 (c) Certain
 (d) Several
70. **Menial**
 (a) Lowly
 (b) Tough
 (c) Dangerous
 (d) Low-paid
71. **Impetus**
 (a) Financial support
 (b) Accelerated growth
 (c) Retarded growth
 (d) Driving force
72. **Emulate**
 (a) Praise
 (b) Find out
 (c) Follow
 (d) Assess
73. **Boast**
 (a) Cry
 (b) Abuse
 (c) Hate
 (d) Brag
74. **Mass murder**
 (a) Patricide
 (b) Fratricide
 (c) Regicide
 (d) Genocide
75. **Executioner**
 (a) Executive engineer
 (b) Explorer
 (c) Experimenter
 (d) One who inflicts capital punishment
76. **Maiden speech**
 (a) Farewell speech
 (b) Short speech
 (c) First speech
 (d) Speech about women
77. **Interfere**
 (a) Meddle
 (b) Help
 (c) Object
 (d) Copy
78. **Tedious**
 (a) Tiresome
 (b) Dull
 (c) Interesting
 (d) Exciting
79. **Magnificent**
 (a) Magnanimous
 (b) Modest
 (c) Generous
 (d) Splendid
80. **Spirited**
 (a) Heated
 (b) Drunk
 (c) Enthusiastic
 (d) Possessed

81.	Gloomy (a) Misty (b) Morose (c) Murky (d) Shadowy	91.	Fortitude (a) Composure (b) Confidence (c) Courage (d) Produce	101.	Homage (a) Humility (b) Tribute (c) Obedience (d) Allegiance
82.	Grumble (a) To scold (b) To complain (c) To sheer (d) To fight	92.	Sanitise (a) Pleasant (b) Disinfect (c) Pious (d) Crazy	102.	Clue (a) Hint (b) Inkling (c) Intimation (d) Signal
83.	Crude (a) Unrefined (b) Cruel (c) Rude (d) Savage	93.	Favourite (a) Preferred (b) Focused (c) Pleasurable (d) Disliked	103.	Amazement (a) Shock (b) Wander (c) Surprise (d) Suspicion
84.	Hostile (a) Poor (b) Antagonistic (c) Delinquent (d) Reticent	94.	Novice (a) Beginner (b) Virtuous (c) Trainer (d) Learner	104.	Consistency (a) Constancy (b) Competence (c) Permanence (d) Uniformity
85.	Friendly (a) Gentle (b) Amiable (c) Considerate (d) Industrious	95.	Adversary (a) Poverty (b) Contestant (c) Opponent (d) Intruder	105.	Electrifying (a) Attractive (b) Fearsome (c) Exciting (d) Disturbing
86.	Veil (a) Seclude (b) Moan (c) Conceal (d) Repent	96.	Dishonour (a) Infamy (b) Glory (c) Uncouth (d) Wicked	106.	Refrain (a) Dissuade (b) Desist (c) Prevent (d) Curb
87.	Recurrent (a) Flowing backward (b) Healing quickly (c) Happening repeatedly (d) Timely	97.	Erudite (a) Scholarly (b) Friendly (c) Miserly (d) Lovely	107.	Merited (a) Deserved (b) Encouraged (c) Prompted (d) Supported
88.	Peculiar (a) Same (b) Strange (c) Surprising (d) Tiring	98.	Idea (a) Comprehension (b) Notion (c) Emotion (d) Gist	108.	Candid (a) Overconfident (b) Frank (c) Arrogant (d) Careless
89.	Prosper (a) Cherish (b) Promote (c) Thrive (d) Rich	99.	Takes after (a) Follows (b) Comes after (c) Resembles (d) Imitates	109.	Zealous (a) Ardent (b) Jealous (c) Furious (d) Impatient
90.	Eminent (a) Confident (b) Authentic (c) Ingenious (d) Illustrious	100.	Ill-favoured (a) Unlucky (b) Weak in health (c) Short-tempered (d) Ugly	110.	Industrious (a) Indolent (b) Industrial (c) Hard-working (d) Economic

111. Feasible

- (a) Practical
- (b) Rejoice
- (c) Accentuate
- (d) Accurate

112. Atrocity

- (a) Envy
- (b) Violence
- (c) Jealousy
- (d) Absurdity

113. Fortify

- (a) Create
- (b) Generate
- (c) Prohibit
- (d) Strengthen

114. Pacify

- (a) Calm down
- (b) Satisfy
- (c) Rouse
- (d) Rejoice

115. Barren

- (a) Good
- (b) Wholesome
- (c) Unproductive
- (d) Profitable

116. Infamy

- (a) Notoriety
- (b) Glory
- (c) Integrity
- (d) Familiarity

117. Intrepid

- (a) Hesitant
- (b) Fearless
- (c) Extrovert
- (d) Familiarity

118. Perspicuous

- (a) Relevant
- (b) Precise
- (c) Brief
- (d) Clear

119. Sufficient

- (a) Full
- (b) Complete
- (c) Enough
- (d) Less

120. Benevolent

- (a) Beneficial
- (b) Kind
- (c) Helpful
- (d) Supportive

121. Ancestors

- (a) Extinct tribes
- (b) Relatives
- (c) Forefathers
- (d) Old people

122. Embrace

- (a) Impress
- (b) Except
- (c) Embarrass
- (d) Accept

123. Meek

- (a) Light-hearted
- (b) Serious
- (c) Submissive
- (d) Benign

124. Cajole

- (a) Insist
- (b) Persuade
- (c) Direct
- (d) Recommend

125. Fragrance

- (a) Taste
- (b) Aroma
- (c) Sight
- (d) Touch

126. Fictitious

- (a) False
- (b) Frail
- (c) Foul
- (d) Flattering

127. Obscene

- (a) Dirty
- (b) Unhealthy
- (c) Indecent
- (d) Unwanted

128. Imitate

- (a) Follow
- (b) Copy
- (c) Think
- (d) Allude

129. Enigmatic

- (a) Magnetic
- (b) Automatic
- (c) Speeding
- (d) Puzzling

130. Despondent

- (a) Deserted
- (b) Dejected
- (c) Rejected
- (d) Repentant

131. Aversion

- (a) Aggression
- (b) Assertion
- (c) Dislike
- (d) Impudence

132. Desperation

- (a) Depression
- (b) Jubilation
- (c) Fascination
- (d) Hopelessness

133. Jubilant

- (a) Brilliant
- (b) Proud
- (c) Ecstatic
- (d) Gloomy

134. Liberty

- (a) Freedom
- (b) Equality
- (c) Charity
- (d) Democracy

135. Blister

- (a) Chatter
- (b) Travel
- (c) Attack
- (d) Wound

136. Trauma

- (a) Accident
- (b) Art form
- (c) Type of medicine
- (d) Emotional shock

137. Fabulous

- (a) Beautiful
- (b) Marvellous
- (c) Interesting
- (d) Charming

138. Laudable

- (a) Sincere
- (b) Praiseworthy
- (c) Benevolent
- (d) Welcome

139. Surpass

- (a) Outdo
- (b) Pass over
- (c) Overdo
- (d) Pass by

140. Defer

- (a) Indifferent
- (b) Deft
- (c) Differ
- (d) Postpone

SYNONYMS (PRACTICE SET)

141. Cease	151. Crass	161. Ostracise
(a) Begin (b) Stop (c) Create (d) Dull	(a) Casual (b) Formal (c) Unrefined (d) Sterile	(a) Censure (b) Sentence (c) Banish (d) Berate
142. Pious	152. Accomplish	162. Appalled
(a) Religious (b) Sympathetic (c) Afraid (d) Faithful	(a) Amass (b) Acquire (c) Adhere (d) Achieve	(a) Shocked (b) Saddened (c) Scared (d) Alarmed
143. Abandon	153. Cursory	163. Imbecility
(a) Forsake (b) Keep (c) Cherish (d) Enlarge	(a) Little (b) Quick (c) Eager (d) Tender	(a) Stupidity (b) Rusticity (c) Verbosity (d) Incoherence
144. Intimidate	154. Envisaged	164. Collusion
(a) Calm down (b) View (c) Leave (d) Frighten	(a) Ensured (b) Idealized (c) Contemplated (d) Imagined	(a) Conflict (b) Secret agreement (c) Consultation (d) Misunderstanding
145. Regard	155. Clandestine	165. Hesitant
(a) Respect (b) Liking (c) Love (d) Suspicion	(a) Awkward (b) Inconsistent (c) Secret (d) Ugly	(a) Antagonistic (b) Grumbling (c) Contradict (d) Undecided
146. Swap	156. Resentment	166. Deceptive
(a) Snap (b) Exchange (c) Break (d) Exclude	(a) Annoyance (b) Dispatch (c) Disagreement (d) Dismissal	(a) Disagreeable (b) Misleading (c) Mistake (d) Debatable
147. Prudent	157. Obdurate	167. Palpable
(a) Wise (b) Cunning (c) Frank (d) Severe	(a) Angry (b) Calm (c) Obsessed (d) Adamant	(a) Obvious (b) Immense (c) Sufficient (d) Hidden
148. Genius	158. Obscure	168. Laid-back
(a) A generous person (b) A foreigner (c) An intellectual (d) An athlete	(a) Unknown (b) Neglectful (c) Occasional (d) Old	(a) Lie in wait (b) Sorry state (c) Lame (d) Easy-going
149. Culmination	159. Reluctant	169. Sauntering
(a) Conclusion (b) Climax (c) Abyss (d) Cultivation	(a) Unwilling (b) Forego (c) Redundant (d) Amendable	(a) Jogging (b) Brisk walking (c) Travelling (d) Strolling
150. Sporadic	160. Revelation	170. Pompous
(a) Surviving (b) Sweeping (c) Irregular (d) Persistent	(a) Anticipation (b) Imagination (c) Revel in (d) Disclosure	(a) Grandiose (b) Polished (c) Modest (d) Skilled

171. Poignant

- (a) Showy
- (b) Sad
- (c) Silly
- (d) Snobbish

172. Querulous

- (a) Critical
- (b) Curious
- (c) Quarrelsome
- (d) Ambiguous

173. Audacious

- (a) Brilliant
- (b) Powerful
- (c) Bold
- (d) Frightening

174. Perilous

- (a) Hazardous
 - (b) Rigorous
 - (c) Resilient
 - (d) Requisite
- 175. Reverie**
- (a) Determination
 - (b) Day-dream
 - (c) Reality
 - (d) Realization

176. Genial

- (a) Cordial
- (b) Unselfish
- (c) Careful
- (d) Specific

177. Accrue

- (a) Accumulate
- (b) Accommodate
- (c) Grow
- (d) Suffice

178. Loquacious

- (a) Talkative
- (b) Slow
- (c) Content
- (d) Unclear

179. Vindictive

- (a) Imaginative
- (b) Accusative
- (c) Spiteful
- (d) Aggressive

180. Inclement

- (a) Selfish
- (b) Active
- (c) Unfavourable
- (d) Inactive

181. Hostility

- (a) Illness
- (b) Enmity
- (c) Disturbance
- (d) Derogatory

182. Indifferent

- (a) Dissimilar
- (b) Various
- (c) Interference
- (d) Unconcerned

183. Condemn

- (a) Censure
- (b) Despair
- (c) Kill
- (d) Hit

184. Defect

- (a) Loss
- (b) Harm
- (c) Shortcoming
- (d) Delicate

185. Jealous

- (a) Envious
- (b) Unhappy
- (c) Regretful
- (d) Remorse

186. Weary

- (a) Careless
- (b) Shivering
- (c) Troubled
- (d) Weak

187. Plausible

- (a) Pleasing taste
- (b) Seemingly true
- (c) Manageable
- (d) Cannot be proved

188. Creditable

- (a) Able to lend money
- (b) Bringing praise
- (c) Able to repay a loan
- (d) Fit to be believed

189. Salient

- (a) Most important
- (b) Salt-like taste
- (c) Pleasing
- (d) Satisfactory

190. Fragile

- (a) Soft
- (b) Smooth
- (c) Flexible
- (d) Easily broken

191. Reticent

- (a) Sensitive
- (b) Secretive
- (c) Not feeling well
- (d) Not saying much

192. Reciprocal

- (a) Formal
- (b) Favorable
- (c) Mutual
- (d) Sustainable

193. Apprise

- (a) Inform
- (b) Estimate
- (c) Admire
- (d) Require

194. Consensus

- (a) Awareness
- (b) General agreement
- (c) Careful observation
- (d) Praiseworthy

195. Unceremonious

- (a) Impolite
- (b) Informal
- (c) Incomplete
- (d) Irregular

196. Treason

- (a) Absurdity
- (b) Disloyalty
- (c) Dishonesty
- (d) Deception

197. Amiable

- (a) Popular
- (b) Generous
- (c) Friendly
- (d) Reasonable

198. Lucid

- (a) Fluent
- (b) Clear
- (c) Musical
- (d) Familiar

199. Ravaged

- (a) Destroyed
- (b) Spoiled
- (c) Conquered
- (d) Robbed

200. Perplexed

- (a) Annoyed
- (b) Disappointed
- (c) Puzzled
- (d) Ruined

201. Anonymity

- (a) Reputation
- (b) Publicity
- (c) Being unknown
- (d) Wrong address

202. Ephemeral

- (a) Disturbing
- (b) Filthy
- (c) Short-lived
- (d) Poverty-stricken

203. Caption

- (a) Joke
- (b) Definition
- (c) Meaning
- (d) Title

204. Battered

- (a) Destroyed
- (b) Dashed on
- (c) Struck hard
- (d) Struck off

205. Extravagant

- (a) Hardworking
- (b) Good
- (c) Extraordinary
- (d) Spendthrift

206. Redundant

- (a) Superfluous
- (b) Uninterested
- (c) Introspective
- (d) Knowledgeable

207. Hindered

- (a) Damaged
- (b) Disturbed
- (c) Obstructed
- (d) Protested

208. Concealed

- (a) Covered
- (b) Closed
- (c) Sealed
- (d) Hidden

209. Relish

- (a) Realize
- (b) Taste
- (c) Enjoy
- (d) Reveal

210. Acute

- (a) Dull
- (b) Drowsy
- (c) Unpleasant
- (d) Sharp

211. Solicit

- (a) Command
- (b) Request
- (c) Sympathize
- (d) Agree

212. Surmount

- (a) Discount
- (b) Surround
- (c) Overcome
- (d) Capture

213. Pertinent

- (a) Indirect
- (b) Relevant
- (c) Direct
- (d) Important

214. Nebulous

- (a) Revolutionary
- (b) Vague
- (c) Starting
- (d) Idiotic

215. Ubiquitous

- (a) Omnipresent
- (b) Omnipotent
- (c) Omniscient
- (d) Affluent

216. Corroborate

- (a) Collaborate
- (b) Substantiate
- (c) Co-operate
- (d) Correlate

217. Adequate

- (a) Necessary
- (b) Sufficient
- (c) Procured
- (d) Additional

218. Solecism

- (a) Abuse
- (b) Witty quip
- (c) Clever argument
- (d) Grammatical error

219. Delirious

- (a) Delicous
- (b) Pleasing
- (c) Desperate
- (d) Excited

220. Licentious

- (a) Immoral
- (b) Intellectual
- (c) Moral
- (d) Without license

221. Squander

- (a) Expensive
- (b) Waste
- (c) Litter
- (d) Economical

222. Abated

- (a) Reduced
- (b) Vanished
- (c) Increased
- (d) Stabilized

223. Abrogate

- (a) Repeal
- (b) Destroy
- (c) Delay
- (d) Dismiss

224. Abstemious

- (a) Resistant
- (b) Temperate
- (c) Superstitious
- (d) Careful

225. Allegiance

- (a) Servility
- (b) Obedience
- (c) Loyalty
- (d) Passivity

226. Amicable

- (a) Poisonous
- (b) Co-operative
- (c) Satisfying
- (d) Heartening

227. Ample

- (a) Meagre
- (b) Quantitative
- (c) Sufficient
- (d) Tasty

228. Baleful

- (a) Harmful
- (b) Doubtful
- (c) Useful
- (d) Helpful

229. Benevolence

- (a) Ill will
- (b) Morbidity
- (c) Kindness
- (d) Vision

230. Camouflage

- (a) Hide
- (b) Reveal
- (c) Disguise
- (d) Pretend

SYNONYMS (PRACTICE SET)

231. Chivalrous

- (a) Crude
- (b) Gallant
- (c) Handsome
- (d) Tinkering

232. Covenant

- (a) Case
- (b) Coupon
- (c) Contract
- (d) Settlement

233. Dainty

- (a) Carefree
- (b) Feminine and happy
- (c) Delicacy
- (d) Small and graceful

234. Deference

- (a) Indifference
- (b) Sympathy
- (c) Respect
- (d) Flattery

235. Dormant

- (a) Sleeping
- (b) Humble
- (c) Quick
- (d) Active

236. Dramatic

- (a) Unprecedented
- (b) Thrilling
- (c) Spectacular
- (d) Effective

237. Dubious

- (a) Doubtful
- (b) Disputable
- (c) Duplicate
- (d) Dangerous

238. Duplicity

- (a) Repetition
- (b) Artlessness
- (c) Deception
- (d) Cleverness

239. Eternal

- (a) Innumerable
- (b) Immeasurable
- (c) Prolonged
- (d) Perpetual

240. Evince

- (a) Look
- (b) Try
- (c) Apply
- (d) Show

241. Evoked

- (a) Escaped
- (b) Called forth
- (c) Produced
- (d) Summoned

242. Flabbergasted

- (a) Scared
- (b) Embarrassed
- (c) Dumbfounded
- (d) Humiliated

243. Flimsy

- (a) Weak
- (b) Strong
- (c) Justified
- (d) Impulsive

244. Garish

- (a) Unusual
- (b) Exciting
- (c) Confused
- (d) Gaudy

245. Implacable

- (a) Relentless
- (b) Unappeasable
- (c) Dangerous
- (d) Courageous

246. Indict

- (a) To accuse
- (b) Entrapment
- (c) Indoctrination
- (d) Inducement

247. Indigent

- (a) Indian men
- (b) Poor
- (c) Guilty
- (d) Untried

248. Innocuous

- (a) Abominable
- (b) Harmless
- (c) Harmful
- (d) Useful

249. Innuendoes

- (a) Indications
- (b) Inspiring quotes
- (c) Witty remarks
- (d) Insinuations

250. Insolent

- (a) Violent
- (b) Polite
- (c) Insulting
- (d) Frivolous

251. Irreverence

- (a) Disrespect
- (b) Cruelty
- (c) Unkindness
- (d) Invalidity

252. Latent

- (a) Primitive
- (b) Hidden
- (c) Potent
- (d) Talented

253. Massive

- (a) Tall
- (b) Large in size
- (c) Total
- (d) Little

254. Obnoxious

- (a) Depressing
- (b) Disgusting
- (c) Arrogant
- (d) Filthy

255. Panacea

- (a) Flatter
- (b) Praise
- (c) Inactivity
- (d) Cure-all

256. Pragmatic

- (a) Practical
- (b) Playful
- (c) Causal
- (d) Clever

257. Reparation

- (a) Compensation
- (b) Co-relation
- (c) Aspersion
- (d) Delegation

258. Salutary

- (a) Premature
- (b) Terrible
- (c) Disastrous
- (d) Beneficial

259. Shrink

- (a) Contract
- (b) Physician
- (c) Reduce
- (d) Shrivet

260. Soporific

- (a) Soothing
- (b) Terrific
- (c) Supreme
- (d) Sleep-inducing

261. Vagary

- (a) Lapse of memory
- (b) Companionship
- (c) gang
- (d) impulse

262. Coax

- (a) Pacify
- (b) Punish
- (c) Persuade
- (d) Please

263. Renowned

- (a) Notorious
- (b) Great
- (c) Brave
- (d) Famous

264. Blaze

- (a) Rage
- (b) Rush
- (c) Fire
- (d) Mark

265. Tangential

- (a) partly
- (b) forcefully
- (c) superficial
relevance
- (d) fitfully

266. Transparent

- (a) Translucent
- (b) Opaque
- (c) Clear
- (d) Sharp

267. Fruitless

- (a) Successful
- (b) barren
- (c) Useless
- (d) Insufficient

ANSWER KEY

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (b) 6. (b) 7. (c) 8. (a) 9. (d) 10. (a)
11. (b) 12. (c) 13. (b) 14. (c) 15. (b) 16. (b) 17. (d) 18. (d) 19. (b) 20. (b)
21. (a) 22. (b) 23. (b) 24. (b) 25. (a) 26. (b) 27. (a) 28. (c) 29. (d) 30. (c)
31. (b) 32. (b) 33. (c) 34. (c) 35. (d) 36. (a) 37. (c) 38. (b) 39. (a) 40. (d)
41. (d) 42. (d) 43. (b) 44. (d) 45. (c) 46. (b) 47. (d) 48. (b) 49. (b) 50. (d)
51. (b) 52. (b) 53. (a) 54. (c) 55. (b) 56. (d) 57. (d) 58. (c) 59. (c) 60. (a)
61. (c) 62. (c) 63. (b) 64. (c) 65. (c) 66. (b) 67. (c) 68. (b) 69. (b) 70. (a)
71. (d) 72. (c) 73. (d) 74. (d) 75. (d) 76. (c) 77. (a) 78. (b) 79. (d) 80. (c)
81. (b) 82. (b) 83. (a) 84. (b) 85. (b) 86. (c) 87. (c) 88. (b) 89. (c) 90. (d)
91. (c) 92. (b) 93. (a) 94. (a) 95. (c) 96. (a) 97. (a) 98. (b) 99. (c) 100. (a)
101. (b) 102. (a) 103. (c) 104. (d) 105. (c) 106. (b) 107. (a) 108. (b) 109. (a) 110. (c)
111. (a) 112. (b) 113. (d) 114. (a) 115. (c) 116. (a) 117. (b) 118. (d) 119. (c) 120. (b)
121. (c) 122. (d) 123. (c) 124. (b) 125. (b) 126. (a) 127. (c) 128. (b) 129. (d) 130. (b)
131. (c) 132. (d) 133. (c) 134. (a) 135. (d) 136. (d) 137. (b) 138. (b) 139. (a) 140. (d)
141. (b) 142. (a) 143. (a) 144. (d) 145. (a) 146. (b) 147. (a) 148. (c) 149. (b) 150. (c)
151. (c) 152. (d) 153. (b) 154. (d) 155. (c) 156. (a) 157. (d) 158. (a) 159. (a) 160. (d)
161. (c) 162. (a) 163. (a) 164. (b) 165. (d) 166. (b) 167. (a) 168. (d) 169. (d) 170. (a)
171. (b) 172. (c) 173. (c) 174. (a) 175. (b) 176. (b) 177. (a) 178. (a) 179. (c) 180. (c)
181. (b) 182. (d) 183. (a) 184. (c) 185. (a) 186. (c) 187. (b) 188. (b) 189. (a) 190. (d)
191. (d) 192. (c) 193. (a) 194. (b) 195. (a) 196. (b) 197. (c) 198. (b) 199. (a) 200. (c)
201. (c) 202. (c) 203. (d) 204. (a) 205. (d) 206. (a) 207. (c) 208. (d) 209. (c) 210. (d)
211. (b) 212. (c) 213. (b) 214. (b) 215. (a) 216. (b) 217. (b) 218. (d) 219. (d) 220. (a)
221. (b) 222. (a) 223. (a) 224. (d) 225. (c) 226. (b) 227. (c) 228. (a) 229. (c) 230. (c)
231. (b) 232. (c) 233. (d) 234. (c) 235. (a) 236. (c) 237. (a) 238. (c) 239. (d) 240. (d)
241. (b) 242. (c) 243. (a) 244. (d) 245. (b) 246. (a) 247. (b) 248. (b) 249. (d) 250. (c)
251. (a) 252. (b) 253. (b) 254. (b) 255. (d) 256. (a) 257. (a) 258. (d) 259. (d) 260. (d)
261. (d) 262. (c) 263. (d) 264. (c) 265. (c) 266. (c) 267. (c)

Directions: In questions no. 1 to 298 choose the word opposite in meaning to the given word and mark it in the answer sheet.

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| 1. Fastidious | 8. Urban | 15. Rapidly |
| (a) Fussy
(b) Cooperative
(c) Promising
(d) Adjustable | (a) Rustic
(b) Rural
(c) Civil
(d) Foreign | (a) Lazily
(b) Secretly
(c) Slowly
(d) Firmly |
| 2. Shallow | 9. Incredible | 16. Extol |
| (a) High
(b) Long
(c) Wide
(d) Deep | (a) Possible
(b) Believable
(c) Enjoyable
(d) Imaginary | (a) Heckle
(b) Censure
(c) Hate
(d) Scold |
| 3. Explicit | 10. Concur | 17. Make |
| (a) Elusive
(b) Allusive
(c) Ambidextrous
(d) Ambiguous | (a) Disagree
(b) Disappear
(c) Disarrange
(d) Discourage | (a) Liberate
(b) Break
(c) Emancipate
(d) Bind |
| 4. Immune | 11. Quiet | 18. Terminate |
| (a) Free
(b) Vulnerable
(c) Powerful
(d) Weak | (a) Strong
(b) Pandemonium
(c) Incomplete
(d) Violent | (a) Hasten
(b) Depart
(c) Begin
(d) Change |
| 5. Bleak | 12. Vague | 19. Successor |
| (a) Dull
(b) Dark
(c) Bright
(d) Exposure | (a) Clear
(b) Dull
(c) Unknown
(d) Shady | (a) Failure
(b) Loser
(c) Predecessor
(d) Predator |
| 6. Veneration | 13. Inevitable | 20. Demolish |
| (a) Fear
(b) Reverence
(c) Remorse
(d) Disrespect | (a) Avoidable
(b) Unnecessary
(c) Inseparable
(d) Uncertain | (a) Shift
(b) Build
(c) Repeat
(d) Hide |
| 7. Insolent | 14. Humility | 21. Genial |
| (a) Ignorant
(b) Proud
(c) Laudable
(d) Humble | (a) Dignity
(b) Cruelty
(c) Anger
(d) Pride | (a) Stupid
(b) Stingy
(c) Boorish
(d) Unkind |

22.	Prevent (a) Protect (b) Bleak (c) Hinder (d) Induce	32.	Innovate (a) Sell (b) Buy (c) Close (d) Copy	42.	Brave (a) Sorry (b) Bold (c) Timid (d) Boisterous
23.	Plausible (a) Implausible (b) Unplausible (c) Implausible/ Unbelievable (d) Displausible	33.	Asceticism (a) Comfort (b) Luxury (c) Anti-semitism (d) Humility	43.	Duplicity (a) Complexity (b) Honesty (c) Serenity (d) Originality
24.	Frailty (a) Energy (b) Intensity (c) Vehemence (d) Strength	34.	Enduring (a) Fleeting (b) Painful (c) Permanent (d) Long lasting	44.	Opaque (a) Brilliant (b) Bright (c) Transparent (d) Lustrous
25.	Flair (a) Spreading outward (b) Inability (c) Spotlight (d) Taste	35.	Dissolution (a) Retribution (b) Establishment (c) Persuasion (d) Compliance	45.	Jocular (a) Merry (b) Morose (c) Jugular (d) Juggler
26.	Collapse (a) Rise (b) Handicap (c) Crush (d) Crumble	36.	Progressive (a) Repressive (b) Retrogressive (c) Repulsive (d) Aggressive	46.	Hinder (a) Encourage (b) Acknowledge (c) Prohibit (d) Instruct
27.	Dormant (a) Acute (b) Active (c) Able (d) Ablaze	37.	Unnerved (a) Confident (b) Nervous (c) Hopeful (d) Anxious	47.	Uncompromising (a) Courteous (b) Flexible (c) Awesome (d) Soft
28.	Anxious (a) Crafty (b) Light (c) Carefree (d) Careless	38.	Vague (a) Unclear (b) Sharp (c) Precise (d) Actual	48.	Zeal (a) Disinterest (b) Apathy (c) Carelessness (d) Hatred
29.	Hazy (a) Plain (b) Light (c) Clear (d) Dull	39.	Harmony (a) Disagreement (b) Melody (c) Confusion (d) Concord	49.	Desecration (a) Consecration (b) Discouragement (c) Despondency (d) Expectation
30.	Thrifty (a) Clean (b) Loyal (c) Wasteful (d) Reverent	40.	Purposely (a) Half-heartedly (b) Timidly (c) Unintentionally (d) Hesitatingly	50.	Shimmering (a) Gloomy (b) Glimmering (c) Refreshing (d) Repining
31.	Fantastic (a) Old (b) Ordinary (c) Classic (d) Rational	41.	Guilty (a) Innocent (b) Ignorant (c) Irreverent (d) Immature	51.	Far-fetched (a) Wise (b) Prudent (c) Located for (d) Realistic

52.	Takes off	62.	Reckless	72.	Frugal
	(a) Travels (b) Falls (c) Explodes (d) Lands		(a) Careful (b) Fratik (c) Diffident (d) Smart		(a) Economical (b) Extravagant (c) Miserly (d) Greedy
53.	Niggardly	63.	Scorn	73.	Eminent
	(a) Hastily (b) Lavishly (c) Likely (d) Gorgeously		(a) Contempt (b) Joy (c) Admiration (d) Pity		(a) Illustrious (b) Notorious (c) Intelligent (d) Known
54.	Melodious	64.	Grandiose	74.	Barbarous
	(a) Harmonious (b) Tuneless (c) Odious (d) Mellifluous		(a) Simple (b) False (c) Ideal (d) Proud		(a) Civilized (b) Modern (c) Polite (d) Praiseworthy
55.	Advanced	65.	Trivial	75.	Embark upon
	(a) Progressed (b) Outpaced (c) Receded (d) Run back		(a) Serious (b) Violent (c) Wild (d) Unimportant		(a) Launch (b) Analyse (c) Break off (d) Conclude
56.	Enlightened	66.	Lurid	76.	Falling off
	(a) Slander (b) Bemoan (c) Ignorant (d) Before		(a) Dismal (b) Mild (c) Murky (d) Mysterious		(a) Shrinkage (b) Erosion (c) Improvement (d) Descent
57.	Exceptional	67.	Loquacious	77.	Depressed
	(a) Great (b) Occasional (c) Common (d) Absorbing		(a) Reserved (b) Miserly (c) Eloquent (d) Healthy		(a) Satisfied (b) Elated (c) Impressed (d) Affected
58.	Permanent	68.	Unscrupulous	78.	Yield to
	(a) Long (b) Short (c) Durable (d) Temporary		(a) Conscientious (b) Dedicated (c) Single-minded (d) Superfluous		(a) Submit to (b) Persuade (c) Resist (d) Seek terms with
59.	Moderate	69.	Confiscate	79.	Paucity
	(a) Abnormal (b) Weak (c) Extreme (d) Separate		(a) Produce (b) Release (c) Destroy (d) Exhibit		(a) Overflow (b) Inflow (c) Plenty (d) Grim
60.	Diffidence	70.	Contaminate	80.	Conclusive
	(a) Boldness (b) Outspokenness (c) Fluency (d) Obstinacy		(a) Sanctify (b) Invigorate (c) Taint (d) Purify		(a) Powerful (b) Indecisive (c) Exclusive (d) Partial
61.	Superficial	71.	Often	81.	Triggered
	(a) Careful (b) Of surface (c) Thorough (d) Casual		(a) Usually (b) Rarely (c) Sometimes (d) Occasionally		(a) Choked (b) Tapered off (c) Diluted (d) Ignited

82. Parallel (a) Divergent (b) Difficult (c) Similar (d) Crooked	92. Expand (a) Contract (b) Contrast (c) Consist (d) Controvert	102. Genuine (a) Genius (b) Honest (c) Affected (d) Fictitious
83. Manifested (a) Displayed (b) Concealed (c) Suppressed (d) Marked	93. Prosperity (a) Propriety (b) Property (c) Adversity (d) Perspicacity	103. Ham-fisted (a) Simple (b) Adroit (c) Difficult (d) Vague
84. Blocked (a) Facilitated (b) Started (c) Checked (d) Promoted	94. Stimulate (a) Encourage (b) Discourage (c) Tempt (d) Instigate	104. Implicit (a) Explicit (b) Implied (c) Explained (d) Exquisite
85. Vindictive (a) Careless (b) Forgiving (c) Heedless (d) Refined	95. Deliberate (a) Unconditional (b) Unintentional (c) Unilateral (d) Emotional	105. Capture (a) Catch (b) Detain (c) Liberate (d) Stop
86. Turncoat (a) Loyal (b) Disappointing (c) Thrilling (d) Nail-biting	96. Perilous (a) Pitiable (b) Difficult (c) Safe (d) Comfortable	106. Repulsive (a) Attractive (b) Offensive (c) Defensive (d) Pensive
87. Inaugurate (a) Terminate (b) Inculcate (c) Facilitate (d) Ameliorate	97. Disputable (a) Undisputable (b) Indisputable (c) Nondisputable (d) Adisputable	107. Misery (a) Sorry (b) Careless (c) Joy (d) Content
88. Embellish (a) Dishonour (b) Demolish (c) Spoil (d) Suffice	98. Audacious (a) Cautious (b) Timid (c) Rude (d) Proud	108. Escalate (a) Decrease (b) Descend (c) Deliver (d) Derive
89. Detest (a) Test (b) Dislike (c) Like (d) Interest	99. Meticulous (a) Unmerited (b) Unimaginative (c) Carefree (d) Careless	109. Anarchy (a) Curfew (b) Permanence (c) Wholesome (d) Order
90. Intentional (a) Accidental (b) Undecided (c) Concentrated (d) Broken	100. Repel (a) Attract (b) Interest (c) Tempt (d) Like	110. Commotion (a) Transmission (b) Tranquility (c) Transparency (d) Transition
91. Commence (a) Start (b) Schedule (c) Conclude (d) Dissolve	101. Dim (a) Transparent (b) Luminous (c) Opaque (d) Dazzling	111. Monotony (a) Enthusiasm (b) Repetitiveness (c) Variety (d) Singularity

112. Latter

- (a) Earlier
- (b) Before
- (c) Later
- (d) Former

113. Dynamic

- (a) Stable
- (b) Still
- (c) Lazy
- (d) Static

114. Diligent

- (a) Intelligent
- (b) Lazy
- (c) Boastful
- (d) Notorious

115. Hereditary

- (a) Carried
- (b) Acquired
- (c) Possessed
- (d) Regained

116. Philistine

- (a) Cultured
- (b) Libertine
- (c) Sober
- (d) Educated

117. Heretical

- (a) Contradictory
- (b) Doubtful
- (c) Impious
- (d) Orthodox

118. Ingest

- (a) Disrupt
- (b) Disgorge
- (c) Dismiss
- (d) Display

119. Implicate

- (a) Exonerate
- (b) Impersonate
- (c) Complicate
- (d) Impose

120. Laceration

- (a) Convalescence
- (b) Recuperation
- (c) Healing
- (d) Palpitation

121. Liberty

- (a) Serenity
- (b) Slavery
- (c) Serfdom
- (d) Subordinate

122. Disorderly

- (a) Chaotic
- (b) Organized
- (c) Adjusted
- (d) Arranged

123. Elevation

- (a) Reduction
- (b) Humiliation
- (c) Increment
- (d) Debasement

124. Glossy

- (a) Dull
- (b) Shining
- (c) Weary
- (d) Tired

125. Boon

- (a) Dull
- (b) Bane
- (c) Hurt
- (d) Harsh

126. Accomplish

- (a) Fail
- (b) Improper
- (c) Disagreeable
- (d) Scatter

127. Famous

- (a) Obscure
- (b) Eminent
- (c) Lenient
- (d) Fabulous

128. Orderly

- (a) Unclear
- (b) Valueless
- (c) Chaotic
- (d) Incomplete

129. Gloomy

- (a) Radiant
- (b) Fragrant
- (c) Melodious
- (d) Illusory

130. Strife

- (a) War
- (b) Peace
- (c) Anger
- (d) Woe

131. Isolation

- (a) Segregation
- (b) Association
- (c) Seclusion
- (d) Deportation

132. Antique

- (a) Common
- (b) Recent
- (c) Innovative
- (d) Youthful

133. Contented

- (a) Dissatisfied
- (b) Emptied
- (c) Happy
- (d) Unfriendly

134. Rapid

- (a) Happy
- (b) Fall
- (c) Slow
- (d) Abnormal

135. Severe

- (a) Sharp
- (b) Mild
- (c) Important
- (d) Cut

136. Initiated

- (a) Complicated
- (b) Simplified
- (c) Concluded
- (d) Commenced

137. Consensus

- (a) Accept
- (b) Opinion
- (c) Disagreement
- (d) Permission

138. Fatigued

- (a) Weakened
- (b) Energised
- (c) Tired
- (d) Activated

139. Autonomy

- (a) Slavery
- (b) Subordination
- (c) Dependence
- (d) Submissiveness

140. Flexible

- (a) Rigid
- (b) Cruel
- (c) Humble
- (d) Easy

141. Artificial

- (a) Artful
- (b) Machine-made
- (c) Artistic
- (d) Natural

ANTONYMS (PRACTICE SET)			
142. Delete	152. Callous	162. Chivalry	
(a) Regress (b) Interpolate (c) Infer (d) Include	(a) Persuasive (b) Caring (c) Gentle (d) Sensitive	(a) Cowardly (b) Discourtesy (c) Disobedience (d) Disaffection	
143. Benefactor	153. Cessation	163. Dismal	
(a) Helper (b) Victor (c) Disciple (d) Enemy	(a) Commencement (b) Renewal (c) Ongoing (d) Interruption	(a) Bright (b) Indifferent (c) Fast (d) Energetic	
144. Evanescent	154. Procrastinate	164. Sanguine temper	
(a) Clean (b) Tight (c) Eternal (d) Cheap	(a) Experiment (b) Expedite (c) Exclude (d) Propagate	(a) Despairing nature (b) Peaceful temperament (c) Rude behaviour (d) Selfish nature	
145. Barren	155. Potent	165. Meagre	
(a) Fertile (b) Rich (c) Prosperous (d) Positive	(a) Inefficient (b) Soft (c) Fragile (d) Weak	(a) Extravagant (b) Abandon (c) Prosperous (d) Surplus	
146. Virtue	156. Probity	166. Imperil	
(a) Vice (b) Failure (c) Fault (d) Offence	(a) Dishonesty (b) Timidity (c) Treachery (d) Insincerity	(a) Safeguard (b) Construct (c) Create (d) Brighten	
147. Nervous	157. Gregarious	167. Flamboyant	
(a) Flawless (b) Immature (c) Smooth (d) Composed	(a) Recluse (b) Social (c) Laudatory (d) Rustic	(a) Elaborately (b) Really (c) Not showy (d) Sensibly	
148. Confident	158. Sporadic	168. Consolidated	
(a) Worried (b) Pessimistic (c) Dissident (d) Depressed	(a) Surviving (b) Sweeping (c) Restrained (d) Continual	(a) Disjointed (b) Broken (c) Weakened (d) Lost	
149. Evident	159. Implication	169. Chronic	
(a) Suspected (b) Disagreed (c) Hidden (d) Unimportant	(a) Consideration (b) Exoneration (c) Conclusion (d) Interpretation	(a) Pathetic (b) Characteristic (c) Temporary (d) Mild	
150. Adamant	160. Apposite	170. Vituperative	
(a) Yielding (b) Permissive (c) Liberal (d) Tolerant	(a) Intemperate (b) Inappropriate (c) Indecent (d) Incriminatory	(a) Joyous (b) Laudatory (c) Critical (d) Virtuous	
151. Professional	161. Gregarious	171. Awkward	
(a) Novice (b) Amateur (c) Dabbler (d) Apprentice	(a) Indecent (b) Unsociable (c) Above reproach (d) Unlovable	(a) Awful (b) Satisfactory (c) Graceful (d) Easy	

172. Smug

- (a) Satisfied
- (b) Dissatisfied
- (c) Serious
- (d) Delighted

173. Oppressive

- (a) Gentle
- (b) Harsh
- (c) Smooth
- (d) Orderly

174. Obscure

- (a) Inconspicuous
- (b) Veiled
- (c) Clear
- (d) Distinct

175. Clinch

- (a) Lose
- (b) Clasp
- (c) Deal
- (d) Seal

176. Enervate

- (a) Decelerate
- (b) Strengthen
- (c) Push forward
- (d) Aggravate

177. To put up with

- (a) To stay together
- (b) To talk politely
- (c) To dislike
- (d) To move along with

178. Autonomous

- (a) Self-government
- (b) Dependent
- (c) Defensive
- (d) Neutral

179. Deceitful

- (a) Sincere
- (b) Useful
- (c) Plain
- (d) Honest

180. Exonerate

- (a) Admit
- (b) Release
- (c) Convict
- (d) Reject

181. Exaggerate

- (a) Underwrite
- (b) Understate
- (c) Ignore
- (d) Condemn

182. Controversial

- (a) Indisputable
- (b) Restrained
- (c) Controlled
- (d) Appeasing

183. Synthetic

- (a) Natural
- (b) Plastic
- (c) Cosmetic
- (d) Apathetic

184. Accord

- (a) Disagreement
- (b) Welcome
- (c) Disrespect
- (d) Conformity

185. Infirmitiy

- (a) Employment
- (b) Indisposition
- (c) Strength
- (d) Weakness

186. Feasible

- (a) Useful
- (b) Impractical
- (c) Uneven
- (d) Important

187. Deny

- (a) Accept
- (b) Proceed
- (c) Hold
- (d) Promote

188. Acquit

- (a) Inform
- (b) Release
- (c) Abuse
- (d) Condemn

189. Benediction

- (a) Best wishes
- (b) Use
- (c) Curse
- (d) Blessing

190. Affluence

- (a) Not being fluent
- (b) Poverty
- (c) Difficult
- (d) Unhealthy

191. Forbid

- (a) Defy
- (b) Dislike
- (c) Permit
- (d) Understand

192. Harmonious

- (a) Selfish
- (b) Aggressive
- (c) Mechanical
- (d) Discordant

193. Inconspicuous

- (a) Open-hearted
- (b) Open-minded
- (c) Prominent
- (d) Smooth

194. Factual

- (a) Actual
- (b) Idealistic
- (c) Unrealistic
- (d) Verbal

195. Abandon

- (a) Assert
- (b) Retain
- (c) Produce
- (d) Twist

196. Assent

- (a) Breakdown
- (b) Misunderstand
- (c) Dispatch
- (d) Disagreement

197. Fickle

- (a) Constant
- (b) Convenient
- (c) Questionable
- (d) Faithful

198. Discreet

- (a) Worthy
- (b) Wishful thinking
- (c) Honest
- (d) Careless in behaviour

199. Articulate

- (a) Unable to understand
- (b) Unable to express oneself
- (c) Unable to agree
- (d) Unable to live

200. Unjust

- (a) Serious
- (b) Self-centred
- (c) Fair-minded
- (d) Considerable

201. Humble	211. Deterrent	221. Candid
(a) Rich (b) Powerful (c) Haughty (d) Strong	(a) Determinant (b) Detriment (c) Encouragement (d) Enrichment	(a) Frank (b) Diplomatic (c) Reserved (d) Impertinent
202. Exemptions	212. Spurious	222. Camaraderie
(a) Generalisation (b) Liberalisation (c) Exclusions (d) Inclusions	(a) Truthful (b) Authentic (c) Credible (d) Original	(a) Curiosity (b) Ferocity (c) Impetuosity (d) Animosity
203. Prominent	213. Slander	223. Convicted
(a) Unknown (b) Treason (c) Loyalty (d) Distrust	(a) Gain (b) Profit (c) Praise (d) Loss	(a) Charged (b) Relieved (c) Dismissed (d) Acquitted
204. Alleviate	214. Reveal	224. Convoluted
(a) Intensity (b) Magnify (c) Mitigate (d) Aggravate	(a) Appeal (b) Relax (c) Recover (d) Conceal	(a) Simple (b) Complicated (c) Difficult (d) Majestic
205. Disperse	215. Admonish	225. Curtail
(a) Converge (b) Smile (c) Dispense (d) Sing	(a) Condemn (b) Bless (c) Praise (d) Congratulate	(a) Lengthen (b) Shorten (c) Entail (d) Close
206. Ambiguous	216. Adulation	226. Dense
(a) Truthful (b) Lucid (c) Logical (d) Systematic	(a) Flattery (b) Encomium (c) Confession (d) Condemnation	(a) Scarce (b) Slim (c) Sparse (d) Lean
207. Hilarious	217. Affirmation	227. Diminished
(a) Unworthy (b) Unpleasant (c) Ill-fated (d) Serious	(a) Denial (b) Refusal (c) Opposition (d) Obstruction	(a) Created (b) Rose (c) Increased (d) Lessen
208. Tolerance	218. Affluent	228. Ephemeral
(a) Loathing (b) Brawl (c) Plea (d) Forbid	(a) Poor (b) Ordinary (c) Infamous (d) Backward	(a) Eternal (b) Transitory (c) Mortal (d) Temporal
209. Steadfast	219. Agony	229. Escalating
(a) Staunch (b) Feeble (c) Faint (d) Wavering	(a) Ecstasy (b) Laughter (c) Humdrum (d) Ecstasy	(a) Fixed (b) Fluctuating (c) Falling (d) Reasonable
210. Conceited	220. Appalling	230. Esteem
(a) Proud (b) Honest (c) Modest (d) Modern	(a) Shocking (b) Consoling (c) Scaring (d) Horrifying	(a) Power (b) Guess (c) Contempt (d) Estimate

ANTONYMS (PRACTICE SET)

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| 231. Exotic
(a) Wonderful
(b) Cosmopolitan
(c) Irrelevant
(d) Common | 241. Intimidating
(a) Authoritative
(b) Casual
(c) Non-serious
(d) Friendly | 251. Parsimonious
(a) Prodigious
(b) Selfless
(c) Extravagant
(d) Ostentatious |
| 232. Fetter
(a) Restore
(b) Liberate
(c) Exonerate
(d) Distract | 242. Jest
(a) Gravity
(b) Grim
(c) Genial
(d) Sport | 252. Predilection
(a) Acceptance
(b) Attraction
(c) Dislike
(d) Choice |
| 233. Flourish
(a) Perish
(b) Degenerate
(c) Decay
(d) Dismiss | 243. Latent
(a) Unspoken
(b) Later
(c) Implicit
(d) Obvious | 253. Profound
(a) Deep
(b) Superficial
(c) Hollow
(d) Fallow |
| 234. Futile
(a) Waste
(b) Expensive
(c) Useful
(d) Cheap | 244. Maladroit
(a) Authoritative
(b) Skilful
(c) Maladjusted
(d) Malevolent | 254. Protean
(a) Amateur
(b) Catholic
(c) Unchanging
(d) Rapid |
| 235. Garrulous
(a) Vociferous
(b) Eloquent
(c) Taciturn
(d) Vocal | 245. Malevolence
(a) Tenderness
(b) Kindness
(c) Benefiting
(d) Indulgence | 255. Quiescent
(a) Restless
(b) Exempt
(c) Malignant
(d) Mendicant |
| 236. Gratuitous
(a) Uncharitable
(b) Grand appearance
(c) Warranted
(d) Being grateful | 246. Malice
(a) Sympathy
(b) Goodwill
(c) Friendship
(d) Attraction | 256. Perilous
(a) Safe
(b) Developed
(c) Sophisticated
(d) Communicative |
| 237. In toto
(a) Bluntly
(b) Partially
(c) Entirely
(d) Strongly | 247. Monotonous
(a) Disastrous
(b) Terrifying
(c) Terrible
(d) Interesting | 257. Revelation
(a) Rejection
(b) Elimination
(c) Concealment
(d) Introduction |
| 238. Fleeting
(a) Glossy
(b) Perpetual
(c) Aspiring
(d) Sufficient | 248. Obscene
(a) Disobedient
(b) Decent
(c) Dislocate
(d) Cautious | 258. Repulsion
(a) Attraction
(b) Disapproval
(c) Disparagement
(d) Denigration |
| 239. Inert
(a) Active
(b) Lazy
(c) Strong
(d) Resolute | 249. Opposed
(a) Resistant
(b) Against
(c) Favouring
(d) Similar | 259. Segregate
(a) Sever
(b) Unite
(c) Separate
(d) Aggregate |
| 240. Initial
(a) Terminal
(b) Commencing
(c) Delayed
(d) Disastrous | 250. Ostracise
(a) Amuse
(b) Welcome
(c) Entertain
(d) Host | 260. Significant
(a) Substantial
(b) Minuscule
(c) Incoherent
(d) Unimportant |

261. Despair

- (a) Sneer
- (b) Compliment
- (c) Irony
- (d) Hope

262. Validate

- (a) Disprove
- (b) Authenticate
- (c) Ingenuine
- (d) Legalise

263. Vicious

- (a) Godly
- (b) Virtuous
- (c) Sublime
- (d) Friendly

ANSWER KEY

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. (d) | 29. (c) | 57. (c) | 85. (b) | 113. (d) | 141. (d) | 169. (c) | 197. (a) | 225. (a) | 253. (b) |
| 2. (d) | 30. (c) | 58. (d) | 86. (a) | 114. (b) | 142. (d) | 170. (b) | 198. (d) | 226. (a) | 254. (c) |
| 3. (d) | 31. (b) | 59. (c) | 87. (a) | 115. (b) | 143. (d) | 171. (c) | 199. (b) | 227. (c) | 255. (a) |
| 4. (b) | 32. (d) | 60. (a) | 88. (c) | 116. (a) | 144. (c) | 172. (b) | 200. (c) | 228. (a) | 256. (a) |
| 5. (c) | 33. (b) | 61. (c) | 89. (c) | 117. (d) | 145. (a) | 173. (a) | 201. (c) | 229. (c) | 257. (c) |
| 6. (d) | 34. (a) | 62. (a) | 90. (a) | 118. (b) | 146. (a) | 174. (c) | 202. (d) | 230. (c) | 258. (a) |
| 7. (d) | 35. (b) | 63. (c) | 91. (c) | 119. (a) | 147. (d) | 175. (a) | 203. (a) | 231. (d) | 259. (b) |
| 8. (b) | 36. (b) | 64. (a) | 92. (a) | 120. (c) | 148. (c) | 176. (b) | 204. (d) | 232. (b) | 260. (d) |
| 9. (b) | 37. (a) | 65. (a) | 93. (c) | 121. (b) | 149. (c) | 177. (c) | 205. (a) | 233. (a) | 261. (d) |
| 10. (a) | 38. (c) | 66. (b) | 94. (b) | 122. (b) | 150. (a) | 178. (b) | 206. (b) | 234. (c) | 262. (a) |
| 11. (b) | 39. (a) | 67. (a) | 95. (b) | 123. (a) | 151. (b) | 179. (d) | 207. (d) | 235. (c) | 263. (b) |
| 12. (a) | 40. (c) | 68. (a) | 96. (c) | 124. (a) | 152. (d) | 180. (c) | 208. (b) | 236. (a) | |
| 13. (a) | 41. (a) | 69. (b) | 97. (b) | 125. (b) | 153. (a) | 181. (b) | 209. (d) | 237. (b) | |
| 14. (d) | 42. (c) | 70. (d) | 98. (b) | 126. (a) | 154. (b) | 182. (a) | 210. (c) | 238. (b) | |
| 15. (c) | 43. (b) | 71. (b) | 99. (d) | 127. (a) | 155. (d) | 183. (a) | 211. (c) | 239. (a) | |
| 16. (b) | 44. (c) | 72. (b) | 100. (a) | 128. (c) | 156. (a) | 184. (a) | 212. (b) | 240. (a) | |
| 17. (b) | 45. (b) | 73. (b) | 101. (b) | 129. (a) | 157. (a) | 185. (c) | 213. (c) | 241. (d) | |
| 18. (c) | 46. (a) | 74. (a) | 102. (d) | 130. (b) | 158. (d) | 186. (b) | 214. (d) | 242. (b) | |
| 19. (c) | 47. (b) | 75. (d) | 103. (b) | 131. (b) | 159. (b) | 187. (a) | 215. (c) | 243. (d) | |
| 20. (b) | 48. (b) | 76. (c) | 104. (a) | 132. (b) | 160. (b) | 188. (d) | 216. (d) | 244. (b) | |
| 21. (d) | 49. (a) | 77. (b) | 105. (c) | 133. (a) | 161. (b) | 189. (c) | 217. (a) | 245. (b) | |
| 22. (d) | 50. (a) | 78. (c) | 106. (a) | 134. (c) | 162. (a) | 190. (b) | 218. (a) | 246. (b) | |
| 23. (c) | 51. (d) | 79. (c) | 107. (c) | 135. (b) | 163. (a) | 191. (c) | 219. (a) | 247. (d) | |
| 24. (d) | 52. (d) | 80. (b) | 108. (a) | 136. (c) | 164. (a) | 192. (d) | 220. (b) | 248. (b) | |
| 25. (b) | 53. (b) | 81. (a) | 109. (d) | 137. (c) | 165. (d) | 193. (c) | 221. (c) | 249. (c) | |
| 26. (a) | 54. (b) | 82. (d) | 110. (b) | 138. (b) | 166. (a) | 194. (c) | 222. (d) | 250. (b) | |
| 27. (b) | 55. (c) | 83. (b) | 111. (c) | 139. (c) | 167. (c) | 195. (b) | 223. (d) | 251. (c) | |
| 28. (c) | 56. (c) | 84. (a) | 112. (d) | 140. (a) | 168. (a) | 196. (d) | 224. (a) | 252. (c) | |

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

S.N.	<u>WORD</u>	<u>हिन्दी में अर्थ</u>	<u>Meaning in English</u>
1.	Abattoir	कसाईखाना	Place where animals are killed for food.
2.	Abbot	मठाधिकारी/ मठाधीश	A man who is the head of a monastery or an abbey.
3.	Abbreviation	संक्षेप/ लघुरूप	A shortened form of a word or phrase.
4.	Abdication	औपचारिक रूप से त्याग देना	To formally give up.
5.	Ablution	धार्मिक स्नान	Ritual washing of the body.
6.	Abstruse	समझने में मुश्किल	Hard to understand.
7.	Abundance	आधिक्य/ प्रचुरता	A quantity that is more than enough.
8.	Accentuate	जोर देना	Give more force or importance to.
9.	Accomplice	सह-अपराधी	Helper in a wrong deed or crime.
10.	Acronym	प्रथमाक्षरी नाम	Word formed from initial letters of a name.
11.	Addendum	परिशिष्ट	Thing to be added at the end of a book, etc.
12.	Advertisement	विज्ञापन	A public notice offering or asking for goods, services, etc.
13.	Afforestation	वनारोपन	The act of forestation by planting many trees.
14.	Agenda	घोषणा पत्र	Items of business for consideration at a meeting.
15.	Aggressor	आक्रमणकर्ता	Someone who attacks first.
16.	Agnosticism	जो ईश्वर के अश्तित्व पर शंका करे	Doubtful about the existence of God.
17.	Alien	गैर नागरिक	One who belongs to different country, race of group.
18.	Alimony	तलाक पश्चात् की जीवन वृति	Allowance fixed after divorce to a wife.
19.	Allegory	प्रतीक कथा	Story in which ideas are symbolized as people.
20.	Alliteration	अनुप्रास	Commencement of adjacent words with the same letter.

21. Altruist	परोपकारी	One who lives and works for the welfare of others.
22. Amateur	गैर पेशेवर	Lacking professional skill or expertise.
23. Ambassador	राजदूत	A diplomatic representative of one country in another.
24. Ambidextrous	दोनों हाथों से निपुण	Equally skillful with each hand.
25. Ambiguous	अस्पष्ट/ दो अर्थों वाला	Having more than one possible meaning
26. Amnesia	विस्मरण	Partial or total loss of memory.
27. Amnesty	अपराधक्षमा	A general pardon of political offenders.
28. Amphibian	उभयचर	Animals which live both on land and in water.
29. Amphitheatre	अखाड़ा/ रंगभूमि	A designated section of seats in any part of a theatre.
30. Analgesia	दर्द की अनुभूति न होना	The loss of ability to feel pain while still conscious.
31. Anarchist	अराजक	One who wishes to destroy all established government's law and order.
32. Anarchy	अराजकता	The absence of government in a country.
33. Anecdote	किस्सा	Short amusing story about some real person or event.
34. Anniversary	साल गिरह	Yearly return of the date of an event.
35. Annual	सालाना	That which happens once in a year.
36. Anomaly	असाधारण	Deviation or departure from common rule or standard or what is normal.
37. Anonymous	गुपनाम	A book or a work of art whose author is not known.
38. Antagonist	विरोधी	One that opposes other.
39. Antidote	जहर-नाशक	A medicine to cure the effect of poison.
40. Aphasia	वाचाधात	Loss of ability to understand speech.
41. Apostate	धर्म त्यागी	One who abandons his religious faith.
42. Aquatic	जलीय	Animals which live in water.
43. Arbitrator/ Arbiter ..	मध्यस्थ	Someone chosen to judge and decide a disputed issue.
44. Aristocracy	कुलीन तंत्र	A government by the nobles.
45. Armistice	युद्ध विराम	The cessation of warfare before a treaty is signed.
46. Ascetic	सम्यासी	One who practices self denial as a spiritual discipline.

215 WORD SUBSTITUTION

47. Assassination	राजनैतिक कारण से हत्या	Killing or murder for political reasons.
48. Astrology	ज्योतिष शास्त्र	Science of the influence of the stars on human affairs.
49. Astronomy	खगोल विज्ञान	Science of universe with sun, moon, stars and planets.
50. Atheist	नास्तिक	A person who does not believe in the existence of God.
51. Audience	श्रोता गण	An assembly of listeners.
52. Autobiography	आत्म जीवनी	The life-history of a man written by himself.
53. Autocracy	एकतंत्र	A government by one person.
54. Avaricious	लालची	One who is greedy.
55. Bachelorhood	कुवांरापन	The state of being unmarried (of a man).
56. Bankrupt/Insolvent	दिवालिया	A person unable to pay his debts.
57. Bay	खाड़ी	A part of the sea/ lake enclosed by a wide curve of the shore.
58. Beach	समुद्र तट	A stretch of sand/ stones along the edge of the sea/ lake.
59. Bellicose	लड़ाकू	A person who is fond of fighting.
60. Belligerent	युद्धरत	Engaged in war/fight.
61. Benefactor	धर्मोपकारी	One who gives financial help to a school, hospital, etc.
62. Bibliophile	पुस्तक प्रेमी	One who loves and collects books.
63. Biennial	द्विवर्षीय	That which happens once in two years.
64. Bigamy	दो विवाह प्रथा	The custom of having two wives or two husbands.
65. Bigot	कट्टर	One who is filled with narrow and prejudiced opinion.
66. Bilingual	द्विभाषिय	One who can speak two languages.
67. Biography	जीवनी	The life-history of a man written by someone else.
68. Biped	दोपाया	Animal with two-feet.
69. Blaspheme	ईश्वर के खिलाफ बोलना	Speaking irreverently about God or sacred things.
70. Bliss	चरमसुख	Perfect happiness.
71. Bohemian	स्वेच्छाचारी	One who does not follow the usual norms of social life.
72. Bookworm/Bibliophilic	कितांबी कीड़ा	One who is interested in reading books and nothing else.

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

73. **Boorish** गंवार Person who is rough and ill mannered.
74. **Botany** वनस्पति विज्ञान The science of vegetable life.
75. **Brittle** भंगुर A thing which can be easily broken.
76. **Bureaucracy** नौकरशाही A government by the officials.
77. **Cabaret** कैबरे नृत्य A series of a type of dance performance.
78. **Cabby, Cabdriver** ट्रैक्सी चालक The driver of a taxi cab.
79. **Cacophony** श्रुति कदुत्व Harsh sound.
80. **Cajole** खुशामद करना Persuade by flattery.
81. **Calligraphy** सुलेखन Art of beautiful hand writing.
82. **Cannibal** जो अपनी प्रजाति का ही That eats one's own species
भक्षण करें
83. **Catacomb** कब्र/एक दूसरे से संबंधित an underground place where people are buried / a complex set of interrelated things.
84. **Capsize** पलटना Overturn in water.
85. **Carnage** हत्याकांड Killing of large numbers of people.
86. **Carnival** मनोरंजन मेला Public merry making and feasting.
87. **Cartographer** मानचित्रकार A person who draws maps and charts.
88. **Cartography** मानचित्र कला Art of map making.
89. **Catalogue** पुस्तक सूची List of books and other articles.
90. **Celibate** ब्रह्मचारी One who has taken a vow not to have sex.
91. **Cemetery** कब्रिस्तान The place for corpses to be buried.
92. **Centenary** शताब्दी Hundredth anniversary.
93. **Chronological** समय के क्रमानुसार According to sequence of time.
94. **Circumlocution** घुमा-फिरा के बात करना A roundabout way of expression.
95. **Cloakroom** माल गोदाम The place for luggage at a railway station.
96. **Coerce** मजबूर करना Compel to a course of action.
97. **Cognate** एक ही उत्पत्ति के Having the same source or origin.
98. **Colleagues** सहकर्मी Persons working in the same department.
99. **Collusion** कपट संधि Secret agreement for a fraudulent purpose.
100. **Conflagration** भीषण अग्निकांड Huge destructive fire.
101. **Congregation** धर्म-संगति Gathering of worshippers.
102. **Congruent** सर्वांगसम Identical in all respects.
103. **Connoisseur** कला का पारखी One who is well-versed in any subject/ art.
104. **Conscription** अनिवार्य सैनिक सेवा Compulsory enlistment for military or other services.

105. Contagious	संक्रामक	Which spreads by physical touch or contact.
106. Contemporary	समकालीन	Of the same time.
107. Contiguous	समीपस्थ	Two countries or States touching a common boundary.
108. Contrite	पश्चात्तापी	Showing deep sorrow for wrong doing.
109. Convalescence	पुनःस्वास्थ्य प्राप्ति के बाद	The period of gradual recovery of health after illness.
110. Conventicle	गुप्त व गैरकानूनी धर्मसभा	Secret and illegal religious meeting.
111. Coquette	दिलफोंक महिला	A seductive woman who uses her sex appeal to exploit men.
112. Coronation	राज्याभिषेक	Ceremony of crowning a king.
113. Cosmopolitan	पूरी दुनिया का निवासी	A person who regards the whole world as his country.
114. Credulous	आशुविश्वासी	One who is simple and easily believes whatever is told to him.
115. Crematory	शमशान घाट	The place for corpses to be burnt.
116. Cripple	अपां/अपां बनाना	Someone who is unable to walk normally because of an injury or disability to the legs or back.
117. Curfew	कर्फ्यू	An order that certain activities/movement are prohibited.
118. Cynosure	आकर्षण-बिन्दु	Centre of attraction.
119. Dead	मृत/ बेकार/ बेजान	A language that is no longer spoken.
120. Demagogue	जनोत्तेजक	Political leader who delivers sentimental speeches.
121. Democracy	लोकतंत्र	A government by the people, of the people, and for the people.
122. Denizen	निवासी	A person, an animal or a plant that lives, grows or is often found in a particular place.
123. Depraved	चरित्र भ्रष्ट	Morally bad or evil.
124. Deprecate	विरोध करना	Express earnest disapproval of.
125. Dermatology	त्वचा विज्ञान	The medical study of the skin and its diseases.
126. Despondency	निराशा	Loss of complete hope.
127. Destitution	अभावग्रस्तता	Lacking basic necessities of life.
128. Detrimental	हानिकर	Causing harm or damage.
129. Dexterous	कुशल	Skilful at handling things.
130. Diatribe	कटु-निर्वा	Bitter and violent attack in words or writing.

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

131. Dictatorship	तानाशाही/ निरंकुशता	Government carried on by an absolute ruler.
132. Diplomacy	कूटनीति	The skill and policy of a country's statesmen and politicians/ skill in dealing with people.
133. Discrepancy	विसंगति	Difference between two things that should be the same.
134. Dissimulate	छिपाना	To hide or disguise.
135. Diurnal	दैनिक	Of the daytime.
136. Draper	जुलाहा	A shopkeeper selling cloth and clothing.
137. Draw	अनिर्णित	The result of the match where neither party wins.
138. Dwarf	बैना	A person, plant or animal who/which is below the usual size.
139. Dynasty	वंश	Succession of rulers belonging to one family.
140. Eavesdropper	चुपके से निजी वार्तालाप	One who witnesses secretly to private conversation
141. Economical	किफायती	One who is careful in the use of money/ fuel etc.
142. Edible	खाने योग्य	That which is fit to be eaten.
143. Effeminate	औरताना गुण होना	A man who is womanish in his habits.
144. Egalitarianism	समतावाद	Belief that all people are equal and have the same rights and opportunities.
145. Egoist	स्वार्थी/ अहंकारी	A lover of one's ownself/supercilious.
146. Eligible	योग्य	Fit to be chosen; qualified.
147. Emergency	आपातकाल	A sudden serious situation requiring immediate action.
148. Emeritus	ससम्मान सेवामुक्त व्यक्ति	One who is honourably discharged from service.
149. Emigrant	प्रवासी	A person who goes to another country to live.
150. Emissary	गुप्तचर/ जासूस	A person sent on a mission (usually official).
151. Epicure	अच्छा खाने का शौकीन	Person fond of delicious food.
152. Epidemic	संक्रामक रोग	Disease affecting many people at the same place and time.
153. Epilogue	नाटक के बाद का भाषण	A speech or a poem recited at the end of a play.
154. Episode	कड़ी/ कथांश	Part of story (especially T.V. or Radio

155. Episodic	कभी-कभी होने वाली घटना	show story) Happening only some times and irregularly.
156. Epistle	धर्मपत्र/ काव्यपत्र	A letter.
157. Epitaph	कब्र पर इंगित शब्द	Words which are inscribed on the grave.
158. Epithet	उपाभि विशेषक	Adjective added to a person's name usually to criticise or praise him.
159. Epitome	सटीक उदाहरण	A perfect example.
160. Epitomize	सटीक उदाहरण होना	To be a perfect example.
161. Equanimity	धैर्य	Calmness of mind and temper.
162. Erotica	अश्लील ग्रन्थ	Books, pictures, etc. intended to arouse sexual desire.
163. Erudite	विद्वान् पुरुष	A learned or scholarly person.
164. Espionage	जासूसी	Practice of spying.
165. Eternal	अनंत	Existing for ever — without any beginning or end.
166. Etymology	शब्द निर्माण विज्ञान	The science which deals with derivation of words.
167. Euphemism	आडंबर शैली	Bombastic style of writing.
168. Euphonious	सुरीला	Sounding pleasant.
169. Euphoria	अत्यन्त खुशी	A strong feeling of happiness.
170. Evanescence	अस्थायी	Of a very short duration or period. / Ephemeral/Transient
171. Explicable	विवेचनात्मक	That which can be explained.
172. Extempore	बिना तैयारी का भाषण	A speech delivered without any preparation.
173. Extravaganza	अतिशयी नाटक	Public activity which takes place in a very elaborate, colourful and expensive way.
174. Fallacy	भ्रम	False or mistaken belief.
175. Fanatic	कट्टर	One who is filled with excessive and mistaken enthusiasm.
176. Fastidious	नखरेबाज	One who is hard to please.
177. Fatal or mortal	जानलेवा	Resulting in death.
178. Fatalist	भाग्यवादी	One who believes in destiny.
179. Fauna	प्राणिजात	Animals of a certain region.
180. Feminist	नारीवादी	One who works for the welfare of women.
181. Fiasco	पूर्ण असफलता	Complete failure.
182. Flagstaff	ध्वजदण्ड	A long pole on which a flag is flown.
183. Flora	वनस्पति	All the plants of a particular area or

period of time.

- 184. Fluke** आकस्मिक सफलता Stroke of good luck.
- 185. Forgery** जालसाजी Counterfeiting of document.
- 186. Fratricide** भ्रातृहत्या Killing/killer of one's brother.
- 187. Frenzy** उन्माद A state of extreme excitement.
- 188. Frostbite** शीतदंश Injury to the nose, fingers or toes, caused by extreme cold.
- 189. Gallery** प्रदर्शनी स्थल A room or building for showing works of art.
- 190. Gamble** जुआ To play games of chance, etc. for money.
- 191. Gastronomy** उत्तम आहार विज्ञान Science and art of preparing and appreciating good food.
- 192. Genocide** जन संहर Extermination of a race or community.
- 193. Geology** भूगर्भ विज्ञान The science of earth's history and rocks.
- 194. Germicide** जीवाणु नाशक A substance that kills germs.
- 195. Glutton** पेटू One who eats too much.
- 196. Gobble** लालची की तरह खाना Eat fast, noisily and greedily.
- 197. Gratis/Gratuitous** ... निःशुल्क Done or obtained without payment.
- 198. Gregarious** समूह में रहने वाले Animals that live in flocks.
- 199. Hallucinogen** भ्रमित करने की दवा A drug that causes one to hallucinate.
- 200. Hedonism** सुखवाद Belief that the most important thing in the world is pleasure.
- 201. Henchman** सेवक Faithful supporter.
- 202. Herbivorous** शाकाहारी Animals which feed on vegetation.
- 203. Herculean** अति पराक्रमी Having enormous strength or size.
- 204. Heterogeneous** विषम Things which contain elements of different nature.
- 205. Hexagon** षट्कोणीय A plane figure with six sides and angles.
- 206. Holocaust** पूर्णाहृति Large scale destruction by fire.
- 207. Homicide** मानव हत्या Murder of a man.
- 208. Homogeneous** समांग Things which contain elements of the same nature.
- 209. Honorary** अवैतनिक A post for which no salary is paid.
- 210. Horticulture** बागबानी Art of growing vegetables, fruit, etc.
- 211. Hospitable** मेहमाननवाज Fond of entertaining guests.
- 212. Hypochondria** काल्पनिक बीमारी Imaginary ailments.
- 213. Iconoclast** गैर-परम्परावादी One who opposes established institutions

214. Idolatry	पूर्ति पूजन	or beliefs.
215. Illegal	अवैध	The worship of idols or images.
216. Illegible	आपल्हनीय	Contrary to law.
217. Illicit	अवैध	Incapable of being read.
218. Illiterate	अनापढ़	A trade or act prohibited by law.
219. Imaginary	काल्पनिक	One who does not know reading and writing.
220. Immigrant	अप्रवासी	Existing only in the mind.
221. Immune	प्रतिरक्षित	A person who comes to one country from another in order to settle there.
222. Impalpable	स्पर्शनीय	Free from infection.
223. Impenetrable	अप्रवेश्य	Incapable of being perceived by touch.
224. Imperceptible	अदृश्य	That which cannot be penetrated.
225. Imperialism	साम्राज्यवाद	That which cannot be perceived by sense.
226. Impertinent	गुस्ताख	Policy of extending a country's empire and influence.
227. Impiety	सम्मान की कमी	Not showing proper respect.
228. Imponderable	असोचनीय	Lack of respect or religious reverence.
229. Imposter	बहुरूपिया	That which cannot be guessed or calculated.
230. Impracticable	अव्यवहारिक	One who assumes a character or title not his own to deceive others.
231. Impregnable	अजेय / अभेद	Incapable of being practised.
232. Impulse	प्रौत्साहन	Too strong to be overcome or defeated.
233. Impresario	संयोजक	driving force
234. Impromptu	बिना तैयारी का	A manager or director of a ballet, a concert, a theatre or an opera company.
235. Impudent	रुखे व्यवहार वाला	Something said or done without preparation.
236. Impunity	दंड मुक्ति	Rude and not respectful.
237. Inaccessible	जहाँ पहुँचा ना जा सके	Freedom from punishment.
238. Inadmissible	अस्वीकार्य	Incapable of being reached.
239. Inaudible	जो सुनाई ना दे	That which cannot be admitted or allowed.
240. Incendiary	जो आग/ गुस्सा भड़काएँ	A sound that cannot be heard.
241. Incombustible	जो जले नहीं	Designed to cause fire/likely to cause violence.
242. Incomparable	अतुलनीय/ अतुल्य	That which cannot be burnt.
		That which cannot be compared.

243. Incorrigible	जो सुधारा नहीं जा सकते	Incapable of being corrected.
244. Incredible	अविश्वसनीय	Which can't be believed.
245. Incurable	असाध्य	Which cannot be cured.
246. Indefatigable	जो थके नहीं	Incapable of being tired.
247. Indefensible	असुरक्षित	Which cannot be defended.
248. Indelible	अमिट	Which cannot be erased or forgotten.
249. Indemnity	मुआवजा	Compensation for loss.
250. Indestructible	अनश्वर	That which cannot be destroyed.
251. Indignant	अन्याय के कारण क्रुद्ध	Angry at injustice.
252. Indispensable	अपरिहार्य	That without which one can't do.
253. Indivisible	अविभाज्य	That which cannot be divided.
254. Ineligible	अयोग्य	Not suitable to be elected or selected under the rules.
255. Inevitable	अटल	Incapable of being avoided.
256. Inexcusable	अक्षम्य	That which cannot be excused.
257. Inexplicable	अवर्णनीय	Which cannot be explained.
258. Inexplicit	अप्रकट	Not definitely or clearly expressed.
259. Inexpressible	अवर्णनीय	That which cannot be expressed in words.
260. Infallible	जो गलती न करें	Never wrong.
261. Infanticide	शिशुहत्या	Killing of an infant.
262. Infectious	संक्रामक	A disease which spreads through air and water.
263. Inflammable	ज्वलनशील	Which catches fire easily.
264. Inimitable	जो अनुकरणीय न हो	Incapable of being imitated.
265. Insecticide	कीटनाशक	A substance that kills insects.
266. Insolvent	दिवालिया	A person who is unable to pay his debt.
267. Insurrection	बगावत	Rising in arms against an established government.
268. Intercede	सिफारिश करना	Plead to obtain a favour to save someone else.
269. Intercept	रोकना	To check or stop on way.
270. Intrigue/conspire	साजिश करना	Make or carry out secret planning.
271. Introspection	आत्म निरिक्षण	Examination of self thought or feeling.
272. Invincible	अजय	That which cannot be defeated.
273. Invisible	अदृश्य	That which cannot be seen.
274. Invulnerable	सुरक्षित	Incapable of being harmed.
275. Irreconcilable	असंगत	Impossible to find agreement between.
276. Irrecoverable	वापस न मिल सकने योग्य ...	That which cannot be recovered.

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

277. Irreparable	अपूरणीय	Incapable of being repaired.
278. Irrevocable	अपरिवर्तनीय	That which cannot be altered.
279. Itinerant	शुमक्कड़	One who travels from place to place.
280. Journal	अखबार	A newspaper or magazine that deals with a particular subject or professional activity.
281. Juxtapose	सन्निधान करना	Placing a thing beside another.
282. Lagoon	समुद्रताल	Salt water lake separated from the sea by sand banks.
283. Lexicographer	शब्द कोष बनाने वाला	A person who compiles a dictionary.
284. Linguist	वहभाषाविद् (विदेशी भाषा) ..	One who speaks many foreign languages.
285. Logic	तर्क	The science of reasoning.
286. Maidenhood	कुवाँरापन (लड़की का)	The state of being unmarried (of a girl).
287. Mammals	स्तनपायी	Animals which give birth to babies and feed them with their milk.
288. Manuscript	हस्तलिपि	Matter written by hand.
289. Maricide	पति हत्या	Killing of one's husband.
290. Martyr	शहीद	One who dies for a noble cause.
291. Masque	डांस-इमामा	A play or a dramatic performance in verse, with music, dance and fine costumes.
292. Massacre	भीषण नरसंहर	Killing of large numbers of people.
293. Materialist	भौतिकवादी	A person for whom money is the most important consideration.
294. Matins	सुबह की प्रार्थना	Morning prayer.
295. Matricide	मातृहत्या	Killing of one's own mother.
296. Matrimony	विवाह	Marriage.
297. Maxim	कहावत	A short statement of a general truth.
298. Memento	निशानी	Something kept to remember place or event.
299. Mercenary	किराए का टद्दू	One who acts only for money.
300. Metamorphosis	रूपांतरण	Complete change in appearance.
301. Meticulous	निपुण	Very particular about small details.
302. Migration	प्रवास	Movement from one country to another.
303. Misandrist	पुरुषद्रोही	One who hates males.
304. Misanthrope	मानवता द्रोही	A hater of mankind.
305. Misogamist	विवाह से घृणा करने वाला ..	Hater of marriage.
306. Misogynist	महिला से घृणा करने वाला ..	A hater of womankind.
307. Misologist	ज्ञान से घृणा करने वाला ..	Hater of learning.

308. Misoneist	पुरातनवादी	Hater of new things.
309. Missionary	धर्म प्रचारक	A person sent to teach Christian religion
310. Monastery	मठ	Place where monks live.
311. Monogamy	एक पत्नी प्रथा	The practice of keeping only one wife.
312. Mortal	नश्वर/ प्राणघातक	Subject to death.
313. Mortuary	शवगृह	A place where dead bodies are kept before post-mortem.
314. Mutilation	शरीर के अंग को काटना	Cutting off body parts.
315. Naive	सीधा-सादा	Having natural simplicity of nature.
316. Narcotics	नशीली दवाईयाँ	A medicine that induces sleep.
317. Naturalism	प्रकृतिवाद	Adherence or attachment to what is natural.
318. Neogamist	नवविवाहित	One who is recently married.
319. Nepotism	भाई-भतीजा वाद	Undue favour shown to one's own relatives.
320. Neurotic	अत्यंत संवेदनशील या चिंतित	Excessively sensitive, anxious or obsessive.
321. Newfangled	नई अनजानी चीज़	Newly developed and unfamiliar.
322. Nonentity	अस्तित्वहीन	Person of no importance.
323. Nonpareil	अद्वितीय	Person or thing which has no equal.
324. Notorious	कुख्यात/ बदनाम	Having an evil reputation.
325. Nuance	सूक्ष्म भेद	Subtle difference in colour, meaning etc.
326. Numismatics	सिक्कों की पढ़ाई	The study of coins.
327. Nursery	पौधशाला	The place where young plants are grown.
328. Obscurantist	ज्ञानोन्नति विरोधी	Person who is opposed to enlightenment.
329. Obsequies	अंतिम संस्कार	Funeral rites.
330. Obsolete	पुराना, अब प्रयोग में नहीं	That which is no longer in use.
331. Octagon	अष्टकोण	A plane figure with eight sides and angles.
332. Oligarchy	अल्पजनाधिपत्य	A government by a small group of powerful persons.
333. Omniform	सर्वाकृतिक	Having every form or shape.
334. Omnipresent	सब प्रकार का	Comprising all kinds.
335. Omnipotent	सर्वशक्तिमान	All-powerful (God).
336. Omnipresent	सर्वविभायमान	Present everywhere (God).
337. Omniscient	सर्वज्ञानी	Knowing everything (God).

338. Opaque	अपारतर्शी	That which cannot be seen through.
339. Optimist	आशावानी	A person who looks to the bright side of things.
340. Orator	वक्ता	One who makes an eloquent public speech.
341. Orchard	फलों का बगीचा	A garden of fruits.
342. Orphan	अनाधि	A child whose parents are dead.
343. Ostracize	समाज से निकालना	To turn out of society.
344. Oviparous	अंड प्रजक	Bearing eggs and not young ones.
345. Pacifist	शान्ति दूत	A person who believes in the total abolition of war.
346. Pageant	तमाशा/ लीला/ नृमाण	Elaborate public spectacle.
347. Palatable	स्वादिष्ट	Food or drink that has a pleasant taste.
348. Panacea	रामबाण	A remedy for all kinds of diseases.
349. Pandemonium	शोरगुल	A wild and noisy disorder.
350. Panegyric	प्रशংসা পত্র	Piece of writing full of praise.
351. Pantomime	मूक अभिनय	Dramatic performance with dumb show.
352. Paramour	जिस से शारीरिक संबंध हो ..	Sexual partner or lover.
353. Parasite	परजीवी	One who entirely depends on another.
354. Parasol	रंगीन छाता	A lady's umbrella.
355. Parricide	माँ व पिता का हत्यारा	Killing of both the parents.
356. Patricide	पितृहत्या	Killing of one's own father.
357. Patrimony	पैतृক	Inherited from father or male ancestor.
358. Patriot	देशभक्त	One who loves one's country.
359. Patronymic	पितृ नाम	Name derived from that of father or ancestor.
360. Pauper	कंगाल	One who has no means of livelihood.
361. Peculation	गबन	Use of public money for one's own benefit.
362. Pedantic	ज्ञान दर्शने वाला लेख	A style in which a writer makes a display of his knowledge and learning.
363. Pedestrian	पैदल यात्री	One who walks on foot.
364. Peninsula	प्रायद्वीप	Area of land almost surrounded by sea.
365. Pentagon	पंचभुज	A plane figure with five sides and angles.
366. Perceptible	इन्द्रियगोचर	That can be perceived by the senses.
367. Peroration	उपसंहार नतीजा	Concluding part of a speech.
368. Perseverance	लगन	Constant efforts to achieve something.

369. Perspicacious	तिक्ष्ण बुद्धिवाला.....	Quick in judging and understanding.
370. Perversion	विकृति.....	Change to something abnormal or unnatural.
371. Pessimist	निराशावादी	A person who looks at the dark side of things.
372. Philanderer	दिलफेंक	A man who amuses himself by love-making.
373. Philanthropist	मानवता प्रेमी	A lover of mankind.
374. Philatelist	डाक टिकट संग्राहक	Collector of stamps.
375. Philistine	कला के प्रति उदासीन	Person who is indifferent to art and literature.
376. Philogynist	औरतों से प्रेम करने वाला	A lover of womankind.
377. Philology	भाषा का अध्ययन.....	Science of study of language.
378. Pilgrim	तीर्थयात्री	One who travels to a sacred place.
379. Pioneer	अग्रसर.....	One who leads others in any field.
380. Piquant	मसालेदार/दिलचस्प	Pleasant or sharp to the taste/interesting.
381. Placard/Poster	विज्ञापन	Written or printed notice pasted in public places.
382. Plagiarism	साहित्यिक चोरी	The practice of borrowing words and ideas from other authors and using them as one's own; literary theft.
383. Platitude	घिसी-पिटी बात	Statement that is obviously true and hence dull or not stimulating.
384. Plutocracy	कुलीनतंत्र.....	A government by a rich and powerful class.
385. Polyandry	बहुपति प्रथा.....	The custom of having more than two husbands at the same time.
386. Polygamy	बहु-विवाह प्रथा.....	The custom of having more than two spouses at the same time.
387. Polyglot	बहुभाषाविद्.....	Person having command over many languages.
388. Polygon	बहुभुज	A figure with many angles or sides.
389. Posthumous	मरणोपरांत	Received after death.
390. Postscript	पश्चलेख	Anything written in a letter after it is signed.
391. Predicament	दुर्दशा	Difficult or dangerous situation.
392. Prejudiced	पूर्वाग्रही	Be biased against.
393. Premonition	पूर्वाभास	Forewarning of an impending danger.
394. Prerogative	विशेषाधिकार	Absolute right.
395. Prodigy	प्रतिभा संपन्न बालक	A child with unusual or remarkable talent.
396. Prognostication	भविष्यवाणी	Act of forecasting by examining present conditions.

401. Prologue	प्रौढ़ कथा	A speech or a poem recited at the beginning of a play.
402. Promiscuous	अमोर व्यक्ति	Having a lot of different sexual partners.
403. Proponent	प्राप्ति	Person who proposes something.
404. Propriety	सुन्दरी	State of being correct in behavior or moral.
405. Protagonist	हासिल करने वाला	An important supporter of an idea or political system/Chief actor or character in a story or drama.
406. Protectorate	रक्षणीय संघ	Country under the protection of a more powerful country.
407. Prudent	संतुलित	Wise.
408. Pseudonym	झूठी नाम	Name taken by an author instead of his real name
409. Punctitious	अतिरिक्त स्थान	Very careful to behave correctly.
410. Pyrotechnic	आगेवाली तिक्कां-कला	Art of making fireworks.
411. Quadruped	चौरापा	Four footed-animal.
412. Rebel	दंडी	One who takes up arms against the government.
413. Recapitulate	संक्षेप में दोहराना	Repeat the main points.
414. Recluse	एकांतवाली	One who lives alone and avoids company.
415. Reconcile	मेल-निलाप करना	Bring about harmony or agreement.
416. Reconnaissance	कित्ती स्थान का सैन्य सर्क्षण	Information gathering activity about enemy forces.
417. Red tapism	लाल फोटाशाही	Too much official formality.
418. Redundancy	अनावश्यकता	When something is unnecessary because it is more than what is needed.
419. Regicide	राजा की हत्या	Killing of a king.
420. Relegate/Demote	दर्जा घटाना	Reduce to a lower position.
421. Reluctant	अनिच्छुक	Unwilling
422. Remission	क्षमा	Pardon or forgiveness for breaking religious laws.
423. Rendezvous	मिलन-स्थल	Place fixed for meeting or assembling
424. Renegade	धर्मपरित्यागी	Person who changes his religious belief/support to someone else or some other nation.
425. Repartee	हाजिर जवाबी	Witty and clever answers.

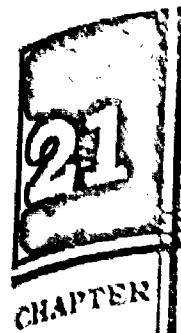
ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

- 422. Repercussion** प्रभाव Effect of some event, action or decision.
- 423. Replica** प्रतिकृति Copy or reproduction of a work of art.
- 424. Repository** गोदाम Place where things are stored for safety.
- 425. Republic** गणतंत्र A political system in which the supreme power lies in a body of citizens who can elect people to represent them.
- 426. Requiem** शांति-यज्ञ Prayer for the dead.
- 427. Restitution** खोयी/चोरी हुई वस्तु की वापसी , Return of object stolen or lost.
- 428. Retaliate** बदला लेना Return the same sort of ill-treatment.
- 429. Reticent/Taciturn** .. अल्पभाषी Person who does not speak too much,
- 430. Retrospective** पुर्वगामी An effect which has a reference to the past.
- 431. Rumour/Hearsay** ... अफवाह Unverified information.
- 432. Sacrilege** पवित्रता भंग करना Treating something holy without respect.
- 433. Sarcasm** ताना Bitter and ironical remark.
- 434. Savage** जंगली Violent and uncivilized.
- 435. Scapegoat** बलि का बकरा One who is blamed for the mistakes of others.
- 436. Sceptic** संदेही One who is doubtful.
- 437. Screech** चीखना Cry out in shrill voice.
- 438. Scrimmage** खींचातानी Confused struggle or fight.
- 439. Scurry** छोटे कदमों से तेजी से चलना... Move hurriedly with short steps.
- 440. Sedition** राजसत्ता के विरुद्ध आंदोलन.. Act or speech for inciting the public against the government.
- 441. Senility** जीणविस्था Extreme old age when a man behaves like a fool.
- 442. Siesta** दोपहर का आराम..... Period of rest or sleep after lunch.
- 443. Simultaneous** साथ-साथ Occurring at the same time.
- 444. Sinecure** जहाँ कम काम में ज्यादा पैसे मिले, An office for which high salary is paid for little or no work or responsibility.
- 445. Smother** दम घोटना..... Kill by suffocation (especially by covering the face with something).
- 446. Sojourn**..... थोड़ी देर के लिए रुकना.... Stay for a short time.
- 447. Soliloquy**..... स्वयं से एकांत में बाते करना, Speaking aloud while alone.
- 448. Somnambulist** नींद में चलने वाला..... One who walks in sleep.
- 449. Somniloquist** नींद में बोलने वाला..... One who talks in sleep.
- 450. Sonorous** सुरीला Having a deep and pleasant sound.
- 451. Sorocide** बहन की हत्या Killing of one's own sister.

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

452. Spendthrift	फिजूलखर्ची	One who spends one's money recklessly.
453. Spinster	कुवाँरी महिला	An unmarried woman.
454. Spiritualist	अध्यात्मिक	A person who believes in spiritual things.
455. Sporadic	छिटपुट	Occurring irregularly.
456. Stoic	तटस्थः	A person who is indifferent to pleasure and pain.
457. Strangulate	गला घोंटना/दबाना	Kill by putting pressure on the throat/ to apply pressure.
458. Subdue	काबू में करना	To bring under control.
459. Subjugate	अधीन करना	To bring under control.
460. Suicide	आत्महत्या	Taking of one's own life.
461. Supercilious	घमंडी	Thinking oneself superior to others.
462. Sycophant	चापलूस	Person who tries to win a favour by flattering other.
463. Synagogue	यहूदी उपासनागृह	Place where Jews worship.
464. Talkative/Garrulous ..	बातूनी	Person who is fond of talking.
465. Tantrum	आवेश	Fit of bad temper or anger.
466. Teetotaller	मद्यनिषेधी	One who abstains from alcoholic drinks.
467. Theist	आस्तिक	A person who believes in existence of God.
468. Theocracy	पादरीतंत्र	A government by religious leaders.
469. Thermometer	तापमापक यंत्र	An instrument for measuring temperature.
470. Traitor	देशद्रोही	One who betrays one's country.
471. Transgressor	पापी/ अपराधी	One who violates a rule or law.
472. Transmigration	आत्मा का शरीर बदलना	The passage of soul after death from one body to the other.
473. Transmogrification ..	कायाकल्प	Complete change in appearance or character (especially in a magical or surprising way).
474. Transparent	पारदर्शी	That allows the passage of rays of light.
475. Truant	कामचोर	One who stays away from school/work without permission.
476. Truism	स्वतः सिद्ध	A truth which is often repeated.
477. Turncoat	गदार	Disloyal.
478. Unanimous	एकमत	Consent of all.

479. Unavoidable	अपरिहार्य	That which cannot be avoided.
480. Unique	अनोखा	The only one of its type.
481. Universal	विश्वव्यापी	Belonging to all parts of the world.
482. Usurper	सम्पत्ति हड़पने वाला	One who grabs somebody's else property or title.
483. Uxoricide	पत्नी हत्या	Killing of one's wife.
484. Uxorious/Henpecked जोरु का गुलाम	Foolishly fond of one's wife.
485. Vacuous	बुद्धिहीन	Suggesting absence of thought or intellect.
486. Vendetta	वंशानुगत/ पुश्टैनी झगड़ा	Feud in which the relatives of the dead or injured take revenge.
487. Verbatim	शब्दशः	Repetition of a writing, word for word.
488.Verbose	बातों से भरा	Using or containing more words than are necessary.
489. Versatile	बहुमुखी	One who possesses many talents.
490. Verso	वामपृष्ठ	Any left hand page of an open book.
491. Vespers	शाम की प्रार्थना	Evening prayer in the church.
492. Veteran	अनुभवी	One who has grown old in or has long experience of (specially military) service or occupation.
493. Vincible	जिसे जीता जा सके	That which can be conquered.
494. Vindictive/Vengeful ..	प्रतिशोधी	Having or showing a desire for revenge.
495. Virulent	जहरीला	Highly poisonous effect.
496. Viviparous	सजीव प्रजक	Bearing living young ones and not eggs.
497. Volte-face	आकस्मिक परिवर्तन	Sudden change from one set of beliefs to other.
498. Voluntary	स्वेच्छिक	Of one's own free will.
499. Voyage	समुद्री यात्रा	Journey by water or sea.
500. Vulnerable	आघात योग्य	That which can be easily damaged or hurt.
501. Widow	विधवा	A woman whose husband is dead.
502. Widower	विधुर	A man whose wife is dead.
503. Wreathe	पुष्पहार	Flowers fastened in a circle.
504. Zealot	मताग्रही	Person who shows great and uncompromising enthusiasm for a religion, party, cause, etc.



ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

Directions: In question nos. 1 to 225, out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentence and choose the appropriate alternative which best expresses the sentences.

1. A person who has no money to pay off his debts
 (A) Insolvent (B) Poor
 (C) Destitute (D) Pauper
2. Words uttered impiously about God
 (A) amoral (B) philosophy
 (C) logic (D) blasphemy
3. A number of ships.
 (a) fleet (b) galaxy
 (c) constellation (d) group
4. One who compiles a dictionary
 (A) geographer (B) lexicographer
 (C) lapidist (D) linguist
5. A test in which cells from diseased organs are removed and tested
 (A) Biopsy (B) Autopsy
 (C) Operation (D) Amputation
6. A small room in a big house, hotel, ship etc. where glasses, dishes, spoons, food etc. are kept.
 (A) Portico (B) Pantry
 (C) Mezzanine (D) Kitchen
7. A foreigner who settles in a country.
 (A) Immigrant (B) Emigrant
 (C) Alien (D) Visitor
8. Doing something according to one's own free will.
 (A) Willfully (B) Obligingly
 (C) Voluntarily (D) Compulsorily
9. Place that provides refuge
 (A) shelter (B) house
 (C) country (D) asylum
10. A person who gambles or bets
 (A) punter (B) backer
 (C) customer (D) client
11. Art of writing for newspapers and magazines
 (A) Literature (B) Journalism
 (C) Biography (D) Artistry
12. An abandoned child of unknown parents who is found by somebody.
 (A) Foundling (B) Sibling
 (C) Urchin (D) Orphan
13. Parts of a country behind the coast or a river bank.
 (A) Swamps (B) Marshes
 (C) Hinterland (D) Isthmuses
14. A written statement about someone's character, usually provided by an employer
 (A) testimonial (B) memorandum
 (C) certificate (D) license
15. One who does not make mistakes
 (A) Pessimist (B) Optimist
 (C) Infallible (D) Hypocrite
16. Able to use the left hand and right hand equally well
 (A) ambivert (B) ambidextrous
 (C) ambivalent (D) ambitious

- 17. One who hates women**
 (A) philanthropist (B) ascetic
 (C) misogynist (D) misogynist
- 18. a system of naming things**
 (A) horticulture (B) miniature
 (C) genocide (D) nomenclature
- 19. A raised passageway in a building**
 (A) walkway (B) walkout
 (C) walkabout (D) walkover
- 20. A cure for all diseases**
 (A) laxative (B) panacea
 (C) antidote (D) purgative
- 21. One who cannot speak**
 (A) deaf (B) dumb
 (C) visionless (D) lame
- 22. Pertaining to cattle**
 (A) Canine (B) Feline
 (C) Bovine (D) Verminous
- 23. To look at someone in an angry or threatening way**
 (A) Glower (B) Gnaw
 (C) Gnash (D) Grind
- 24. A post with little work but high salary**
 (A) Director (B) Trustee
 (C) Sinecure (D) Ombudsman
- 25. Something that causes death**
 (A) Dangerous (B) Fatal
 (C) Brutal (D) Horrible
- 26. A person who writes decoratively**
 (A) Calligrapher (B) Colliery
 (C) Choreographer (D) Cartographer
- 27. A person who loves mankind**
 (A) misanthrope (B) anthropologist
 (C) philanthropist (D) mercenary
- 28. Capable of being interpreted in two ways**
 (A) confusing (B) unclear
 (C) ambiguous (D) ambivert
- 29. One who has narrow and prejudiced religious views**
 (A) religious (B) fanatic
 (C) bigot (D) god-fearing
- 30. The action of looking within or into one's own mind**
 (A) observation (B) examination
 (C) introspection (D) introvert
- 31. To confirm with the help of evidence**
 (A) corroborate (B) implicate
 (C) designate (D) extricate
- 32. One who is a dabbler in arts, science or literature:**
 (A) Dilettante (B) Aesthete
 (C) Maestro (D) Connoisseur
- 33. The time between midnight and noon:**
 (A) Afternoon (B) Antipodes
 (C) Ante – meridiem (D) Antenatal
- 34. Still existing and known :**
 (A) Extent (B) Extant
 (C) Eternal (D) Immanent
- 35. Fear of height:**
 (A) Agoraphobia (B) Hydrophobia
 (C) Acrophobia (D) Pyrophobia
- 36. The highest point**
 (A) zenith (B) height
 (C) zeal (D) ridge
- 37. Feeling inside you which tells you what is right and what is wrong :**
 (A) cleverness (B) conscience
 (C) consciousness (D) fear
- 38. Release of a prisoner from jail on certain terms and condition**
 (A) Parole (B) Parley
 (C) Pardon (D) Acquittal
- 39. Loss of memory**
 (A) Ambrosia (B) Amnesia
 (C) Insomnia (D) Forgetting
- 40. To struggle helplessly**
 (A) Flounder (B) Founder
 (C) Fumble (D) Finger
- 41. One who tends to take a hopeful view of life**
 (A) Magnate (B) creator
 (C) pacifist (D) optimist

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION (PRACTICE SET)

42. Belonging to all parts of the world
 (A) Common (B) universal
 (C) worldly (D) international
43. To be known for bad acts
 (A) Famous (B) notorious
 (C) criminal (D) terrorist
44. Words of similar meaning
 (A) Homonyms (B) pseudonyms
 (C) antonyms (D) synonyms
45. Instrument to measure atmospheric pressure
 (A) Metronome (B) compass
 (C) pedometer (D) barometer
46. A speech delivered without previous preparation
 (A) Soliloquy (B) Extempore
 (C) Rhetoric (D) Expression
47. One who pretends to be what he is not
 (A) crocodile (B) flatterer
 (C) hypocrite (D) counterfeiter
48. Study of heavenly bodies
 (A) astrology (B) astronomy
 (C) stargazing (D) astrophysics
49. An official call to appear in a court of law
 (A) summon (B) notice
 (C) memorandum (D) petition
50. To cut apart a person's body
 (A) amputate (B) mutilate
 (C) ambush (D) mitigate
51. Murder of a brother
 (A) Patricide (B) Fratricide
 (C) Homicide (D) Parricide
52. One who is filled with excessive and mistaken enthusiasm about his religion
 (A) Fatalist (B) Lunatic
 (C) Fanatic (D) Stoic
53. A list of items to be transacted at a meeting
 (A) Menu (B) Agenda
 (C) Minutes (D) Records
54. An involuntary action under a stimulus is described as a
 (A) complex (B) reflex
 (C) reflection (D) response
55. A continuous process of change is known as
 (A) transformation (B) metamorphosis
 (C) flux (D) dynamism
56. The use of many words where only a few are necessary.
 (A) circumlocution (B) circumspection
 (C) circumscription (D) circumvention
57. Circular building or hall with a dome.
 (A) edifice (B) palace
 (C) rotunda (D) spire
58. One who is a citizen not of a country but of the world.
 (A) Bohemian (B) Cosmopolitan
 (C) Philanthropist (D) Internationalist
59. An order requiring a person to attend a court.
 (A) Courtship (B) Agreement
 (C) Subpoena (D) Command
60. An imaginary name assumed by an author for disguise.
 (A) Facsimile (B) Surname
 (C) Alias (D) Pseudonym
61. An extreme fear of being in a small confined place.
 (A) Hydrophobia (B) Paraphernalia
 (C) Claustrophobia (D) Progeria
62. An inscription on a tomb.
 (A) epitaph (B) crypt
 (C) obituary (D) legacy
63. Allowance due to a wife from her husband on separation.
 (A) patrimony (B) antimony
 (C) parsimony (D) alimony
64. Practice of employing spies in war.
 (A) Esplanade (B) Espionage
 (C) Espadrille (D) Estrangement

- 65. A fixed territory in which authority can be exercised.**
- (A) Jurisdiction (B) judiciary
(C) jurisprudence (D) juristic
- 66. An appearance of objects often simulating the appearance of water:**
- (A) image (B) mirage
(C) reflection (D) refraction
- 67. The art of making fireworks :**
- (A) Chromatics (B) Numismatics
(C) Pyrotechnics (D) Cosmetics
- 68. Give off bubbles of gas :**
- (A) efface (B) effervesce
(C) effloresce (D) effuse
- 69. A system of governance controlled by persons of high intellectual ability :**
- (A) oligarchy (B) democracy
(C) meritocracy (D) snobbery
- 70. Sudden and violent change :**
- (A) Cataclysm (B) Catalysis
(C) Catacombs (D) Catechism
- 71. A small waterfall or group of waterfalls flowing down a rocky hill side is called :**
- (A) Hurricane (B) Stream
(C) Volcano (D) Cascade
- 72. One who eats human flesh**
- (A) non-vegetarian (B) vegetarian
(C) cannibal (D) man-eater
- 73. Instrument which records earth's tremor:**
- (A) Monograph (B) Geographer
(C) Seismograph (D) Barometer
- 74. The practice of a woman having more than one husband at the same time:**
- (A) Polygamy (B) Polyphony
(C) Polyandry (D) Polygyny
- 75. Specializes in nose diseases :**
- (A) Otologist (B) Rhinologist
(C) Endocrinologist (D) Gerentologist
- 76. Boundary of an area**
- (A) Porch (B) Periphery
(C) Balcony (D) Verandah
- 77. A war of religions**
- (A) Calligraphy (B) Contraband
(C) Cavalry (D) Crusade
- 78. The government by the nobility**
- (A) Bureaucracy (B) Aristocracy
(C) Autocracy (D) Oligarchy
- 79. To store and stock**
- (A) Hail (B) Hide
(C) Hoard (D) Horde
- 80. Study of relations of organisms to one another and to their surroundings**
- (A) Biology (B) Ecology
(C) Psychology (D) Physiology
- 81. A body of persons appointed to hear evidence and give their verdict in trials.**
- (A) association (B) council
(C) bar (D) jury
- 82. A person who dishonestly pretends to be somebody else :**
- (A) Imperialist (B) Impressionist
(C) Implorer (D) Impostor
- 83. Violent storm:**
- (A) weather (B) rains
(C) breeze (D) tempest
- 84. Careful and thorough enquiry :**
- (A) Investigation (B) Interview
(C) Examination (D) Exploration
- 85. A situation that stops an activity from progressing :**
- (A) Bypass (B) Breach
(C) Bottleneck (D) Block head
- 86. A disease which is spread by direct contact**
- (A) Contagious (B) Infectious
(C) Epidemic (D) Endemic
- 87. The study of ancient civilizations**
- (A) History (B) Anthropology
(C) Ethnology (D) Archaeology

88. An animal story with a moral
 (A) Fable (B) Tale
 (C) Anecdote (D) Parable
89. A thing likely to be easily broken
 (A) vulnerable (B) flexible
 (C) brittle (D) delicate
90. Body of singers
 (A) Coir (B) Quorum
 (C) Quire (D) Choir
91. Very dramatic
 (A) Histrionic (B) Hippocratic
 (C) Hirsute (D) Hoary
92. A figure of speech by which a thing is spoken of as being that which it only resembles
 (A) Metaphor (B) Simile
 (C) Personification (D) Alliteration
93. The process by which a person or an organization reduces the amount of money it spends
 (A) budgeting (B) retrenchment
 (C) saving (D) closure
94. An established principle of practical wisdom :
 (A) Marxism (B) Maxim
 (C) Neologism (D) Platonism
95. Person with whom one works
 (A) contemporary (B) companion
 (C) colleague (D) partner
96. Honesty of character
 (A) integrity (B) rectitude
 (C) honour (D) dignity
97. Expressions of sympathy
 (A) congratulation (B) condolence
 (C) compliment (D) condemnation
98. An instrument used to record sound
 (A) gramophone (B) hydrophone
 (C) phonograph (D) megaphone
99. Pertaining to horses
 (A) Equine (B) equestrian
 (C) equinox (D) equation
100. One who cannot be corrected
 (A) Incurable (B) incorrigible
 (C) hardened (D) vulnerable
101. Difficult or impossible to read
 (A) Illogical (B) illegible
 (C) ineligible (D) legible
102. An unexpected piece of good fortune
 (A) Turnstile (B) Windfall
 (C) Philanthropy (D) Benevolence
103. Those who go on to someone else's land without the owner's permission
 (A) Delinquents (B) trespassers
 (C) offenders (D) culprits
104. Something that cannot be taken away.
 (A) inalienable (B) edible
 (C) legible (D) natural
105. Scale used for measuring the strength of an earthquake.
 (A) Celsius (B) Newtons
 (C) Richter (D) Linear
106. Something kept as a reminder of an event.
 (A) Trophy (B) Souvenir
 (C) Prize (D) Antique
107. One who practises one of the fine arts:
 (A) painter (B) artist
 (C) designer (D) architect
108. A general pardon of offenders.
 (A) Parley (B) Amnesty
 (C) Parole (D) Acquittal
109. Place where wine is made
 (A) bakery (B) cloakroom
 (C) tannery (D) brewery
110. A paper written by hand
 (A) handicraft (B) handiwork
 (C) manuscript (D) thesis
111. The art of preserving skin of animals, birds and fish
 (A) taxonomy (B) taxidermy
 (C) philology (D) seismology
112. Related to moon
 (A) solar (B) moony
 (C) lunar (D) honeymoon
113. Sum of money to be paid for freeing a person from captivity.
 (A) Ransom (B) Compensation
 (C) Tribute (D) Penalty

- 114. Book giving information about every branch of knowledge.**
- (A) Directory (B) Dictionary
 (C) Encyclopedia (D) Dissertation
- 115. Member of a tribe that wanders from place to place with no fixed home.**
- (A) Vagabond (B) Nomad
 (C) Wanderer (D) Truant
- 116. Fit to be chosen.**
- (A) Eligible (B) Capable
 (C) Suitable (D) Valuable
- 117. An animal or plant living in or upon another.**
- (A) master (B) dependant
 (C) insect (D) parasite
- 118. Strong dislike between two persons**
- (A) aversion (B) antipathy
 (C) apathy (D) despair
- 119. The killing of a whole group of people**
- (A) genocide (B) germicide
 (C) patricide (D) suicide
- 120. The plants and vegetation of a region**
- (A) fauna (B) flora
 (C) landscape (D) environment
- 121. That which is without opposition**
- (A) unaware (B) verdict
 (C) unanimous (D) spontaneous
- 122. Animal that feeds on plants**
- (A) Carnivorous (B) Herbivorous
 (C) Insectivorous (D) Graminivorous
- 123. A number of stars grouped together**
- (A) Orbit (B) Constellation
 (C) Solar system (D) Comet
- 124. Lasting only for a very short while**
- (A) Transparent (B) Temporal
 (C) Temporary (D) Temperate
- 125. Murder of a man**
- (A) Regicide (B) Fratricide
 (C) Homicide (D) Genocide
- 126. Use of force or threats to get someone to agree to something**
- (A) Coercion (B) Conviction
 (C) Confession (D) Cajolement
- 127. A place where gambling is practised**
- (A) hotel (B) casino
 (C) restaurant (D) theatre
- 128. An object or portion serving as a sample**
- (A) Specification (B) Spectre
 (C) Spectacle (D) Specimen
- 129. The practice of submitting a proposal to popular vote**
- (A) Election (B) Reference
 (C) Popularity (D) Referendum
- 130. Code of diplomatic etiquette and precedence**
- (A) Statesmanship (B) Diplomacy
 (C) Hierarchy (D) Protocol
- 131. To renounce a high position of authority or control**
- (A) Abduct (B) Abandon
 (C) Abort (D) Abdicate
- 132. Talking about the affairs of other people**
- (A) teasing (B) gossiping
 (C) criticising (D) slandering
- 133. Medical examination of the body after death**
- (A) diagnosis (B) irradiation
 (C) corpse (D) autopsy
- 134. A person born or living at the same time as another**
- (A) corollary (B) accessory
 (C) contemporary (D) auxiliary
- 135. Bad beyond reform**
- (A) irreversible (B) irrevocable
 (C) irredeemable (D) irreparable
- 136. That which is certain to happen**
- (A) inevitable (B) invincible
 (C) incorrigible (D) immediate
- 137. The process of deciding the nature of a disease by examination**
- (A) test (B) perusal
 (C) diagnosis (D) operation

138. That which makes it difficult to recognise the presence or real nature of somebody or something.

- (A) cover (B) camouflage
(C) pretence (D) mask

139. To bear a hand

- (A) interfere (B) join
(C) assist (D) rejoice

140. One who makes an official examination of accounts

- (A) auditor (B) accountant
(C) clerk (D) official

141. A government by the officials

- (A) Plutocracy (B) Aristocracy
(C) Bureaucracy (D) Monarchy

142. One who offers his services without charging for them

- (A) Philanderer (B) Volunteer
(C) Mercenary (D) Missionary

143. A tank where fish or water plants are kept

- (A) aviary (B) aquarium
(C) nursery (D) sanatorium

144. Avoiding wastage

- (A) economic (B) economical
(C) minimal (D) optimational

145. Sole right to make and sell some invention

- (A) Franchise (B) Authorize
(C) Dealership (D) Patent

146. The scientific study of living organisms

- (A) Biochemistry (B) Zoology
(C) Organic chemistry (D) Biology

147. One who lives for more than a hundred years

- (A) saint (B) meteorologist
(C) demagogue (D) centenarian

148. Detaining and confining someone

- (A) Interruption (B) Interrogation
(C) Interment (D) Internment

149. An underhand device resorted to in order to justify misconduct

- (A) Subterfuge (B) Manoeuvre
(C) Stratagem (D) Complicity

150. Science of the races of mankind

- (A) Genealogy (B) Etiology
(C) Ethnology (D) Sociology

151. Impossible to describe

- (A) Miraculous (B) Ineffable
(C) Stupendous (D) Appalling

152. One who criticises popular beliefs which he thinks are mistaken or unwise

- (A) Philistine (B) Iconoclast
(C) Imposter (D) Cannibal

153. One who hides away on a ship to obtain a free passage.

- (A) Composer (B) Stoker
(C) Stowaway (D) Shipwright

154. Clues available at a scene

- (A) Circumstantial (B) derivative
(C) inferential (D) suggestive

155. An emolument over and above fixed income or salary.

- (A) Honorarium (B) Sinecure
(C) Perquisite (D) Prerogative

156. The animals of a particular region.

- (A) Flora (B) Museum
(C) Zoo (D) Fauna

157. A person who is physically dependent on a substance.

- (A) Criminal (B) Martyr
(C) Gladiator (D) Addict

158. A child born after the death of its father is called.

- (A) A deprived child (B) An orphan
(C) A posthumous child (D) A waif

159. A legal agreement by which a person borrows money from a bank usually to buy a house.

- (A) Document (B) Mortgage
(C) Lease (D) Invoice

160. Failing to discharge one's duty.

- (A) Debacle (B) Dereliction
(C) Determination (D) Deterrent

161. A movement of part of the body to express an idea or feeling.

- (A) Jibe (B) Gesture
(C) Pose (D) Mimicry



ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION (PRACTICE SET)

- 162. To surround a place with the intention of capturing it**
 (A) Bivouac (B) Besiege
 (C) Invade (D) Intern
- 163. To send back a person to one's country**
 (A) Repatriate (B) Expatriate
 (C) Migrate (D) Emigrate
- 164. One who is opposed to intellectual progress**
 (A) Impostor (B) Chaperon
 (C) Prospector (D) Obscurant
- 165. A woman with dark brown hair**
 (A) Blonde (B) Brunette
 (C) Termagant (D) Coiffure
- 166. One who has special skill in judging art, music, tastes, etc.**
 (A) Connoisseur (B) Raconteur
 (C) Sybarite (D) Amateur
- 167. One who devotes his life to the welfare and the interests of other people**
 (A) Minion (B) Martyr
 (C) Altruist (D) Fugitive
- 168. A place where animals are kept alive, and nearly as possible as in their natural state**
 (A) Vivarium (B) Orchard
 (C) Paddock (D) Zoo
- 169. One who hates mankind**
 (A) Misanthropist (B) Misnomer
 (C) Misogynist (D) Philanthropist
- 170. The period between two reigns**
 (A) Interregnum (B) Interval
 (C) Interdict (D) Intercept
- 171. One who walks in one's sleep.**
 (A) dreamer (B) somnambulist
 (C) neomatic (D) ignorant
- 172. A place where money is coined.**
 (A) mint (B) press
 (C) treasury (D) bank
- 173. The house of an Eskimo.**
 (A) hamlet (B) downy
 (C) igloo (D) hut
- 174. One who collects postage stamp.**
 (A) philatelist (B) stamp collector
 (C) vendor (D) lexicographer
- 175. What cannot be heard.**
 (A) inaudible (B) audible
 (C) unheard (D) ineffaceable
- 176. A poem of mourning.**
 (A) elegy (B) sonnet
 (C) lyric (D) epic
- 177. A game in which no one wins.**
 (A) abandoned (B) drawn
 (C) postponed (D) obsolete
- 178. Too much official formality.**
 (A) delayed (B) officiousness
 (C) formality (D) red tapism
- 179. One who knows many languages.**
 (A) linguist (B) polyglot
 (C) stylist (D) debator
- 180. That which can be carried.**
 (A) portable (B) edible
 (C) potable (D) bearable
- 181. A writer who steals ideas from others.**
 (A) plagiarist (B) copier
 (C) editor (D) translator
- 182. Examination of a dead body.**
 (A) autopsy (B) surgery
 (C) operation (D) tanning
- 183. A speech made to oneself.**
 (A) dialogue (B) speech
 (C) soliloquy (D) monologue
- 184. A commonplace remark.**
 (A) platitude (B) ramark
 (C) statement (D) epigram
- 185. That which cannot be captured.**
 (A) impregnable (B) incorrigible
 (C) imperishable (D) invincible
- 186. The study of birds.**
 (A) ornithology (B) philology
 (C) ontology (D) geology
- 187. An insect with many legs is called.**
 (A) centipede (B) mammal
 (C) herbivorous (D) vertebrate

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION (PRACTICE SET)-
188. Government in which all religions are honoured.

189. One who lives among strangers.
 (A) fanatic (B) secular
 (C) catholic (D) progressive

190. A word no longer in use.
 (A) recluse (B) alien
 (C) stoic (D) rustic

191. A sneering person who always finds faults.
 (A) cupid (B) kleptomaniac
 (C) cynic (D) crone

192. A place for keeping bees.
 (A) aviary (B) apiary
 (C) cage (D) nest

193. A long journey, especially by sea.
 (A) flight (B) voyage
 (C) odyssey (D) safari

194. A short walk for pleasure or exercise.
 (A) stroll (B) gallop
 (C) jog (D) promenade

195. A place where government or public records are kept.
 (A) attic (B) museum
 (C) cellar (D) archive

196. A person who kills somebody especially for political reasons.
 (A) criminal (B) assassin
 (C) murderer (D) hangman

197. A person who opposes another.
 (A) soldier (B) fighter
 (C) antagonist (D) prophet

198. A person who does not want to see the realities of life and tries to escape.
 (A) escapist (B) hovel
 (C) plunderer (D) scavenger

199. A person who is very selective, disgusted easily, and is hard to please.
 (A) misanthrope (B) fastidious
 (C) selector (D) ambiguous

200. A person who can be cheated easily.
 (A) credulous (B) faithful
 (C) client (D) egoist

- 215. A person who enters without any invitation.**
(A) thief (B) burglar
(C) vandal (D) intruder

216. A person who is talkative.
(A) garrulous (B) faithful
(C) client (D) egoist

217. One who cuts precious stones.
(A) lapidist (B) philatelist
(C) jeweller (D) drover

218. A hospital for recuperation or for the treatment of chronic diseases
(A) sanatorium (B) asylum
(C) farm (D) bedlam

219. A professional rider in horse races
(A) horse rider (B) jockey
(C) screw (D) rider

220. One who champions the cause of women
(A) lover (B) beloved
(C) feminist (D) womanizer

221. A man who hates marriage
(A) polyandrist (B) bigot
(C) misogynist (D) widower

222. Thick skinned animal
(A) pachyderm (B) prehensile
(C) monotreme (D) hand-skinned

223. Cow - like
(A) aquiline (B) bovine
(C) feline (D) vulpine

224. The words with opposite meanings used together
(A) oxymoron (B) irony
(C) pun (D) alliteration

225. Specialist of kidney
(A) nephrologist (B) paediatrician
(C) orthopaedist (D) oncologist

ANSWER KEY

- | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|
| 1. | (A) | 24. | (C) | 47. | (C) | 70. | (A) | 93. | (B) | 116. | (A) | 139. | (C) | 162. | (B) | 185. | (A) |
| 2. | (D) | 25. | (B) | 48. | (B) | 71. | (D) | 94. | (B) | 117. | (D) | 140. | (A) | 163. | (A) | 186. | (A) |
| 3. | (A) | 26. | (A) | 49. | (A) | 72. | (C) | 95. | (C) | 118. | (B) | 141. | (C) | 164. | (D) | 187. | (A) |
| 4. | (B) | 27. | (C) | 50. | (B) | 73. | (C) | 96. | (B) | 119. | (A) | 142. | (B) | 165. | (B) | 188. | (B) |
| 5. | (A) | 28. | (C) | 51. | (B) | 74. | (C) | 97. | (B) | 120. | (B) | 143. | (B) | 166. | (A) | 189. | (B) |
| 6. | (B) | 29. | (C) | 52. | (C) | 75. | (B) | 98. | (C) | 121. | (C) | 144. | (B) | 167. | (C) | 190. | (B) |
| 7. | (A) | 30. | (C) | 53. | (B) | 76. | (B) | 99. | (A) | 122. | (B) | 145. | (D) | 168. | (A) | 191. | (C) |
| 8. | (C) | 31. | (A) | 54. | (B) | 77. | (D) | 100. | (B) | 123. | (B) | 146. | (D) | 169. | (A) | 192. | (B) |
| 9. | (D) | 32. | (A) | 55. | (B) | 78. | (B) | 101. | (B) | 124. | (C) | 147. | (D) | 170. | (A) | 193. | (B) |
| 10. | (A) | 33. | (C) | 56. | (A) | 79. | (C) | 102. | (B) | 125. | (C) | 148. | (D) | 171. | (B) | 194. | (A) |
| 11. | (B) | 34. | (B) | 57. | (C) | 80. | (B) | 103. | (B) | 126. | (A) | 149. | (B) | 172. | (A) | 195. | (D) |
| 12. | (A) | 35. | (C) | 58. | (B) | 81. | (D) | 104. | (A) | 127. | (B) | 150. | (C) | 173. | (C) | 196. | (B) |
| 13. | (C) | 36. | (A) | 59. | (C) | 82. | (D) | 105. | (C) | 128. | (D) | 151. | (B) | 174. | (A) | 197. | (C) |
| 14. | (A) | 37. | (B) | 60. | (D) | 83. | (D) | 106. | (B) | 129. | (D) | 152. | (B) | 175. | (A) | 198. | (A) |
| 15. | (C) | 38. | (A) | 61. | (C) | 84. | (A) | 107. | (B) | 130. | (D) | 153. | (C) | 176. | (A) | 199. | (B) |
| 16. | (B) | 39. | (B) | 62. | (A) | 85. | (C) | 108. | (B) | 131. | (D) | 154. | (A) | 177. | (B) | 200. | (A) |
| 17. | (D) | 40. | (A) | 63. | (D) | 86. | (A) | 109. | (D) | 132. | (B) | 155. | (C) | 178. | (D) | 201. | (B) |
| 18. | (D) | 41. | (D) | 64. | (B) | 87. | (D) | 110. | (C) | 133. | (D) | 156. | (D) | 179. | (B) | 202. | (D) |
| 19. | (A) | 42. | (B) | 65. | (A) | 88. | (A) | 111. | (B) | 134. | (C) | 157. | (D) | 180. | (A) | 203. | (A) |
| 20. | (B) | 43. | (B) | 66. | (B) | 89. | (C) | 112. | (C) | 135. | (C) | 158. | (C) | 181. | (A) | 204. | (C) |
| 21. | (B) | 44. | (D) | 67. | (C) | 90. | (D) | 113. | (A) | 136. | (A) | 159. | (B) | 182. | (A) | 205. | (D) |
| 22. | (C) | 45. | (D) | 68. | (B) | 91. | (A) | 114. | (C) | 137. | (C) | 160. | (B) | 183. | (C) | 206. | (A) |
| 23. | (A) | 46. | (B) | 69. | (C) | 92. | (A) | 115. | (B) | 138. | (B) | 161. | (B) | 184. | (A) | 207. | (A) |

IDIOMS AND PHRASES - 1

5.9. PHRASES		हिन्दी में अर्थ	Meaning in English
1.	Achilles' heels	कमज़ोर पक्ष	A small but fatal weakness.
2.	Add fuel to fire	आग में धो डालना	To make a matter worse.
3.	An arm chair job	आसान पूर्ण अच्छी आय	Good income job with high
		वाली नैकरी	comfort.
4.	An axe to grind	स्वार्थ से भरा उद्देश्य	Something done for selfish reasons.
5.	An iron-will	दृढ़ इच्छा शक्ति	Strong will power.
6.	An old flame	पुराना प्यार	A person with whom one had a romantic relationship in the past.
7.	An old head on young shoulders	अपनी उम्र से ज्यादा	A child or young person who thinks and talks like an older and experienced person.
8.	An olive branch	शांति निवेदन	Peace request/ peace treaty.
9.	Apple of discord	झगड़े का कारण	Matter of dispute.
10.	Apple of one's eye	दुलाय, प्यार	Very lovable/ dearest one.
11.	Apple-pie-order	बिलकुल ठीक हालत में	In good condition
12.	At a loss	निर्णय न ले पाना	To be unable to decide.
13.	At a pinch	समस्या में होना	In a trouble.
14.	At arm's length	दूर रखना (दोस्ती न रखना)	Avoid becoming too friendly.
15.	At daggers drawn	कट्टर दुरमनी होना	To have bitter enmity.
16.	At ease	चिन्ता रहित	Free from pain and anxiety.
17.	At one's finger's tips	पूर्ण जानकारी होना	To have complete knowledge.
18.	At one's wit's end	चकित	Puzzled / confused / perplexed.
19.	At sixes and sevens	अस्त-व्यस्त	In disorder.
20.	At stake	दाव पर	At risk and insecure.
21.	At the eleventh hour	अन्तिम समय में	At the last moment.
22.	Backstairs gossip	नैकरों के बीच का गपशप	Talk among servants/ unfair talks.

23. **Bad blood** शत्रुता Enmity/ bitter relations.
24. **Bag and baggage** बोरिया-बिस्तर समेत With all belongings.
25. **Baker's dozen** संख्या में तेरह Thirteen in number.
26. **Be born with a silver spoon in one's mouth** धनी परिवार में पैदा होना To be born in a rich family.
27. **Be in the driving seat** सारी जिम्मेदारी का भार उठाना .. Bearing all responsibilities.
28. **Bear the brunt of**..... परिणाम भुगतना To bear the main part of something unpleasant.
29. **Beat about the bush** घुमा-फिरा कर बातें करना To talk in a roundabout manner/ circumlocution.
30. **Beat black and blue** अत्यधिक पिटाई करना Beating mercilessly.
31. **Beat hollow** काफी आसानी To defeat thoroughly and even बुरी तरह से पराजित करना convincingly.
32. **Beck and call** आज्ञा में रहना Ready to obey order instantly.
33. **Bed of roses** आनंद से भरपूर Pleasant situation of comfort.
34. **Bed of thorns** दुःख एवं तकलीफ से भरपूर A situation of extreme difficulty.
35. **Beggar description** अवर्णनीय A person with no resources.
36. **Bell the cat**..... जोखिम उठाना Taking first step at personal risk.
37. **Between the devil and the deep sea** दो गंभीर परेशानियों के बीच Between two difficult situations.
38. **Big gun** ऊँची पहुँच वाला व्यक्ति An influential person
39. **Bird of passage** यदा-कदा आनेवाला One who comes occasionally.
40. **Bird's eye view** सरसरी निगाह Overview.
41. **Birds of a feather** एक ही प्रवृत्ति के लोग People with the same idea, characteristics and interests.
42. **Bite the dust** पराजित होना To be defeated.
43. **Black sheep** ऐसा व्यक्ति जो परिवार / टीम के A person who is regarded as लिए शर्मीदगी का कारण बने disgrace for his family/ team etc.
44. **Blind alley** कार्य जिसमें आगे प्रगति A situation in which no further संभव नहीं progress can be made.
45. **Blind date** किसी अंजान व्यक्ति से मिलना.. A meeting between a girl and a boy, who have not met before.
46. **Blow one's own trumpet** अपने मुँह मियाँ मिट्रू To praise oneself.
47. **Blue blood** शाही व्यक्ति Royal or aristocratic descent.
48. **Blue book** सरकारी रिपोर्ट Government report.
49. **Body and soul** पूर्णतया Entirely.
50. **Bolt from the blue** आकस्मिक विपत्ति Unexpected problem.
51. **Bone of contention** झगड़े की वस्तु/कारण Subject of a dispute.



IDIOMS & PHRASES - I

51. **Boon/blessing in disguise** छिपा हुआ धरदान Hidden blessing.
52. **Bosom friend** जिगरी दोस्त Fast friend.
53. **Break the ice** चुप्पी तोड़ना To start a conversation.
54. **Breathe one's last** मर जाना To pass away / to die.
55. **Broad day light** दिन-दहाड़े In day light (when crime cannot be hidden).
56. **Broken reed** अविश्वासी व्यक्ति A weak, unreliable person.
57. **Brown study** विचारमग्नता A state of deep thought.
58. **Bull in the china shop** ... जो जगह के अनुकूल न हो One who is out of place in a delicate situation.
59. **Burn a hole in the pocket** शीघ्रता से खर्च करना Money spent quickly.
60. **Burn one's fingers** खुद का नुकसान कर बैठना To get oneself into trouble.
61. **Burn the candle at both ends** फिजूलखर्ची करना To waste money.
62. **Burn the midnight oil** ... देर रात तक मेहनत करना Labouring/studying till late night.
63. **Burning question** ज्वलन्त प्रश्न Hot issue.
64. **Bury the hatchet** दुश्मनी खत्म करना To end a hostility.
65. **By fits and starts** रुक-रुक कर अनियमित रूप से Irregularly.
66. **By hook or by crook** गलत या सही किसी भी ढंग से.. By any means, right or wrong.
67. **By leaps and bounds** दिन दूनी और रात चौगुनी At a rapid pace.
68. **By the skin of one's teeth/** थोड़े से अंतराल से Narrowly/by a hair breadth by a whisker
69. **Carry the coal to newcastle** बेवजह मेहनत करना Spending time and energy in doing something that is useless and wastage of energy.
70. **Cast pearls before swine** बंदर के हाथ में नारियल A right thing in the wrong hands.
(किसी वस्तु को ऐसे व्यक्ति
को देना जो उसका मूल्य न समझे)
71. **Castles in the air** हवाई किला बनाना Day dream / a hope or desire unlikely to be realized.
72. **Cat and dog life** कलहपूर्ण जीवन Troublesome life.
73. **Catch a tartar** शत्रु या बहुत बड़ी परेशानी से ... To grapple with an unexpectedly formidable opponent.
74. **Cat's paw** निजी स्वार्थ के पूर्ति में जिस A person used by another as व्यक्ति का प्रयोग किया जाए..... a dupe or tool.
75. **Chew the cud** मनन करना To ponder over / meditate.
76. **Chicken hearted** कायर Lacking courage / cowardly.
77. **Cock-and-bull story** मनगढ़त कहानी A concocted story.

79. **Crocodile tears** दिखावटी आँसू A false display of grief.
80. **Cross swords** लड़ना To quarrel or fight.
81. **Cry for the moon** किसी असंभव वस्तु की कामना To desire the unattainable.
करना
82. **Cry over spilled milk** व्यर्थ पछताना..... Regret in vain for what cannot be
undone.
83. **Cut a sorry figure** अपने प्रयास से तनिक भी To give a poor show.
प्रभाव न छेड़ना
84. **Cut both ways** दोनों ही पार्टी के पक्ष में Argue in favour of both sides.
तर्क करना
85. **Cut no ice** कोई असर नहीं डालना To fail to make an impression.
86. **Cut one's coat according to one's cloth** अपनी आय के अनुसार To live within one's means.
87. **Dance to one's tune** हुक्म का पालन करना Obeying one's order.
88. **Dark horse** जो अप्रत्याशित रूप से जीत जाए..One who wins unexpectedly.
89. **Dead letter** कानून, जो कभी लागू..... A law or ordinance that is no
था लेकिन अब लागू नहीं है। longer enforced.
90. **Democle's sword** सिर पर मंडराता खतरा..... Constant threat.
91. **Die a dog's death** लज्जाजनक मौत मरना..... To die a shameful death.
92. **Die in harness** अपने कार्यावधि के दैशन Die while in service.
ही मृत्यु होना
93. **Dog in the manger** जो दूसरो को उस सुख A person who prevents others
का भोग करने नहीं देता है from enjoying what he cannot.
जो उसके किसी काम का नहीं
94. **Donkey's years** काफी समय बाद A long time.
95. **Draw a line** मर्यादा तय करना Set a limit.
96. **Duck in a thunder storm** व्यथा में In a painful condition.
97. **Eagle eyed** तेज नजर वाला With keen eyesight.
98. **Eat humble pie** शर्मान्दगी झेलना To apologize.
99. **Eat one's words** शब्द वापस लेना..... Take a statement back.
100. **Elbow room** काम करने की स्वतंत्रता Sufficient scope to move or
function.
101. **End in smoke** कोई परिणाम न निकलना..... Come to nothing.
102. **Escape one's lips** बोल जाना Speak unintentionally or
unexpectedly.
103. **Fabian policy** सावधानीपूर्ण मन्दगति नीति..... Deliberate slow policy/ policy of
delaying decisions.
104. **Fair and square** निष्पक्ष In an honest way .
105. **Fair sex** नारी जाति Women.

IDIOMS & PHRASES - 1

106. Fair weather friend	मुसीबत में साथ न देने वाला मित्र	Selfish friends who are with us only in comfortable situation.
107. Fancy price	मुंहमांगी कीमत	At any cost/ at demanded price.
108. Feather in the cap	अच्छी उपलब्धि	Additional success.
109. Feather one's nest	अपने पद का लाभ .. उठा कर कमाई करना, मविष्य के लिए जुगाड़ करना टालना	To enrich oneself by taking advantage of one's position.
110. Fight shy of	To attempt to avoid a thing or person.
111. Fish in troubled waters ..	विषम परिस्थिति का लाभ टालना ..	To take advantage of the problems of others.
112. Fish out of water	कष्टप्रद अवस्था में	Out of one's usual and comfortable place.
113. Fly in the ointment	असुविधा	A slight unpleasant thing that obstructs the enjoyment of something.
114. Fool's paradise	झूठी उम्मीद में खुश होना	A state of being happy for foolish or unfounded reasons.
115. Forty winks	झपकी	A nap.
116. French leave	विना सूचना के अनुपस्थित होना ..	A leave without information or permission.
117. Fringe benefits	वेतन के अलावा मिलने .. वाला लाभ	An additional benefit apart from salary.
118. From hand to mouth	सिर्फ गुजारा भर	Providing only bare essentials.
119. Gala day	आनंदोत्सव का दिन	Celebration day.
120. Get away with	बच निकलना	To escape.
121. Get down to	काम गंभीरतापूर्वक आरंभ करना ..	To attend to work seriously.
122. Get into a soup	झंझट में पड़ना	Get into trouble.
123. Get into hot water	समस्या में फँसना	Get into trouble.
124. Get off scot free	अदण्डित निकल जाना	To escape without punishment.
125. Get on one's nerves	तंग करना	To irritate or annoy.
126. Gibble-gabble	मूर्खतापूर्ण वार्तालाप	Foolish talk.
127. Gift of the gab	चतुराईपूर्वक धारा प्रवाह .. वोलने की शक्ति	Talent for speaking.
128. Give a piece of mind	डॉटना	To rebuke or scold.
129. Go through fire and water ..	कोई भी खतरा मोल लेना ..	To brave any danger.
130. Go to dogs	व्यर्थ होना	To deteriorate/ degenerate.

131. Go to rack and ruin बिनाश होना To decay or get destroyed.
132. Good Samaritan दयालु व्यक्ति A person who helps and pays sympathy to those in distress.
133. Grass widow ऐसी विवाहिता जिस का पति उससे दूर हो A woman who is separated, divorced or lives apart from her husband.
134. Grease the palm रिश्वत देना To bribe.
135. Green room अभिनेता का भेष-भूषा का कमरा A lounge in a theatre or studio for the performers to get ready.
136. Grist to one's mill फायदेमंद Something that can be used for one's advantage.
137. Halcyon days खुशगवार दिन Peaceful days.
138. Hammer and sickle समाजवाद का प्रतीक A symbolic representation of communism in general.
139. Hammer and tongs बहुत अधिक मेहनत से With great effort or energy.
140. Hand and glove with अच्छे सहयोग से In close co-operation.
141. Hang by a thread बहुत नाजुक स्थिति में होना Be in a risky situation.
142. Hard nut to crack जटिल समस्या/ व्यक्ति A difficult problem to solve/ A person difficult to understand.
143. Haul over the coals कोसना, भर्त्सना करना To take to task, to reprimand.
144. Have finger in the pic ... किसी कार्य में शामिल रहना To be involved in something.
145. Have one's hands full काम की कमी नहीं होना To be completely occupied.
146. Have one's way अपनी इच्छा के अनुसार The way one wants.
147. Have several irons एक ही समय कई कार्यों में To be involved in many projects in the fire शामिल होना or activities at the same time.
148. Hen-pecked husband जोरू का गुलाम Admirer of one's own wife in a servile manner.
149. Herculean task बहुत कठिन कार्य Task requiring tremendous effort.
150. High and dry अकेला In a deprived situation (alone).
151. High handed निरंकुश Overbearing.
152. High living ऐश आराम की जिन्दगी Living with comfort and ease.
153. Hit below the belt गलत तरीके से प्रहार करना To strike unfairly.
154. Hit the jackpot बड़ी कामयाबी मिलना Gaining a big/ great success (especially by luck).
155. Hit the nail on the head सही समय पर सही To do the right thing at the बात/कार्य करना right time
156. Hobson's choice कोई विकल्प न होना No alternative.

157. Hole and corner policy ..	गुप्त नीति	Secret policy.
158. Hue and cry	हो-हल्ला.....	Any loud public outcry.
159. Hush money	किसी बात को गुप्त रखने के	Money given to someone to लिए दिया जाने वाला पैसा..... keep something secret.
160. In a nutshell	संक्षेप में	In very brief form.
161. In black and white	लिखित में	In printed or written form.
162. In full swing	पूरे जोरों पर	At the height of activity.
163. In the blues	दुःख/संताप में	In dumps/depressed.
164. In the long run	अन्ततः:.....	Ultimately.
165. In the nick of time	ठीक समय पर	At the last possible moment.
166. In the same boat	एक ही हालात में	Sharing the same problems.
167. In vogue	प्रचलित	In the current fashions.
168. Ins and outs	विस्तृत विवरण	Intricacies or complications/ full detail.
169. Iron hand / Iron fist	कड़ाई से	Rigorous control.
170. Itching palm	रिश्वत लेने की आदत होना.....	Craving for bribe.
171. Itsy bitsy	अत्यन्त छोटा	Very small or tiny.
172. Jack of all trades and master of none	जो आदमी किसी भी काम में ... A person who knows many निपुण न हो, लेकिन सभी	different kinds of work but is a कार्यों की जानकारी रखता हो master of none.
173. Jail bird	जो जेल में हो या पहले'	A person who is or has been रह चुका हा
174. Jaundiced eye	पक्षपातपूर्ण दृष्टिकोण.....	To look at something with a prejudiced view.
175. Judas kiss	झूठा प्यार	False love.
176. Jump to a conclusion	बिना सोचे-समझे नतीजे पर	To come to a conclusion पहुँच जाना
177. Kangaroo court	गैर-कानूनी न्यायालय	An illegal court.
178. Keep one's cards close .. to one's chest	किसी बात को छिपाना	Hiding something.
179. Keep one's fingers crossed	किसी अच्छी घटना के होने की . To wait expectantly. कामना करना	
180. Keep one's word	प्रतीजा पूरी करना	To keep one's promise.
181. Keep the ball rolling	जारी रखना	To maintain the progress of a project or plan.
182. Keep the wolf from the door	दरिद्रता से संघर्ष करना.....	To avert poverty/ starvation.

IDIOMS & PHRASES - I

- 183. Kill two birds with one stone** ... एक कार्य करके दो समस्याओं से Doing two things at the same time while effort is made for one
निपट लेना time while effort is made for one
- 184. Kith and kin** बन्धु-बान्धव Blood relations.
- 185. Knit one's brow** त्यौरियाँ चढ़ाना (गुस्सा करना) .. To frown.
- 186. Lady's man** जो महिलाओं के संगत में रहना . A man who is fond of the
पसंद करता हो company of women.
- 187. Lame excuse** असंतोषजनक बहाना False excuse/ baseless excuse.
- 188. Left-handed compliment** प्रशंसा के रूप में अपमान An insult disguised as a
compliment.
- 189. Lion's share** सबसे बड़ा हिस्सा Large part.
- 190. Live in an ivory tower** ... सम्पन्नता में जीना एवं Living in comfort and being
आम लोगों के दुःख से unaware of realities of others'
खुद को दूर रखना miseries.
- 191. Loaves and fishes** व्यक्तिगत लाभ Material benefit.
- 192. Look off colours** अस्वस्थ दिखाई देना Look ill or unhealthy.
- 193. Look through coloured glasses** झूठे आवरण से देखना To see with different/ wrong
views.
- 194. Lump in the throat** गला भर जाना (भावनात्मक क्षण में) A tight or uncomfortable feeling
in throat due to emotions.
- 195. Mad as a march hare** सिरफिरा Crazy and insane.
- 196. Make a clean breast** सच कबूल लेना To confess especially something
bad or illegal.
- 197. Maiden name** विवाहिता स्त्री का विवाह से A women's surname before
पूर्व का नाम marriage.
- 198. Maiden speech** प्रथम सार्वजनिक भाषण First speech.
- 199. Make a hash** गड़बड़ कर देना To mess up.
- 200. Make a mountain out of a mole hill** बात का बतंगड़ बनाना To exaggerate a minor difficulty.
- 201. Make both ends meet** ... आय के अंदर ही गुजारा करना.. To live within one's means.
- 202. Make hay while the sun shines** मौके का लाभ उठाना To take the benefit of an
opportunity.
- 203. Make or mar** बनाना या बिगड़ना To make or destroy.
- 204. Make the best of both the worlds** दोनों हाथ में लड्डू Getting benefited from both the
sides.
- 205. Make up one's mind** निश्चय करना To decide.
- 206. Man of means** समृद्ध व्यक्ति A wealthy man.
- 207. Man of iron** दृढ़ इच्छा शक्ति वाला Man with strong will-power.
- 208. Man of letter** विद्वान आदमी Learned person.

IDIOMS & PHRASES - 1

209. **Man of parts** सुयोग्य व्यक्ति A man of qualities.
210. **Man of spirit** उत्साहित व्यक्ति A man full of enthusiasm.
211. **Man of straw** वह आदमी जिसका कोई मत न हो A weak person.
212. **Man of the world** अनुभवी व्यक्ति An experienced person.
213. **Man of word** जुबान का सच्चा True to one's word.
214. **Mare's nest** झूठी अफवाह A false invention.
215. **Midas touch** जादूई शक्ति (जिस काम में हाथ) A man with extraordinary power or capacity to make any venture profitable.
216. **Mince matters** ज्यादा सख्त शब्दों के प्रयोग से बचना To moderate or restrain one's language.
217. **To mind one's P's and Q's** शिष्टाचार का पूरा ध्यान रखना Taking care of behaviour properly.
218. **Miss the beat** अवसर खोना To lose an opportunity.
219. **Mother wit** आम जानकारी Common sense.
220. **Move heaven and earth** आकाश-पाताल एक करना To try one's best.
221. **Much cry and little wool/राई का पहाड़ बनाना** Lot of fanfare for something which has very little importance.
222. छं तत्कू मे बं चमधब स्मे मै औ अम बाल-बाल बचना To escape by a little margin.
223. **Nig-nag** जो लगातार परेशान करें A noun used to address someone (African-American
के लिए नस्ल-सूचक शब्द
के रूप में प्रयुक्त शब्द)
224. **Nine day's wonder** कम समय का सुख (चार दिन की चाँदनी) Something that arouses great interest but for a very short period.
225. **Nip in the bud** आरंभ में ही नष्ट कर देना To put an end to something in its initial stage.
226. **Null and void** बेकार Ineffective.
227. **Nurse a grudge** शत्रुता भाव कायम रखना Bear resentment for long period.
228. **Oily tongue** खुशामद की भाषा Flattering words.
229. **On one's guard** सावधान/सचेत रहना Vigilant.
230. **On one's last legs** खत्म होने की स्थिति में होना Close to collapsing.
231. **Once for all** हमेशा के लिए (काम खत्म करना) For the last time/ Conclusively.
232. **Open question** सवाल जिस का एक से अधिक उत्तर हो सकता है। A question which may have more than one answer.

233. **Palmy days** अच्छे व शार्तपूर्ण दिन Prosperous/ affluent days.
234. **Pandora's box** समस्याओं का भंडार A source of extensive but (जिससे वाकिफ न हो) unforeseen troubles.
235. **Part and parcel** आवश्यक अंग Inseparable part.
236. **Past master** विशेषज्ञ An expert.
237. **Pay the piper** खर्च वहन करना To bear the cost of something/ some service rendered.
238. **Pay through his nose** अत्यधिक खर्च वहन करना To pay dearly.
239. **Penny wise pound foolish** छोटे खर्च में किफायत करना Careful about trifles but wasteful और बड़ी रकम उड़ाना in large ventures.
240. **Pick up the gauntlet** चैलेंज कबूल कर लेना To accept the challenge.
241. **Play ducks and drakes** .. पैसे बर्बाद करना To waste money.
242. **Play second fiddle** निचला स्थान स्वीकारना To be at a subordinate position.
243. **Play truant** बिना इजाजत काम से To be absent from duty without गायब रहना permission.
244. **Poison someone's ears** .. कान भरना To speak against one to another.
245. **Poke one's nose** टाँग अड़ाना To Interfere.
246. च्वनत वफ़सवद जावनइस्मकू जमते क्रोध शांत करना To pacify the matters.
247. **Pros and cons** पक्ष और विपक्ष For and against.
248. **Pull ones' legs** टाँग खिंचना (मजाक उड़ाना) ... To make fun of or to tease.
249. **Pull the wool over somebody's eyes** धोखा देना To mislead.
250. **Put a spoke in one's wheel** तंग करना/ बाधा उत्पन्न करना ... To obstruct.
251. **Put in cold storage** काम को लम्बित कर देना To keep a work pending.
252. **Put one's foot down** अपने प्राधिकार को दर्शाना To act firmly.
253. **Put one's shoulders** स्वयं अपने प्रयासों से किसी To work or exert oneself heavily. to the wheel कार्य को करना
254. **Put the cart before the horse** कोई काम उल्टे सिरे से To do things wrongly. प्रारंभ करना
255. **Put the cat among pigeons** गलत काम/ बात से काफी To say/ do something that लोगों का गुस्सा भड़का देना causes trouble or make many very angry.
256. **Quarrel with one's bread and butter** जहाँ से रोजी-रोटी मिलती To fight with the executive or है, वहाँ के वरिष्ठ अधिकारी employer, who is providing one's से लड़ना means of living.
257. **Queer fish** अजीब व्यवहार वाला व्यक्ति Strange person.
258. **Rain cats and dogs** तेज बारिश होना Rain very heavily.

IDIOMS & PHRASES- 1

259. Rainy day	आर्थिक कष्ट के दिन	Future time of need, especially financial need.
260. Read between the lines .	छिपा हुआ अर्थ समझ जाना.....	To understand the hidden meaning.
261. Red handed	अपराध करते समय	Exactly while committing a crime or doing something wrong
262. Red letter day	सौभाग्य का अत्यन्त महत्वपूर्ण दिन	A memorably important or happy occasion.
263. Red tapism	लाल फोटाशाही	Strict adherence to excessive paper work and official formalities.
264. Rest on one's laurels	भूतकाल के उपलब्धि पर निर्भर रहना	Depending on the achievement made in the past.
265. Rhyme or reason	किसी भी कारण से.....	Sense, logic or meaning.
266. Right hand man	मुख्य सहायक व्यक्ति	One's most valuable assistant or supporter.
267. Rise like a phoenix from its ashes	बहुत बड़ी समस्या से उबर कर .. निकल आना	To make a miraculous comeback after a seemingly insurmountable setback.
268. Rock the boat	संतुलन बिगाड़ना.....	To disturb a situation which was otherwise stable.
269. Rolling stone	जो स्थिरता के साथ कार्य नहीं करता है	A restless person.
270. Royal road	आसान रास्ता	An easy or direct way of achieving a desired result.
271. Rule the roost	रोब जमाना	To dominate.
272. Run amuck	सनक सवार होना	Mad with murderous frenzy.
273. Run in the same groove	संबंधों को मधुर बनाए रखना	Maintaining a sweet relationship.
274. Run-of-the mill	सामान्य	Average/ common.
275. Run the gauntlet	बुरे अनुभव से गुजरना.....	To go through an unpleasant experience.
276. Sail under false colours	धोखा देना	To pretend to be something that you are not.
277. Save ones' skin	स्वयं को बचाना	To save oneself.
278. See eye-to-eye	पूर्णतः सहमत होना	Showing agreement/ to agree.
279. See pink elephants	अत्यधिक नशा के .. कारण उन चीज़ों को देखना	Any visual hallucination arising due to intoxication.
280. See red	जो वास्तव में न हो गुस्से में होना	Be very angry.

281. See through	समझ जाना	Comprehend/ understand.
282. Set at naught	असम्मान करना	To disregard or treat as of no importance.
283. Set one's face against ...	कड़ा विरोध करना	To oppose with determination.
284. Set one's heart on	बहुत चाहना	To have as one's ambition to obtain something.
285. Set one's teeth on edge.	परेशान करना.....	To irritate or annoy someone.
286. Set the Thames on fire .	आश्चर्यजनक कार्य करना.....	To achieve something amazing.
287. Shoulder to shoulder	पूर्ण सहयोग के साथ	With united effort.
288. Show white feather	भय प्रदर्शित करना	To show cowardice.
289. Sine die	अनिश्चित काल के लिए.....	Indefinitely.
290. Sit on the fence.....	किसी का पक्ष नहीं लेना	Refuse to take side in a dispute.
291. Slip of the tongue	जुबान फिसलना	Spoken unintentionally.
292. Slow coach	आलसी व्यक्ति	A person with lazy approach of working.
293. Small fry	गैर महत्वपूर्ण व्यक्ति	Insignificant person.
294. Smell a rat	कुछ गलत है-ये..... महसूस कर लेना	To suspect that something wrong has been done.
295. Smooth sailing	परेशानी के बिना	Easy progress.
296. Snake in the grass	आस्तीन का सांप/ कपटी मित्र ...	A secret enemy.
297. Shake in the shoes	डर से काँपना	To tremble with fear or apprehension.
298. Sow the dragon's teeth .	भविष्य के लिए पेरेशानी इकट्ठा करना	To create future troubles for yourself or others.
299. Speak one's mind	मन की बात करना	Speak what one really thinks.
300. Spick and span	साफ-सुथरा	In order/ neat and clean.
301. Stand on one's own legs	आत्म-निर्भर होना	To be self dependent.
302. जं दक्खै जम्हा ज्व वदमष्टे हनदे	अटल रहना	To be strict and determined.
303. Stand somebody in	लाभदायक सिद्ध होना	To be of great use and benefit to someone.
304. Steal a march	चुपके से लाभ प्राप्त कर लेना...	To obtain an advantage by secret means.
305. Step into another's shoes	किसी दूसरे की जगह लेना.....	To take over a job/responsibility of some other person.
306. Stiff-necked person	ढीट	Stubborn or arrogant.
307. Stir a finger	कोशिश करना	Making effort.
308. Stone's throw	बहुत नजदीक	Very near.

309. Street Arabs	बेघर एवं अनाथ	A homeless person (especially who survives by begging).
310. Sum and substance	सारांश	Main idea or gist.
311. Swan song	मरने/ सेवानिवृति के पहले की ... The last ceremony or farewell.	
312. Sweat of one's brow	बिदाई संगीत या समारोह	
313. Swelled head	कड़ी मेहनत	Hard labour.
314. Sworn enemies	घमंडी	Grand opinion of oneself/conceited.
315. Take away one's breath	कट्टर दुश्मन	People hating each other a lot.
316. Take by storm	भौचक्का कर देना	To overwhelm with surprise.
317. Take into account	अचानक प्रभावित करना	To surprise unexpectedly.
318. Take one at one's word	पर विचार करना	To consider.
	किसी के कहने पर	To be convinced of one's sincerity and act in accordance with his/her statement.
319. Take the bull by the horns	संकट का सीधा एवं खतरनाक तरीके से सामना करना	To adopt the most direct but the most dangerous way of facing a difficulty.
320. Take to one's heels	भाग जाना	To run away.
321. Talk big	डींगें मारना	To boast or brag.
322. Talk of the town	चर्चित बात	To be the person or subject everyone is talking about.
323. The printer's devils	छपाई त्रुटि	Error in printing.
324. Think twice	सोच समझ कर निर्णय लेना	To consider carefully before deciding.
325. Through thick and thin	सभी परिस्थितियों में	In good and bad times.
326. Throw cold water upon	हतोत्साहित करना	To discourage.
327. Throw down the gauntlet	चैलेंज करना	To challenge.
328. Tooth and nail	पूरी ताकत से	Violently.
329. True to one's salt	वफादार नमक हलाल	Loyal person.
330. Turn a deaf ear to	अनसुना करना	Not to pay attention to.
331. Turn over a new leaf	बुरे आचरण छोड़ अच्छी दिशा में पूर्ण रूप से बदलना	To be entirely changed (for good).
332. Turn the corner	किसी कार्य में आये संकटपूर्ण स्थिति से उबर जाना	To pass through a critical point in a process.
333. Turn turtle	उलट-पलट जाना	To overturn.
334. Turn up one's nose at	नीचा समझना	To take lightly with contempt.

335. **Under the nose of** आँखों के सामने, नाक के नीचे . Right in front of someone.
336. **Under the thumb of** के वश में होना Under the power or influence of.
337. **Up and doing** काम में सक्रिय रूप से लगाना ... Active in work.
338. **Up one's sleeves** छिपा के रखी गई वस्तु जिसका . An item kept hidden and used
प्रयोग जरूरत पड़ने पर करें whenever required.
339. **Uphill task** बहुत कठिन कार्य Difficult task.
340. **Upon one's sweet will** अपनी इच्छा पर..... On self desire or wish.
341. **Ups and downs** उतार-चढ़ाव Good and bad times.
342. **Utopian scheme** आदर्श किन्तु कार्यान्वित न A visionary scheme though
होने वाली योजना Impractical.
343. **Weather the storm** समस्या से मुकाबला कर Survive by coming out of
सुरक्षित बाहर निकलना difficulties.
344. **Well-to-do** सम्प्रांत Affluent.
345. **Wet blanket** मजा किरकिरा करने वाला One who spoils the enjoyment.
346. **Wheels within wheels** ... जटिल कार्य का और..... A series of intricately connected
जटिल होना events
347. **White elephant** महंगा परंतु बेकार Expensive but of no use.
348. **White lie** छोटा एवं गैर-महत्वपूर्ण झूठ A minor lie.
349. **Will o' the wisp** भ्रामक उम्मीद Elusive/ unreal.
350. **Windfall** ऐसा लाभ जिस की Sudden gain received
उम्मीद ना हो unexpectedly.
351. **With a grain of salt** स्वीकार करना लेकिन शंका के साथ To accept with misgiving.
352. **With one accord/ in one voice** एक स्वर में Unanimously,
353. **Wolf in sheep's clothing** मित्रता जताने वाला A malicious person in harmless
खतरनाक आदमी or benevolent disguise.
354. **Word for word** शब्दशः In exactly the same words.
355. **Word of mouth** अनौपचारिक वार्तालाप Informal oral communication.
356. **Yeoman's service** अति उत्तम Excellent work.

IDIOMS AND PHRASES - 2

'LET'S USE THEM IN SENTENCES'

1. **Above board** (*honest and straightforward*, ईमानदारी एवं निष्ठा)- Gandhi ji was above board and hence had nothing to hide.
2. **Adam's ale** (*pure water*, शुद्ध जल)- In the remotest parts of Rajasthan, people walk miles for Adam's ale.
3. **Add a new feather in one's cap** (*to acquire a new honour or distinction*, कोई नया सम्मान प्राप्त करना)- Paramount Coaching Centre has added a new feather in its cap by starting Paramount Reader Publication .
4. **Add insult to injury** (*to harm as well as humiliate*, जले पर नमक छिड़कना) - She has added insult to injury by returning the gift and sending a 'get lost' note.
5. **After one's own heart** (*similar to you*, जो आप के जैसा ही है)- Seeing your inclination towards art and literature, I can say that you are clearly a person after my own heart.
6. **An eye wash** (*a pretence*, दिखावा)- The whole investigation was just an eye wash as no one was held guilty.
7. **A hair-breadth escape** (*very narrow escape*, बाल-बाल बचना)- He had a hair-breadth escape when his bike skid on the oil drenched road.
8. **An old flame** (*long time love*, पुराना प्यार)- He saw his old flame in the market yesterday but prudently avoided eye contact .
9. **An old head on young shoulders** (*to be more matured than one's own age*, अपनी उम्र से ज्यादा समझदार होना)- He is an old head on young shoulders as he teaches Physics at a university at a young age of 25 .
10. **As fit as a fiddle** (*strong and healthy*, स्वस्थ)- He feigned illness but I knew that he was as fit as a fiddle.
11. **Assume airs** (*to pretend superiority*, बड़प्पन दिखाना)- After becoming an IAS officer he has assumed airs.
12. **At a stone's throw** (*at a little distance*, थोड़ी दूरी पर)- Lal Quila is at a stone's throw from my house.
13. **At large** (*absconding*, कानून के गिरफ्त से दूर)- Many terrorists are at large and posing serious threat to the security of India.

14. **At loggerheads** (*to be at strife, शत्रुता की अवस्था*) - Congress is always at logger heads with the BJP.
15. **At naught** (*to disregard or treat as of no importance, असम्मान करना*) - Leaders today set Gandhiji's ideals at naught.
16. **At odds** (*in disagreement, असहमत होना*) - Various political parties are at odds in the matter of Women Reservation Bill.
17. **At sea** (*to be confused, उलझन में*) - He was at sea when he saw the question paper.
18. **At one's beck and call** (*at service, आज्ञा में हाजिर रहना*) - The servants were always at the beck and call of the rich merchant.
19. **Backstairs influence** (*improper and private influence, ऐसा प्रभाव जो असार्वजनिक हो एवं सही नहीं हो*) - He tried to get a government job by backstairs influence.
20. **Bad egg** (*a worthless person, अवांछनिय व्यक्ति*) - Often a prodigal son of a rich father becomes a bad egg for the society.
21. **Bandy words** (*to argue, जुबान लड़ाना*) - The two neighbours usually bandy words and create a lot of nuisance.
22. **Bank upon** (*depend on, count on, पर निर्भर होना*) - You can bank upon us at the time of need.
23. **Bated breath** (*holding your breath, in anxiety, चिंता इत्यादि से साँस रुकना*) - We waited for the good news outside the delivery room with bated breath.
24. **Caught red-handed** (*to be caught while committing a crime, रंगे हाथ पकड़े जाना*) - My brother felt ashamed when he was caught red handed reading my personal diary.
25. **Be in the bad books of** (*out of favour, कृपा पात्र न होना*) - She is in the bad books of her parents as she went to see a movie without informing them.
26. **Be in the bad odour of** (*to be out of favour, किसी की बुरी राय में होना*) - A corrupt minister is always in bad odour of the public.
27. **Be in the good books of** (*to be in kind favour, कृपा पात्र होना*) - She is in the good books of her employer as she is very efficient and hardworking.
28. **Be in the good odour of** (*to be in good favour, किसी की अच्छी राय में होना*) - An honest minister is always in the good odour of the public.
29. **Be in the driving seat** (*to take the whole responsibility, सारी जिम्मेदारी का भार उठाना*) - Ramesh is the eldest son and so he is in the driving seat after his father's death.
30. **Bear the palm** (*to be victorious, विजयी होना*) - Our school bore the palm in the dance competition held at the district level.
31. **Beat the air** (*to make useless efforts, व्यर्थ प्रयास करना*) - Trying to reform a hard-core criminal is like beating the air.
32. **Bed of roses** (*an easy and comfortable situation, सरल और आराम की स्थिति*) - The life of the prince was a bed of roses.
33. **Bee in one's bonnet** (*go on talking about something which other people think is not important, राग अलापना उस बात का जो दूसरों के लिए महत्वपूर्ण नहीं हो*) - She has a bee in her bonnet about recycling of waste material.
34. **Behind the scene** (*secretly, छिपे रूप में*) - The minister is the mastermind behind the scene and the police are arresting small fries.

35. **Below the belt** (*to strike unfairly*, अलौकिक से प्रहर करना)- One must compete with others in a fair manner and should not hit anyone below the belt. C
36. **Beside oneself** (*to feel extremely nervous or worried*, बहुत अधिक चिन्तित या व्याकल होना)- Before any exam I am beside myself.
37. **Beside the mark** (*irrelevant*, अप्राप्य)- The judge did not hear any argument that was beside the mark.
38. **Between Scylla and Charybdis** (*between two great dangers*, दो कठिन परिस्थितियों के बीच)- She is between Scylla and Charybdis: If she obeys her mother-in-law she will lose her job and if she does not she will lose her family.
39. **Bid defiance** (*to defy*, अवश्य करना)- The army is bidding defiance by going against the government.
40. **Bite the dust** (*to be defeated*, लार जाना)- In every match , the Pakistani team bit the dust.
41. **Blaze the trail** (*to be a pioneer and make path for others*, दूसरों के लिए रास्ता बनाना)- Only a man of iron can blaze the trail.
42. **Blessing in disguise** (*something intrinsically good but having a bad appearance*, ऊपर से बुरी दिखने वाली पर वास्तव में अच्छी बात)- He missed the train but it was a blessing in disguise as the train met with an accident.
43. **Blow one's own trumpet** (*to praise one's ownself*, अपनी ही शेषी बघारना)- Every political party always blows its own trumpet and denounces the other political parties.
44. **Blue stocking** (*an educated intellectual lady*, पढ़ी लिखी महिला)- A blue stocking was rarely found in Medieval India.
45. **Book worm** (*a bibliophilic person*, किताबी कीड़ा)- She is not a book worm but still comes first.
46. **Break the ice** (*to break silence by speaking first*, निस्तब्धता तोड़ना)- Shyam broke the ice by talking to me after a long time.
47. **Bring down the house** (*receive great applause*, भरपूर तारीफ पाना)- The performance of Lata Mangeshkar brought the house down.
48. **Bring home** (*to explain*, समझाना)- I was unable to bring my views home before my parents.
49. **Bring to book** (*to punish*, सजा देना)- The guilty should be brought to book.
50. **Bring to light** (*to disclose*, पता लगाना, छिपी बात को प्रकाश में लाना)- The CBI has brought many indiscretions to light in many high profile cases.
51. **Brow beat** (*to intimidate*, डराना)- The Government must not brow beat the social reformers if they protest against any unjust law.
52. **Burn one's boats** (*point of no return*, वापसी का रास्ता बंद कर देना)- By signing the agreement he burnt his boat. Now he will have to work in this organization for two more years.
53. **By and by** (*gradually*, धीरे-धीरे)- You will learn the norms of this organization by and by.
54. **By and large** (*on the whole*, संपूर्ण रूप से देखने पर)- My friend is by and large an honest person.

55. **By dint of** (*by means of*, के बल पर)- You can succeed by dint of hard work only.
56. **By fair or foul means** (*by any way right or wrong*, सही या गलत किसी भी प्रकार से)- He will try to get a job by fair or foul means but will ultimately lose his peace of mind.
57. **By the rule of thumb** (*according to practical experience*, व्यवहारिक रूप से)- By rule of thumb we must not allow children to take major decisions.
58. **Call a spade a spade** (*to be frank*, मुँहफट बात करना)- He never hesitated in calling a spade a spade and hence he has few friends.
59. **Call names** (*to abuse*, गाली देना)- He has a bad habit of calling names.
60. **Capital punishment** (*death penalty*, मौत की सजा)- Capital punishment should be abolished as it is the cruelest form of punishment.
61. **Carrot and stick policy** (*reward and punishment policy*, इनाम और सजा की पॉलिसी)- The multinational companies adopt carrot and stick policy to get maximum output.
62. **Carry matters with a high hand** (*to deal with a person strictly*, सख्ती से निपटना)- The police carry matters with a high hand.
63. **Cast a slur** (*to bring disgrace*, अपयश का कारण बनना)- Taking bribe could cast a slur on the honour of your family.
64. **Cave in** (*yield*, झुक जाना)- One must not cave in under pressure or temptation.
65. **Chapter and verse** (*in full detail*, पूर्ण विवरण के साथ)- I cannot narrate the whole incident in chapter and verse.
66. **Cheek by jowl** (*close together*, साथ-साथ)- Many poor people live cheek by jowl in a small room.
67. **Child's play** (*a very easy task*, बच्चों का खेल)- It is not a child's play to address a crowd.
68. **Clinch the issue** (*to clear the controversy*, विवाद खत्म करना)- The college administration clinched the issue by accepting the demands of the students.
69. **Clip one's wings** (*to weaken the power*, पर कतरना)- Sonia Gandhi clipped the wings of some ministers by withdrawing the powers delegated to them.
70. **Close shave** (*a narrow escape*, बाल-बाल बचना)- His family had a close shave in the bus accident.
71. **Cloven hoof** (*symbol of disgrace or evil intention*, असम्मान या शैतानी इरादे का प्रतीक)- Usually some or other leader of the BJP shows cloven hoof to the BJP leadership.
72. **Cock a snook** (*to show impudent contempt*, असम्मान प्रकट करना)- He refused to accept the award, cocking a snook at the Filmfare Award jury.
73. **Cock sure** (*very sure and certain*, सुनिश्चित होना)- I am cock sure, we will win the match.
74. **Cold reception** (*not a hearty welcome*, जो गर्मजोशी से भरा स्वागत नहीं हो)- We were very unhappy when we were given cold reception at his marriage party.
75. **Come across** (*meet by chance*, अचानक मुलाकात होना)- I came across a problem when I was solving the equation.
76. **Come home to** (*to understand*, समझ में आना)- At last, it came home and we got the correct answer.
77. **Come in handy** (*to be useful*, काम का होना)- This opener comes in handy when we need to open this container.

IDIOMS & PHRASES- 2

78. **Come to a pass** (*a difficult situation*, किसी घटना का होना)- The accident came to pass due to the negligence of the driver.
79. **Come true** (*to prove true*, सही साबित होना)- My dreams have come true as I have got selected.
80. **Cool one's heels** (*to be kept waiting*, इन्तजार कराया जाना)- We sat down and cooled our heels for the minister who didn't turn up.
81. **Corporal punishment** (*bodily punishment*, शारीरिक दण्ड)- Corporal punishment is banned in schools.
82. **Count chickens before they are hatched** (*To anticipate profit before hand*, पहले से लाभ का विश्वास कर लेना)- Don't dream of profit now as it is futile to count your chickens before they are hatched.
83. **Cross one's mind** (*to occur to oneself*, अचानक दिमाग में आना)- I was resting when suddenly a new idea crossed my mind.
84. **Curry favour** (*to win favour by flattery*, खुशामद करके कृपा का पात्र बनाना)- Many developing countries curry favour with America.
85. **Curtain lecture** (*a private scolding by wife to her husband*, अकेले में पति को दो गई डाट)- Don't tell me that your father has never got any curtain lecture in his life.
86. **Cut both ends** (*to argue in support of both sides of the issue*, दोनों पक्षों के तरफ से तक़ देना)- Mahesh always cuts both ends and hence he has neither friends nor foes.
87. **Cut the Gordian knot** (*to solve a difficult problem*, किसी कठिन समस्या का हल निकालना)- The national leaders cut the Gordian knot by making India a secular country.
88. **Cut throat** (*tough*, कठीन)- We face cut throat competition in every field.
89. **Damp squib** (*complete failure though earlier thought to be exciting*, पूर्ण असफलता, जो लगता था उत्तेजनात्मक होगा)- The performance of team India turned out to be a damp squib.
90. **Dance attendance upon** (*to be in servile attitude all the time*, चापलूसी करना/ हाजिरी कराना)- The mother-in-law wanted the lady to dance attendance upon her.
91. **Dark Horse** (*unexpected winner*, अप्रत्याशित विजेता)- An unknown independent candidate came out as a dark horse after the election.
92. **Days of reckoning** (*a time when the effects of one's past mistakes or misdeeds catch up with one*, जब भूतकाल में की गई गलतियों का असर दिखने लगे)- You have been manipulating the account for a long time. Now days of reckoning have come.
93. **Dead broke** (*penniless*, दिवालिया)- Due to recession he has become dead broke.
94. **Die-hard** (*obstinately resistant to change*, परिवर्तन के खिलाफ दृढ़ता से होना)- He is a die-hard fan of Devanand.
95. **Dig one's own grave** (*to do something which causes you harm*, ऐसा कृत्य जो मुसीबत में डाल दे)- You are digging your own grave by writing your password in your diary.
96. **Dog's life** (*very miserable life*, कष्टदायक जीवन)- Due to unchecked inflation, the poor are living a dog's life.
97. **Double dealing** (*deceitful actions*, धोखेबाजी के कार्य)- The double dealing of the lawyer was exposed by a sting operation.

98. **Double-edged sword** (*act that will harm oneself as well as the others*, ऐसा कार्य जो दूसरे को और स्वयं को भी नुकसान पहुंचा सके)- Corruption is a double-edged sword for the public as well as the Government.
99. **Down and out** (*lacking funds, resources or prospects*, फण्ड, संपदा इत्यादि की कमी होना)- He was down and out when his factory was burnt to the ground.
100. **Down in the mouth** (*filled with melancholy and despondency*, दुख एवं निराशा से परा होना)- She was down in the mouth when she saw her husband's dead body.
101. **Draconian law** (*extremely severe law*, अत्यन्त क्रूर कानून)- There are still many draconian laws in under developed countries.
102. **Draw the long bow** (*to tell large stories or to exaggerate*, लम्बी कहानियाँ बनाना या बढ़ा-चढ़ा कर कुछ बताना)- Come to the point. Don't draw a long bow.
103. **Drawn battle / match** (*a battle or match in which no party wins*, बराबर की बाजी होना)- The drawn battle created a lot of excitement till the last ball.
104. **Drop in the ocean** (*very insignificant amount*, अत्यन्त ही थोड़ी मात्रा)- My knowledge about Archeology is only a drop in the ocean.
105. **Ducks and drakes** (*to waste money*, पैसे बर्बाद करना)- I cannot allow you to play ducks and drakes with my hard earned money.
106. **Dutch courage** (*bravery under alcoholic influence*, शराब के नशे में दिखाये जाना बाला साहस)- His dutch courage will vanish when he will gain his sense.
107. **Easy money** (*bribe, रिक्वत*)- Many officers make easy money.
108. **Eat one's word** (*to admit that something you said in the past was wrong*, ये स्वीकार करना कि कही हुई बात गलत थी)- Those who said that Amitabh Bachchan's charm was over had to eat their word after the success of Kaun Banega Crorepati.
109. **Egg on** (*to urge somebody to do some thing that is generally wrong*, कुछ गलत कार्य करने के लिए प्रोत्साहित करना)- He egged me on to drive faster.
110. **Eke out** (*to support (existence) with difficulty and effort or to add (something insufficient), especially with effort*, बहुत मुश्किल से कुछ उपलब्ध कराना)- He is trying to eke out an income by doing overtime.
111. **Elixir of life** (*nectar of life*, जीवन का अमृत)- Contentment is the elixir of life.
112. **Enough and to spare** (*plentiful*, प्रचुर मात्रा में)- He earns enough and to spare.
113. **Ever and anon** (*now and then*, जब-तब)- The night was dark and we could hear the howling of dogs ever and anon.
114. **Every dog has his day** (*good fortune comes sooner or later*, अच्छा दिन सबका आता है)- When he bagged three movies in a row, he realized that every dog has his day.
115. **Every inch** (*completely*, पूर्ण रूप से)- She looks every inch a winner.
116. **Eye wash** (*ineffective remedy which is just for show*, सिर्फ दिखावे का)- The committee set up to look into the multiple scams was just an eye wash.
117. **See eye-to-eye** (*showing agreement/ to agree*, पूर्णतः सहमत होना)- The two competitors never see eye to eye.
118. **Face the music** (*to face opposition*, कठिनाई या विरोध का सामना करना)- Every leader has to face the music if he doesn't fulfill promises made by him.

IDIOMS & PHRASES - 2

119. Fan the flame (to aggravate, झल्ल करना)- I don't want to fan the flame of the tension between the husband and the wife.
120. Few and far between (very rare, दुर्घट करना)- The houses in this remote village are few and far away.
121. Fight to the finish (to fight to the end, अखेर तक लड़ना)- When she was blamed and sued without any rhyme or reason, she pledged to fight the case to the finish.
122. Fish in troubled waters (to take advantage of the difficulties of others, दूसरों की परेशी का लाभ लेना)- Many lawyers don't hesitate from fishing in troubled waters.
123. Fit to hold a candle to (match for, equal in quality, बरबारी का होना)- He is such a miser that he is not fit to hold a candle to such a lavish reception.
124. Flash in the pan (something or someone that become successful quickly and is unlikely to be repeated, अच्छी वजह से जल्दी चमक जाने वाली वजह)- The success of Kumar Gaurav in his debut movie 'Love Story' was a flash in the pan.
125. Flesh and blood (human nature or physical existence, together with its weaknesses / substance and depth in artistic portrayal, लाड-जाँत का होना/ किसी कला में पारी जाने वाली गहराई)- The movies of late seventies lacked flesh and blood with their ketchup blood and round the tree romance.
126. Flog a dead horse (to waste one's energy, बेकार को कोशिश करना)- Trying to reform a terrorist is like flogging a dead horse.
127. Fly in the face of (to defy/ to brave/ to withstand, अज़ला करना/ साहस से सामना करना)- The theory about the existence of heaven and hell flies in the face of all logic and common sense.
128. Fly into a passion (to be enraged, झेपें होना)- He flies into a passion within seconds if someone ignores his instructions.
129. Fool's errand (a fruitless mission or undertaking, निष्कृत कार्य)- Many projects of Mohammad-bin-Tuglaq were fool's errands.
130. Foot the bill (bear expenses, बच्चे बहन करना)- You had ordered these tasteless pizzas . Now you will have to foot the bill.
131. For good (for ever, हमेंता के लिए) He educated him and sent him to America for good.
132. For the rainy day (precaution for emergency, कठिन परिस्थितियों के लिये प्रबन्ध)- I have kept some money in the bank for the rainy days.
133. Foul Play (treachery, धोखाधड़ी)- Foul play destroys the fun of life.
134. French leave (leave without information, बिना सूचना के अनुपस्थित होना)- If you take french leave, you will be fined.
135. From the bottom of one's heart (very sincerely, अन्तर मन से)- I thanked him from the bottom of my heart for his timely help.
136. Gain ground (to progress/ advance, तरक्की करना/ वर्चस्व बढ़ाना)- Due to the misgovernance by the ruling party, the opposition is gaining ground.
137. Gentleman at large (wealthy man with time on his hands, धनी व्यक्ति जिसके पास समय की कमी न हो)- Here he was, talking like a gentleman at large who was free to come and go and roam about the world at pleasure.

- 138. Get down to brass tacks** (*discuss the basic facts or realities/ to deal with the matter straight, किसी मुख्य विषय पर चर्चा करना*) - After avoiding the thorny question of tax reforms for months, the ruling party finally got down to brass tacks last week and drafted a preliminary proposal.
- 139. Get into a scrape** (*find oneself in a difficult or awkward situation, खुद को सुशिकल हालात में पड़ना*) - By signing the bond he will get into a scrape.
- 140. Get the better of** (*to overcome, काबू पा लेना*) - At last he got the better of his problems and opponents.
- 141. Get wind of** (*to know the secret, भेद जान लेना*) - The opposition got the wind of the plans of the ruling party.
- 142. Gird up the loin** (*to be well prepared for some difficult task, किसी कठिन कार्य को करने के लिए कमर कस कर तैयार होना*) - If we all gird up the loin, we can remove illiteracy.
- 143. Give a wide berth** (*to give ample space or distance to avoid an unwanted consequence, किसी अवांछनिय नतीजे से बचने के लिए दूरी बनाये रखना*) - Being an understanding father, you should give a wide berth to your son and wait for the right time to talk to him.
- 144. Give cold shoulder** (*pay no attention to, ध्यान न देना*) - He went to the police for help but they gave him the cold shoulder.
- 145. Give somebody enough rope (to hang themselves)** (*to allow someone to do what he wants to, knowing that he will probably fail or get into trouble, किसी को कुछ करने की अनुमति दे देना ये जानते हुए कि वह असफल हो जाएगा*) - Don't stop him. Give him enough rope to hang. He will be rejected for his poor performance and will return home.
- 146. Give the devil his due** (*even the wicked person should be given the credit due to him, बुरे आदमी की भी उचित प्रशंसा करना*) - In spite of being so rude, he helped me in need. The devil should be given his due.
- 147. Give up the ghost** (*to die, मर जाना*) - My grandfather gave up the ghost last Sunday.
- 148. Give vent to** (*to express one's thoughts or feelings, अपने विचारों या भावनाओं को प्रकट करना*) - Every Indian is free to give vent to his thoughts.
- 149. Wool-gathering** (*to engage in fanciful daydreaming, मनभावन कल्पना में खोए रहना*) - Work hard. Wool gathering will not help you in any way.
- 150. Go back on one's word** (*to change one's mind about/ repudiate, बात से फौछे हट जाना*) - She has decided to do charity and she should not go back on her word.
- 151. Go broke** (*become bankrupt, दिवालिया होना*) - He has gone broke and is unable to make both ends meet..
- 152. Whole hog** (*the whole way/ completely, पूर्ण रूप से*) - She went the whole hog and checked the account of the whole month in one go.
- 153. Golden opportunity** (*very favourable opportunity or chance, सुनहरा अवसर*) - He missed the golden opportunity by declining the offer.
- 154. Green horn** (*an inexperienced or immature person, especially one who is easily deceived, अनुभवहीन व्यक्ति जिसे बेकूफ बनाना आसान हो*) - He incurred heavy loss because he relied on the green horn who was his own nephew.

IDIOMS & PHRASES- 2

155. **Hang in balance** (*have two equally possible results/ be uncertain, अनिश्चय की स्थिति*) - After the opposition party won the election, whether or not the new highway will be built, hangs in the balance.
156. **Hang over one's head** (*to have something bothering or worrying one, परेशानी या समस्या का बने रहना*) - He committed suicide because troubles and court cases hung over his head.
157. **Hard and fast** (*definite, निश्चित*) - There is no hard and fast rule for solving these numericals.
158. **Harp on the same string** (*to keep on talking on the same topic, एक ही विषय पर बात करते रहना*) - Some obsessed people have the habit of harping on the same string.
159. **In the nick of time** (*at the last possible moment, ठीक समय पर*) - I reached the examination hall in the nick of time.
160. **Heart and soul** (*with complete faith and dedication, सच्चे दिल से*) - He has put heart and soul in his work.
161. **Heart to heart** (*very frankly, पूरे दिल से, खुले रूप से*) - The two friends had a heart to heart talk as they met after many years.
162. **Hen-pecked husband** (*admirer of one's own wife in a servile manner, जोरू का गुलाम*) - Every boy boasts, "I will never become a hen pecked husband."
163. **Himalayan blunder** (*a serious mistake, गंभीर गलती*) - He committed a Himalayan blunder by leaving for work without his body guards and was shot dead.
164. **Hit the nail on the head** (*to act in the right way, ठीक निशाने पर चांट मारना*) - You have hit the nail on the head by making the bid at the right time.
165. **Hold good** (*valid/ applicable, लागू उचित ठहराना*) - Rule of triple talaq doesn't hold good even in the Islamic countries.
166. **Hold one's ground** (*to stand firm, दृढ़ता से डटे रहना*) - The Indian soldiers held their ground to the end.
167. **Hold one's jaw** (*to stop talking, बोलना बन्द होना*) - Please hold your jaw else I shall go away.
168. **Hold the fort** (*to stand firm on one's position, अपने स्थान पर डटे रहना*) - Our soldiers held the fort and proved their valour.
169. **Hold the scales even** (*to be impartial, निष्पक्ष रहना*) - The Judge must hold the scales even.
170. **Hold water** (*to stand up to critical examination, सही साबित होना*) - Your argument does not hold water.
171. **Hot water** (*trouble, परेशानिया*) - Your cousin is in hot water due to his controversial speech.
172. **In a fix** (*in a difficult mental state, मानसिक उलझन में*) - He was in a fix when he saw his mother in ICU.
173. **In a tight corner** (*in difficult situation, मुश्किल हालात में*) - I found myself in a tight corner when I lost my journey ticket.
174. **In doldrums** (*to be depressed, निराशा में*) - He was found in doldrum when he could not succeed even in his third attempt.
175. **In embryo** (*immature/ in the making, अविकसित अवस्था में*) - My plan of expanding my business is still in embryo.

176. **In no time** (*in a very short time, थोड़ी ही देर में*) - He can solve any mathematical problem in no time.
177. **In one's teens** (*from thirteen to nineteen years of age, तेरह से उन्नीस साल तक*) - A person in his teens is spirited, full of dreams and optimistic.
178. **In the air** (*in circulation/ in people's thoughts, चर्चा में*) - News of his cold blooded murder is very much 'in the air'.
179. **Down in the dumps** (*unhappy, depressed, दुखी/ निराश*) - He is down in the dumps after his father's death.
180. **In the family way** (*pregnant, गर्भवती*) - She has applied for leave as she is in the family way.
181. **In the good books of** (*to be in favour with a person, पक्ष में करना*) - People usually flatter their boss to remain in their good books.
182. **In the jaws of** (*in the grip of, दांतों के बीच, किसी के कब्जे में*) - The boy was in the jaws of the kidnappers.
183. **In the limelight** (*at the centre of attention, आर्कषण का केंद्र*) - Film stars are habitual of remaining in the lime light.
184. **In the lurch** (*in a difficult and embarrassing position, मुश्किल एवं बीच मंज़ूधार वाली स्थिति में*) - When the experiment failed, the subordinates left the eminent scientist in the lurch.
185. **Melting pot** (*a place where immigrants of different cultures or races form an integrated society, ऐसा स्थान जहाँ अप्रवासी लोग अपनी-अपनी सभ्यता के साथ एक समाज बनाते हैं*) - With immigrants from all over the world getting an easy passage to India, our country is becoming a melting pot.
186. **In the red** (*in debt, कर्ज में*) - The company is in the red due to its unfeasible projects.
187. **In the teeth of** (*in opposition to or defiance of/ facing danger or threats, के विरुद्ध/ खतरे का समना करना*) - The tribe was in the teeth of starvation.
188. **In the twinkling of an eye** (*in a moment/ in no time, क्षण भर में*) - The house came down in the twinkling of an eye.
189. **To fish in troubled waters** (*to take advantage of the problems of others, विषम परिस्थिति का लाभ उठाना*) - Many self-centred lawyers fish in troubled water.
190. **For all intents and purposes** (*for all practical purposes, हर व्यावहारिक उद्देश्य के लिए*) - This dictionary is useful for all intents and purposes.
191. **Snake in the grass** (*a secret enemy, आस्तीन का सांप/ कपटी मित्र*) - Politicians playing caste based politics are snakes in the grass.
192. **Keep abreast of** (*not to fall behind, पीछे न रह जाना*) - We must keep ourselves abreast of the latest developments in technology.
193. **Keep an eye on** (*to watch, नज़र रखना*) - It is very necessary for us to keep an eye on our growing children.
194. **Keep an open table** (*to entertain all, सब का स्वागत करना*) - It is not very difficult to keep an open table in a party.
195. **Keep at an arm's length** (*to keep at a distance, दूरी बना कर रखना*) - You must keep bad habits at arm's length.

196. **Keep at bay** (*To keep someone at a distance, दूर रखना*) - He held the police at bay with a gun for several hours.
197. **Keep body and soul together** (*to be able to pay for just those things that you need in order to live, सिफ़ जीवन-यापन भर का जुगाड़ कर पाना*) - They can barely keep body and soul together on what he earns.
198. **Keep the pot boiling** (*to keep going on actively, जीकर यापन जारी रखना*) - One has to keep the pot boiling inspite of all odds one has to face in life.
199. **Keep up appearance** (*to keep one's prestige/to maintain outward show, आहटी/विश्वासी बाही रखना*) - Inspite of being bankrupt, he is able to keep up his appearance.
200. **Kick one's heels** (*wait impatiently to be summoned, बुलाने के लिए चैराबी से फौजार करना*) - The whole day we kicked our heels outside the court room.
201. **Kick the bucket** (*to die, मर जाना*) - He kicked the bucket and left his family in extreme financial difficulty.
202. **Kill the fat calf for** (*to arrange a lavish reception for someone, किसी का धूमधाम से खाना करना*) - India killed the fat calf for the Common Wealth Games.
203. **Kiss the dust** (*to be humiliated, अपमानित होना*) - In Indo-Pak war our enemies had to kiss the dust.
204. **Knock against** (*to hit against, टक्कर खाना*) - I couldn't see the transparent door and knocked against it.
205. **Lapped in luxury** (*brought up in luxury, विलासित में पलना*) - Great people are generally not lapped in luxury.
206. **Laugh in one's sleeves** (*to laugh secretly, चुपके से*) - Our neighbours laughed in their sleeves when they saw my grand father wearing a pair of fashionable goggles.
207. **Lead by the nose** (*to lead someone by coercion/ to guide someone very carefully, दबाव में या मार्गदर्शन करने हेतु किसी को रास्ता दिखाना*) - I had to lead him by the nose to the meeting. He will never find his way through the admission form unless you lead him by the nose.
208. **Lead to the altar** (*to marry, शादी करने जाना*) - He promised her to lead her to the altar.
209. **Leap in the dark** (*to do something though there is uncertainty about the outcome, अनिश्चित परिणाम होने पर भी कोई कार्य करना*) - To play lottery is to leap in the dark.
210. **Leave no stone unturned** (*to make all possible efforts, कोई भी प्रयत्न बाकी न छोड़ना*) - He worked very hard to pass the Civil Services Exams and left no stone unturned.
211. **Leave one in the lurch** (*to leave one in difficulties, किसी का कठिनाईयों में साथ छोड़ देना*) - He kicked the bucket and left his family in the lurch.
212. **Let by-gones be by-gones** (*to forget old things, पुरानी बातों को भूल जाना*) - India and Pakistan must start bi-lateral talks and let by-gones be by-gones.
213. **Lick the dust** (*to get defeated, हर जाना*) - The team licked the dust in the final match.
214. **Lie in wait** (*wait in hiding to attack, घात लगाये बैठे रहना*) - The policemen were lying in wait for the kidnappers.
215. **Live in an ivory tower** (*where one can be aloof from the realities of life, जहाँ जीवन की वास्तविकता से दूर रहते हैं*) - The queen lived in an ivory tower and did not know the meaning of poverty.

- 216. Long and short** (*all that can or need be said, सारांश*) - The long and short of the whole discussion will be made available to all in black and white.
- 217. Look down upon** (*To hate a person, किसी व्यक्ति से धृणा करना*) - I hate those people who look down upon the poor.
- 218. Lose the day** (*to be defeated, हर जाना*) - My favourite football team lost the day.
- 219. Make a fortune** (*To grow rich, धनी बन जाना*) - He made a fortune by selling smuggled goods.
- 220. Make after** (*to pursue or chase, पीछा करना*) - The people made after the chain snatcher and caught him.
- 221. Make amends** (*to compensate, हज़ोरा देना*) - He had to make amends for his bad behaviour.
- 222. Make head or tail of** (*to understand, समझना*) - The doctor could not make the head or tail of his illness.
- 223. Make one's mark** (*to achieve distinction, अपना प्रभाव छोड़ना*) - India has made its mark in the field of technology.
- 224. Make out** (*to understand, समझ लेना*) - I could not make out what he was saying.
- 225. Make up the leeway** (*struggle out of a bad position, especially by recovering lost time, गंवाँ चुके समय की क्षतिपूर्ति करके बुरे हालात से निकलना*) - The Government will have to make up the leeway by taking remedial actions immediately.
- 226. Make up one's mind** (*To determine, निश्चय करना*) - She has made up her mind to divorce her cruel husband.
- 227. Make a clean breast** (*to confess especially something bad or illegal, किसी गुनाह का सच कबूल लेना*) - After months of lying about the money, he decided to make a clean breast of it and tell the truth.
- 228. Man in the street** (*common man, साधारण व्यक्ति*) - The life of a man in the street has become very difficult because of rising prices.
- 229. Man of iron** (*man with strong will-power, इच्छा शक्ति वाला*) - Nothing can deter a man of iron.
- 230. Meet half-way** (*to be prepared for compromise, समझौते के लिए राजी होना*) - We were ready to meet the other party half way and settle all litigation.
- 231. Milk of human kindness** (*human compassion, मानवता से भरा हृदय*) - Milk of human kindness is necessary for the existence of humanity.
- 232. Narrow circumstances** (*hard days/ poverty, गरीबी के दिन*) - After his father's death, he is living in narrow circumstances.
- 233. Neither chick nor child** (*no child, कोई बच्चे का न होना*) - She feels very lonely because she has neither chick nor child.
- 234. No love lost** (*having no love, किसी प्रकार का प्रेम/मित्रता का न होना*) - There is no love lost between these two neighbours who are fighting an endless court case.
- 235. Nook and corner** (*at every place, प्रत्येक स्थान पर*) - I searched for my book in every nook and corner of the house.
- 236. Oil someone's hands** (*to bribe, रिश्वत देना*) - We should stop oiling the officials' hands.

IDIOMS & PHRASES- 2

237. **Beauty is only skin deep** (*physical beauty is not important*, वाही मूरता प्रत्यक्षीपुरुषी)- She took a wrong decision by not marrying this gentleman. She doesn't know that beauty is only skin deep.
238. **On and on** (*to continue*, जारी रखा)- She went on and on but nobody listened to her.
239. **On the horns of a dilemma** (*to face a difficult situation between two problems*, पृश्निका विशेषज्ञता के बीच बैंगन)- The demolition drive has put many shops on the horns of a dilemma because if they do not shut down, their shops will be sealed and if they do, they lose their means of livelihood.
240. **On the wrong side of** (*one's age being more than*, अधिक उम्र का होना)- He is on the wrong side of fifty now.
241. **Open secret** (*known to all*, सभीविद्यता)- He is bankrupt and this is an open secret now.
242. **Order of the day** (*some common things of the time*, फौट प्रचलित घटावा)- Following new fashion is the order of the day.
243. **Out of the woods** (*out of difficulties*, मुसीबत से मुरझारा)- At last India came out of the woods and got independence.
244. **Pay one back in one's own coin** (*tit for tat*, जैसे को भैसा)- The person doing wrong should be paid back in his own coin.
245. **Pell mell** (*very fast and not organised*, लहूत जल्द और अस्त-घासत तरीके से)- Every thing was done pell mell as we got the order at the eleventh hour.
246. **Petticoat-Government** (*undue influence of women*, स्त्रियों का अनुजित दबाव)- Petticoat-government may adversely influence your whole project.
247. **Pick holes in** (*to find fault with*, दूसरों में दोष निकालना)- My boss has the habit of picking holes in our performance.
248. **Pin prick** (*troubles that are for short time*, जो समस्याएं कुछ सिर्फ कुछ समय के लिए हो)- We should ignore such pin pricks and get on with the job.
249. **Play a double game** (*to act dubiously*, धोखाधड़ी करना)- My friend was playing a double game.
250. **Play fast and loose** (*be unreliable*, अविश्वसनीय होना)- How can you trust a man who plays fast and loose changing his statement every minute?
251. **Play one false** (*to deceive*, किसी को धोखा देना)- He played her false and married again.
252. **Play one's cards well** (*to do the correct things to achieve a desired result*, समझदारी से काम करना)- If you play your cards well, you will get selected..
253. **Play the fool** (*to act foolishly*, बेवकूफी करना)- Why do you play the fool when it comes to spending money?
254. **Pocket an insult** (*to bear insult*, अपमान सहन कर लेना)- Indians had to pocket much insult during their fight for Independence.
255. **Poison one's ears against** (*to set a person against another*, किसी के विरुद्ध कान भरना)- She has poisoned the ears of my mother-in-law.
256. **Past master** (*an expert*, किसी क्षेत्र का विशेषज्ञ)- He is a past master in cheating others.
257. **Pour oil on troubled waters** (*to pacify the anger of others*, क्रोध को शान्त करने का प्रयत्न)- He solved the matter by pouring oil on troubled waters with his good behaviour.

- 258. Pull the string** (*to exercise secret influence*, छिपे रूप से प्रभाव डालना)- When I saw extreme level of red-tapism in the organization, I had to pull my strings to get my work done.

259. Pull to pieces (*to criticise severely*, कटु आलोचना करना)- The leader of opposition has pulled the ruling party to pieces.

260. Put an end to (*to finish*, समाप्त कर देना)- She has put an end to her unfeasible ideas.

261. Put pen to paper (*to start writing*, लिखना आरम्भ कर देना)- In my board examination I put my pen to paper without wasting a second.

262. Put the saddle on the right horse (*to blame the really guilty person*, सही अपराधी पर आरोप लगाना) The court put the saddle on the right horse and passed the right order.

263. Put to the sword (*to kill*, मार देना)- Nadir Shah put even children to the sword.

264. Put up with (*to tolerate*, सहन करना)- Maharana Pratap could not put up with insult.

265. Rank and file (*lower middle class people*, साधारण श्रेणी के लोग)- The extra-ordinary speeches of the great orators cannot be appreciated by the rank and file.

266. Red rag to a bull (*something that will surely produce a violent reaction*, निश्चित ही उत्तेजित करने वाली बात)- The racial comments against the Indians proved to be a red rag to a bull and the riot took place.

267. Rise to the occasion (*to show that you can deal with a difficult situation*, ये दिखा देना कि आप मुश्किल हालात का सामना कर सकते हैं)- Mahatma Gandhi rose to the occasion and dared the British.

268. Roll up one's sleeves (*to be prepared for hard work*, कड़ी मेहनत के लिये तैयार रहना)- We will have to roll up our sleeves as the time of examination has come.

269. Rub shoulders with (*to meet and spend time with*, किसी के निकट सम्पर्क में आना)- He claims to have rubbed shoulders with Salman Khan during his journey to Sydney.

270. Run down (*reduced in health/to criticize*, स्वास्थ्य में गिरावट/ निन्दा करना)- I was worried because she looked run down .
Do not run down your friends in public.

271. Run short/ Hard up (*not proving sufficient, shortage of money/ something*, किसी चीज़/ ऐसे की कमी)- I am running short of money these days.
If you are hard up, you can come to me.

272. Scratch one's head (*to be perplexed*, फरेशान हो जाना)- I scratched my head when I saw the puzzles in the PO exam.

273. Screw up one's courage (*to gather courage*, साहस बढ़ाना)- Working women have to screw up their courage to handle eve teasing incidents at their working places.

274. Seal of love (*kiss*, चुम्बन)- They validated their marriage with a seal of love.

275. See the light (*to be born*, जन्म लेना)- Many female babies are aborted before they see the light.

276. Set a price on one's head (*to offer reward for killing or helping in the arrest of a criminal*, किसी अपराधी को मारने या पकड़वाने में मदद करने पर इनाम की घोषणा)- The government of America had set price on Osama's head.

277. Show a clean pair of heels (*to run away*, भाग जाना)- The chain snatcher showed a clean pair of heels and the people were unable to catch him.

IDIOMS & PHRASES - 2

278. **Sink fast** (to deteriorate in quality or condition, बह से बहता होना)- The patient was sinking fast.
279. **Slip of the pen** (a small unintentional mistake in writing, लिखने में अचानक भूल की जाने माली अलवा)- The slip of the pen created a lot of confusion.
280. **Snake in the grass** (some hidden enemy, अस्त्रांशु)- Many leaders are snake in the grass creating disharmony in the society.
281. **Sow wild oats** (indulgence in youthful follies, युवावस्था को बेवज़ूफ़िया करना)- Mothers always keeps an eye on their daughters to see that they do not sow wild oats.
282. **Square meal** (full meal, घंटे पर खेलना)- A poor person does not get even one square meal a day.
283. **Stand in good stead** (to be of great service, बहुत सहायक होना)- Your experience will always stand in good stead when you join a full time job.
284. **Storm in a tea cup** (much hue and cry over a little matter, छोटी सी बात पर बहुत शोर-मुल करना)- Do not worry about these silly rows. They are just storm in a tea cup.
285. **Strain every nerve** (to make every possible effort, हर प्रकार का प्रयत्न करना)- I strained every nerve to get out of the problem.
286. **Sword of Damocles** (an imminent danger, सिर पर लटकी रखना)- Terrorism is a sword of Damocles hanging over the whole world.
287. **Take a leaf out of another man's book** (to imitate another person, उक्सा करना)- He has no originality of thought; he only takes a leaf out of another man's book to make quick money.
288. **Take an exception to** (to be offended by something, किसी बात का दुरा गाना)- She took an exception to his joke.
289. **Take into one's head** (to suddenly decide to do some thing, often silly or surprising, कुछ दंवकूफ़ों परी हरकत करने का अचानक निर्णय लेना)- It took into their heads to get married next Sunday.
290. **Take pains** (to work hard, कठिन परिश्रम करना)- She took pains to bring up her children after her husband's death.
291. **Take the bull by the horns** (to face danger with courage, खतरे का हिंगाता से रागना करना)- Bhagat Singh took the bull by the horns and bravely challenged the British empire.
292. **Take to one's heels** (to run away, भाग जाना)- When the police came, the robber took to his heels.
293. **Tall talk** (boasting, शर्खी मारना)- One of my friends Rajesh is famous for his tall talks.
294. **The Fourth Estate** (the press, प्रेस)- Today the fourth estate can influence the court proceedings of any case.
295. **The knock down price** (very low price, बहुत कम कीमत)- I bought every thing at the mega sale at knock down prices.
296. **Sheet anchor** (a person or thing to be relied upon in an emergency, आपातकाल में काम आने वाला व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु)- His uncle proved to be his sheet anchor after his father's death.
297. **Thick-skinned person** (not easily offended, insensitive, लज्जाहीन या संवेदनशील व्यक्ति)- He is such a thick-skinned person that he laughed when people cursed and abused him.

IDIOMS & PHRASES - 2

298. **Think lightly** (*not to be serious about a thing*, प्रजाक के रूप में लेना)- Don't think of your married life lightly.
299. **Throw light on** (*to make something easier to understand*, किसी विषय पर प्रकाश डालना)- I wanted to throw light on the pitiful life of the bar dancers.
300. **Throw mud at** (*try to make a low opinion of someone by saying unpleasant things about him*, बदनाम करना)- Companies should think carefully before slinging mud at someone who may respond with a libel action costing them crores of rupees.
301. **Tool in the hands of** (*under the authority of another*, दूसरे के हाथ में कठपुतली की भाँति)- The whole legal system has become a tool in the hands of the politicians.
302. **Turn one's coat** (*to change one's party*, दल बदल लेना)- Some people are so ambitious that they often turn their coat.
303. **Turn the tables** (*to change the situation completely*, स्थिति को बिलकुल बदल देना)- The ruling party had an easy victory in the last Lok Sabha election but inflation and corruption have totally turned the table.
304. **Under a cloud** (*under suspicious conditions*, संदेहपूर्ण स्थिति में)- Ever since the rumours of corruption started, the former chief minister has been under a cloud .
305. **Under the rose** (*secretly, गुप्त रूप से*)- He is selling confidential documents under the rose.
306. **Under the thumb of** (*completely under one's power or influence*, किसी के वर्चस्व में ढबा होना)- He is under the thumb of his mother and does not listen to the problems of his wife.
307. **Up to the mark** (*up to standard, उचित स्तर तक*)- I have to watch my staff all the time to keep them up to the mark.
308. **Vexed question** (*much debated and discussed, जिस प्रश्न पर काफी बहस हो चुकी हो*)- 'Mercy killing should be granted or not' has become a vexed question.
309. **Wash dirty linen in public** (*to expose private affairs in public, व्यक्तिगत बातों को बाहर उछालना*)- There is nothing as bad as washing one's dirty linen in public.
310. **Wash one's hands of** (*to be free from, किसी बात से मुक्त हो जाना*)- Police have washed their hands of the kidnapping case.
311. **Wear a long face** (*to look gloomy, उदास दिखाई देना*)- Inspite of losing his job, he did not wear a long face.
312. **Wild goose chase** (*useless efforts, व्यथ का प्रयत्न*)- Pakistan's efforts to grab Kashmir have proved to be a wild goose chase.
313. **Win laurels** (*to win honours, यश प्राप्त करना*)- Sachin won laurels for India.
314. **Without rhyme or reason** (*without any justification, अकारण*)- Don't shout at anyone without rhyme or reason.

IDIOMS AND PHRASES

(PRACTICE SET)

Directions : In questions 1 to 300, four alternatives are given for the idiom/ phrase underlined in the sentence. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase and mark it in the Answer Sheet.

1. To strain every nerve
 - (A) to make utmost efforts
 - (B) to feel weak and tired
 - (C) to be a diligent worker
 - (D) to be methodical in work
2. To flog a dead horse
 - (A) to whip a dead horse
 - (B) attempt to do the impossible
 - (C) waste one's efforts
 - (D) to take advantage of a weakness
3. To show a clean pair of heels
 - (A) to hide
 - (B) to escape
 - (C) to pursue
 - (D) to follow
4. To die in harness
 - (A) premeditated murder
 - (B) dying young in an accident
 - (C) to die while in service
 - (D) to be taken by surprise
5. To feather one's nest
 - (A) to make a residential house
 - (B) something that lasts for a short time
 - (C) to profit in a dishonest way
 - (D) none of the above
6. To doctor the accounts
 - (A) to make changes in account books
 - (B) to clear the doctors' bill
 - (C) to verify the accounts in detail
 - (D) to manipulate the accounts
7. She could never measure up to her parent's expectations.
 - (A) Reach the level
 - (B) Work as hard
 - (C) Assess the amount
 - (D) Increase her height
8. The little girl with her flawless performance stole the show.
 - (A) Stole something from the show
 - (B) Crept into the show
 - (C) Won everybody's praise
 - (D) Disappeared from the show
9. The thief was on good terms with the police.
 - (A) Kept terms and conditions
 - (B) Was friendly
 - (C) Followed the rules
 - (D) Agreed with them
10. John's offer of help was turned down by the police.
 - (A) Sent back
 - (B) Twisted around
 - (C) Refused
 - (D) Handed over
11. To be all at sea
 - (A) a family voyage
 - (B) lost and confused
 - (C) in the middle of the ocean
 - (D) a string of islands

12. **To take to one's heels**
(A) to walk slowly
(B) to run away
(C) to march forward
(D) to hop and jump
13. **To bite the dust**
(A) eat voraciously
(B) have nothing to eat
(C) eat roots
(D) to fail
14. **A bolt from the blue**
(A) a delayed event
(B) an inexplicable event
(C) an unexpected event
(D) an unpleasant event
15. **Cold comfort**
(A) absurdity
(B) deception
(C) slight satisfaction
(D) foolish proposal
16. **The reputed company is in the red due to the recession.**
(A) making money
(B) losing money
(C) in danger
(D) spending money
17. **When the Principal was entering the class, all my friends quietly disappeared, leaving me alone to face the music.**
(A) to listen to him
(B) to enter into the class
(C) to bear the criticism
(D) to listen to a favourable comment
18. **The Kenyan team proved to be the dark horse in the ICC World Cup Cricket.**
(A) a strong intruder
(B) a skilled team
(C) the most powerful
(D) an unexpected winner
19. **Having no arguments to defend his point, the speaker began to beat about the bush.**
(A) wander across the words
(B) speak in a haphazard manner
(C) speak in a round-about manner
(D) make use of irrelevant reference
20. **They were offered six months' rent in lieu of notice to vacate the building.**
(A) in spite of
(B) in place of
(C) despite of
(D) in addition to
21. **We know that he is the one responsible for the discord but as he is well-connected all we can do is send him to Coventry.**
(A) transfer him
(B) commend him
(C) boycott him
(D) dismiss him
22. **The noble man gave up the ghost.**
(A) left the ghost
(B) lived like a ghost
(C) invited ghost
(D) died
23. **A Prime Minister cannot ride roughshod over his ministerial colleagues for long.**
(A) deal unkindly with
(B) take for granted
(C) be high-handed with
(D) exploit wilfully
24. **He was down in the mouth as he was defeated in the elections.**
(A) unable to speak
(B) very depressed
(C) very angry
(D) very confused
25. **They say, join the Army to drink life to the lees.**
(A) to have the best of fun and fortune
(B) to enjoy a life of drinking and dancing
(C) to have a life full of adventures
(D) to have the best of life
26. **The car in the backyard is proving to be a white elephant.**
(A) very huge item
(B) costly and useless possession
(C) very expensive investment
(D) useful material

IDIOMS & PROVERBS

27. He takes leave once in a blue moon.
 (A) regularly
 (B) often
 (C) rarely
 (D) once a fortnight
28. The meeting has been put off indefinitely.
 (A) cancelled
 (B) postponed
 (C) advanced
 (D) announced
29. The rules of the deal are set forth in the brochure.
 (A) stated
 (B) accepted
 (C) contradicted
 (D) printed
30. She bought her new house for a song.
 (A) very cheaply
 (B) on loan
 (C) at a loss
 (D) very easily
31. Raju had given up doing exercise after surgery.
 (A) learned (B) started
 (C) continued (D) stopped
32. The chairman tried to get his point across, but the members just wouldn't listen.
 (A) give them a lesson
 (B) insist on
 (C) make them understand
 (D) motivate them
33. Ashok had all fair-weather friends.
 (A) friends who face difficulties calmly.
 (B) favourable friends
 (C) friends who desert you in difficulties
 (D) reliable friends
34. Since the company has lost a good deal of time and money, you will have to make good the loss.
 (A) make a good effort
 (B) try to minimize the loss
 (C) compensate for the loss
 (D) ensure that there are no further losses
35. a damp squib
 (A) rainy weather
 (B) a disappointing result
 (C) a skirt in a laundry
 (D) none of the above
36. in cold blood
 (A) angrily
 (B) deliberately
 (C) excitedly
 (D) slowly
37. to take someone for a ride
 (A) to give a ride to someone
 (B) to deceive someone
 (C) to be indifferent
 (D) to disclose a secret
38. to move heaven and earth
 (A) to cause an earthquake
 (B) to try everything possible
 (C) to pray to all Gods
 (D) to travel in a rocket
39. to smell a rat
 (A) to smell foul
 (B) to see a rat
 (C) to chase a rat
 (D) to be suspicious
40. The possession of Jerusalem is a bone of contention between Israel and Palestine.
 (A) a subject of peace
 (B) a subject of trade
 (C) a subject of dispute
 (D) a subject of exports
41. My friend turned a deaf ear to my tale of loss and refused to help me.
 (A) paid no heed
 (B) went far away
 (C) listened carefully
 (D) turned his ear away
42. Helena was over head and ears in love with Demetrius.
 (A) carefully (B) completely
 (C) brilliantly (D) cautiously
43. Gopi works by fits and starts.
 (A) consistently
 (B) irregularly
 (C) in high spirits
 (D) enthusiastically

- 44. Naresh Goyal had to stand on his feet very early in his life.**
 (A) to be physically strong
 (B) to be independent
 (C) to stand erect
 (D) to be successful
- 45. It is high time he came out of his shell.**
 (A) appeared suddenly
 (B) became more sociable
 (C) became a loser
 (D) removed his clothes
- 46. Every political party is at present playing to the gallery.**
 (A) adopting cheap tactics
 (B) befooling the common man
 (C) fighting for votes
 (D) appeasing the masses
- 47. His blood ran cold when he heard his uncle was murdered.**
 (A) He was frightened
 (B) He was horrified
 (C) He was disgusted
 (D) He was depressed
- 48. This is so simple that even a man in the street can understand it.**
 (A) an ordinary person
 (B) an illiterate person
 (C) an unknown person
 (D) a stranger
- 49. When he went to claim insurance for his car, the agent said he hadn't a leg to stand on.**
 (A) had been injured in an accident
 (B) was lame
 (C) did not have much hope of getting it
 (D) would have to wait for some time
- 50. to cast aspersions**
 (A) to act as the pillar of support
 (B) to raise aspirations
 (C) to make unpleasant remarks
 (D) to dissolve all the differences
- 51. on the cards**
 (A) impossible
 (B) shocking
 (C) evident
 (D) anticipated
- 52. To turn over a new leaf**
 (A) to change for the better
 (B) to start writing a new book
 (C) to work on a novel idea
 (D) to clear the garden
- 53. To keep up one's appearances**
 (A) to make public appearances now and then.
 (B) to maintain one's looks and appearance.
 (C) to keep up an outward show of prosperity.
 (D) to make it appear that one is not concerned.
- 54. Off and on**
 (A) repeatedly
 (B) always
 (C) occasionally
 (D) never
- 55. To take with a grain of salt**
 (A) to make more palatable
 (B) to take a small quantity of
 (C) to make something meaningful
 (D) to accept with misgiving
- 56. To talk through one's hat**
 (A) to talk carefully
 (B) to talk softly
 (C) to talk nonsense
 (D) to talk secretly
- 57. Ins and outs**
 (A) entrances and exits
 (B) details and complexities
 (C) passages and pathways
 (D) rules and regulations
- 58. The thief passed himself off as a ticket examiner.**
 (A) described himself
 (B) deceived everyone
 (C) disguised himself
 (D) was regarded
- 59. A brave soldier will never show the white feather in the face of his enemy.**
 (A) show signs of cowardice
 (B) act arrogantly
 (C) show intimacy
 (D) act impudently

IDIOMS & PHRASES (PRACTICE SET)

60. The poor man moved from pillar to post to get money.
- (A) went to pillars
 (B) went to post
 (C) went to money lender
 (D) tried his best
61. You have to be tactful in handling the sensitive matters rather than putting the cart before the horse.
- (A) treating these indifferently
 (B) behaving thoughtlessly
 (C) dealing with these in haste
 (D) tackling things in the wrong way
62. The boys cried with one voice that the examination should be postponed.
- (A) unanimously
 (B) vehemently
 (C) loudly
 (D) strongly
63. The scheme appears worthless at the first blush.
- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| (A) first attempt | (B) first sight |
| (C) first step | (D) first phase |
64. His pronunciation was so bad and his voice so low that the speech he made was all Greek to me.
- (A) strange
 (B) incomprehensible
 (C) inaudible
 (D) uninteresting
65. He looked blank when he was informed about his dismissal.
- (A) was without any emotion
 (B) was puzzled and surprised
 (C) was uninterested
 (D) was unhappy
66. That fellow trumped up a story
- (A) translated
 (B) sang with the music of a trumpet
 (C) concocted
 (D) copied
67. Though he is not a scholar, he wins arguments because he has the gift of the gab.
- (A) gifts from many people
 (B) a lot of money
 (C) talent for speaking
 (D) a good memory
68. The A.T.S. set the bait to arrest the terrorists.
- (A) laid the trap
 (B) announced the reward
 (C) set the record
 (D) put the bet
69. I have decided to give it a shot.
- (A) click a picture
 (B) try something
 (C) pose for a picture
 (D) injure someone
70. He turned a blind eye to his son's pranks.
- (A) pretended not to notice
 (B) paid special attention to
 (C) covered up for
 (D) punished severely
71. All his schemes to murder the king ended in smoke.
- (A) fructified gradually
 (B) came to nothing
 (C) were discarded
 (D) were partially carried out
72. This fashion of long flowing skirts will run its course.
- (A) continue for a long time
 (B) become very popular
 (C) develop and then come to its usual end
 (D) end very soon
73. The police caught the thief red-handed.
- (A) in a red uniform
 (B) with blood in hands
 (C) at the time of committing the crime
 (D) after reading the rules

91. To hit the jackpot

- (A) to gamble
 (B) to get an unexpected victory
 (C) to be wealthy
 (D) to make money quickly

92. To burn the candle at both ends

- (A) to spend cautiously
 (B) to be stingy
 (C) to be extravagant
 (D) to survive difficulty

93. Status quo

- (A) unchanged position
 (B) excellent place
 (C) unbreakable statue
 (D) long queue

94. By fair means or foul

- (A) without using common sense
 (B) without difficulty
 (C) in any way, honest or dishonest
 (D) having been instigated

95. at one's beck and call

- (A) to attend a call
 (B) to be helped by someone
 (C) to be useful to someone
 (D) to be dominated by someone

96. to explore every avenue

- (A) to search all streets
 (B) to scout the wilderness
 (C) to find adventure
 (D) to try every opportunity

97. a red letter day

- (A) a dangerous day in one's life
 (B) a sorrowful day in one's life
 (C) an important or joyful occasion in one's life
 (D) both a dangerous and sorrowful day in one's life

98. to have something up one's sleeve

- (A) to hide something in the sleeve
 (B) to play a magician trick
 (C) to have a secret plan
 (D) to play hide and seek

99. on the spur of the moment

- (A) to act at once
 (B) to ride a horse in a race
 (C) to act deliberately
 (D) to act at the appointed time

100. When my friend was in Kolkata, he ran into an old friend at the theatre.

- (A) hit
 (B) met accidentally
 (C) planned to meet
 (D) invited

101. The news of the President's death spread like wild fire.

- (A) spread rapidly
 (B) caused a major confusion
 (C) was a wild rumour
 (D) set the nation on fire

102. Going abroad for a holiday was out of the question.

- (A) undesirable
 (B) impossible
 (C) unpleasant
 (D) irresistible

103. As a businessman, my father always maintained that his transactions constituted an open book.

- (A) an account book always open
 (B) a book of open confessions
 (C) an opening for new ventures
 (D) straight forward and honest dealings

104. The project advanced by leaps and bounds.

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| (A) rapidly | (B) slowly |
| (C) sharply | (D) simply |

105. She is too fond of her own voice.

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| (A) loves singing | (B) very selfish |
| (C) does not listen properly to anyone else | (D) very talkative |

- 106. Indian police is, on the whole, high handed in dealing with citizens.**
(A) kind
(B) overbearing
(C) prompt
(D) adept

107. I take exception to your statement that I am bad tempered.
(A) do not agree
(B) feel unhappy
(C) object
(D) feel angry

108. His speech fell short on the audience.
(A) had no effect
(B) moved the audience
(C) impressed the audience
(D) was quite short

109. The officer called for an explanation from the cashier for the shortage of cash.
(A) asked (B) begged
(C) served a notice (D) demanded

110. We wanted the gift to be a surprise for my mother, but my sister gave the game away.
(A) lost the game
(B) gave out the secret
(C) gave away the gift
(D) withdrew from the plan

111. The actress took cue from her brother and became successful.
(A) some help
(B) a hint
(C) some money
(D) learnt acting

112. Let us have a heart to heart talk to solve this problem.
(A) good talk
(B) emotional talk
(C) frank talk
(D) loving talk

113. To miss the bus
(A) to miss the bus that one regularly takes
(B) to miss an opportunity
(C) to have something to fall back upon
(D) to find fault with others

114. Birds of the same feather
(A) persons of same caste
(B) persons of same colour
(C) birds with same type of feather
(D) persons of same character

115. To fight tooth and nail
(A) to fight a losing battle
(B) to fight heroically
(C) to fight cowardly
(D) to make every possible effort

116. To call a spade a spade
(A) to be frank
(B) to be sly
(C) to be rude
(D) to be diplomatic

117. by putting two and two together
(A) to mix several things
(B) to make an arithmetical calculation
(C) to keep people in pairs
(D) to deduce from given facts

118. to look down one's nose
(A) to show anger
(B) to retaliate
(C) to insult in the presence of others
(D) to regard with contempt

119. to shed crocodile tears
(A) to weep profusely
(B) to pretend grief
(C) to grieve seriously
(D) to mock something

120. To call it a day
(A) to conclude proceedings
(B) to initiate proceedings
(C) to work through the day
(D) None of the above

121. To put up with
(A) to accommodate (B) to adjust
(C) to understand (D) to tolerate

122. To take to heart
(A) to be encouraged
(B) to grieve over
(C) to like
(D) to hate

123. Yeoman's service

- (A) medical help
- (B) excellent work
- (C) social work
- (D) hard work

124. to go scot-free

- (A) to walk like a native of Scotland
- (B) to get something free
- (C) to escape without punishment
- (D) to save tax

125. to see red

- (A) get broke
- (B) get angry
- (C) feel lucky
- (D) become rich

126. in the nick of time

- (A) in an unexpected time
- (B) after some time
- (C) at a time when it was too late
- (D) precisely at the right time

127. the stage has been set

- (A) the conditions are beyond control
- (B) the platform for meeting is ready
- (C) the situation is getting worse
- (D) the situation is conducive

128. on this side of the grave

- (A) outside the grave
- (B) by the side of the grave
- (C) in this world
- (D) before going to grave

129. A man who, while pretending to be your friend, sets a spy to watch your activities is indeed a snake in the grass.

- (A) secret enemy
- (B) mean fellow
- (C) dangerous man
- (D) cunning fellow

130. The audience was greatly impressed though I spoke off the cuff.

- (A) away from the mike
- (B) without preparation
- (C) off the subject
- (D) about the cuff

131. After listening to the student's statements, the teacher had to eat her words.

- (A) withdraw her words
- (B) stop speaking
- (C) apologize
- (D) quarrel

132. to lose ground

- (A) to become less powerful
- (B) to become less popular
- (C) to lose foundation
- (D) to be without a leader

133. to make both ends meet

- (A) to buy costly articles
- (B) live a luxurious life
- (C) to live within one's income
- (D) to please all people

134. to fall back on

- (A) to oppose something important
- (B) to suffer an injury on the back in an accident
- (C) to fail to do something important in time
- (D) to seek support out of necessity

135. to make one's blood boil

- (A) to make somebody furious
- (B) to develop fever
- (C) to get excited
- (D) to make someone nervous

136. She decided that she would get this job by hook or by crook.

- (A) by compromising or other responsibilities
- (B) by impressing the interviewers
- (C) by any means, right or wrong
- (D) by becoming a specialist in the field

137. In a debate, no one is allowed to sit on the fence.

- (A) to avoid taking sides
- (B) to insult a speaker
- (C) to relax while others speak
- (D) to agree with everyone

- 138. The matter has been sorted out.**
 (A) revised (B) supported
 (C) resolved (D) changed

139. The soldiers carried out the orders of the General very effectively.
 (A) exited (B) executed
 (C) supported (D) applied

140. They set off by car for Mumbai late in the evening.
 (A) started (B) travelled
 (C) entered (D) resonated

141. Once his crime was discovered, he had no option but to come clean.
 (A) to deny the crime
 (B) to confess to the crime
 (C) to accuse someone else of the crime
 (D) to apologize for the crime

142. The employees were kept in the dark about the latest developments.
 (A) were informed after office hours
 (B) were informed when it was too late
 (C) were given secret information
 (D) were not informed at all

143. When things go wrong, everyone starts passing the buck.
 (A) analyses the problem
 (B) prepares to resign
 (C) pays a bribe
 (D) blames someone else

144. To keep the wolf away from the door.
 (A) to avoid a bad person
 (B) to clean the house
 (C) to avoid extreme poverty
 (D) to visit the zoo

145. To break the ice
 (A) to clear the snow
 (B) to start quarreling
 (C) to commence an interaction
 (D) to revive old enmity

146. Spick and span
 (A) neat and clean
 (B) hard-working
 (C) kitchen implements
 (D) calm and quiet

147. The pros and cons
 (A) good and evil
 (B) first and last
 (C) fair and foul
 (D) for and against

148. Build castles in the air
 (A) waste time (B) daydream
 (C) build houses (D) work hard

149. Sought after
 (A) highly paid
 (B) pursued by
 (C) in great demand
 (D) with great talent

150. All at sea
 (A) very proud (B) overjoyed
 (C) puzzled (D) excited

151. To hit below the belt
 (A) to punish
 (B) to tie with a belt
 (C) to hit with a belt
 (D) to attack unfairly

152. Pot-luck dinner
 (A) dinner where everybody brings something to eat
 (B) dinner where everybody brings his food
 (C) dinner where only soup is served
 (D) dinner where people eat and play games at the same time

153. His friends beat the boy to pay off old scores.
 (A) to refund old dues.
 (B) to take revenge.
 (C) to force him to be a scorer in a match.
 (D) because he had not scored well earlier.

154. Chintan is so innocent that he wears his heart on his sleeve.
 (A) Wears dress that does not match.
 (B) Expresses his feelings openly.
 (C) Wears colourful dresses.
 (D) Expresses his feelings with the shape of a heart printed on its sleeve.

IDIOMS & PHRASES (PRACTICE SET)

155. Tagore was a man of letters.
 (A) of wide contacts.
 (B) an excellent letter dictator.
 (C) a great writer of letters.
 (D) proficient in literary art.
156. The poor subordinates are made scapegoats by their superiors.
 (A) punished for others' misdeeds.
 (B) developed poor relations.
 (C) treated humbly and respectfully.
 (D) scolded with arrogant reactions.
157. She was on the horns of a dilemma as she had either to leave her job or divorce her husband.
 (A) in nervous condition
 (B) in terrible mood
 (C) in difficult situation
 (D) in suspense
158. Brown study
 (A) to study sincerely
 (B) to study uselessly
 (C) deep in thought
 (D) practical advantage
159. The young boy was kicking his heels inspite of his mother's stern warnings.
 (A) playing happily
 (B) kicking someone
 (C) forced to wait
 (D) passing a gesture of disrespect
160. She denied point-blank her involvement in the crime.
 (A) directly
 (B) desperately
 (C) stubbornly
 (D) rudely
161. It is hard to strike a bargain with a woman.
 (A) to finalize a deal
 (B) to negotiate a deal
 (C) to negotiate
 (D) to deal
162. He took his father's advice to heart.
 (A) casually
 (B) patiently
 (C) seriously
 (D) quietly
163. Can you give me a hand with this luggage?
 (A) keep a watch on
 (B) handle
 (C) provide me with
 (D) help me with
164. Fling away
 (A) to have an affair
 (B) to flare up
 (C) to throw violently
 (D) to swing
165. Stick by
 (A) to adhere closely
 (B) stand by someone
 (C) to paste
 (D) to pass by
166. Wink at
 (A) to tease somebody
 (B) to like someone
 (C) to pretend not to see
 (D) to stare at
167. To be on the wane
 (A) to complain
 (B) to be sick
 (C) to be on boat
 (D) to be diminishing
168. To give a person the cold shoulder
 (A) to offer someone ice-cream
 (B) to be humble
 (C) to threaten
 (D) to treat coldly
169. To get one's back up
 (A) to become irritated or angry
 (B) to sit straight
 (C) to act proud
 (D) to give support
170. To strike oil
 (A) to have found an oil well
 (B) to have lucky success
 (C) to have a close escape
 (D) to be unsuccessful

171. To talk shop

- (A) to talk a lot
- (B) to use phrases peculiar to one's employment
- (C) to like to shop
- (D) to lie

172. To draw a line

- (A) to fix a limit
- (B) to caution someone
- (C) to be stern
- (D) to insult someone

173. A swan song

- (A) melodious song
- (B) disharmonious display
- (C) utterance/statement made just before death or retirement
- (D) concocted tale

174. Knit one's brows

- (A) to disappoint somebody
- (B) to frown
- (C) to have a headache
- (D) to express discontentment

175. To plough the sands

- (A) to be extremely accomplished
- (B) to be resourceful
- (C) to be dejected
- (D) to busy oneself in an unprofitable proposition

176. To rip up old sores

- (A) to destroy something
- (B) to act cruelly
- (C) to reopen a quarrel
- (D) to inflict pain on someone

177. To rate soundly

- (A) to censure strongly
- (B) to acquire heavy profits
- (C) to be at peace
- (D) to assure somebody

178. To be no spring chicken

- (A) to be brave
- (B) to be honest
- (C) to be no longer young
- (D) to be childish

179. To take to one's bed

- (A) to be very attached to one's belongings
- (B) to lie in bed due to illness
- (C) to fight with one's husband
- (D) to agree with someone

180. To stand on ceremony

- (A) to celebrate an occasion in a grand way
- (B) to be extravagant
- (C) to get married
- (D) to insist on excessive formality

181. To be at sixes and sevens

- (A) a state of total confusion and disorder
- (B) to be a great success
- (C) to be certain
- (D) to give away generously

182. To break the ice

- (A) a strong man
- (B) to start a quarrel
- (C) to break the awkward silence
- (D) to become violent

183. Put one's foot down

- (A) to demand
- (B) to take rest
- (C) to be firm about something
- (D) to do something stupid

184. Backstairs influence

- (A) one who is easily influenced
- (B) influential person
- (C) influence exerted secretly
- (D) wife's influence on her husband

185. Long in the tooth

- (A) distant journey
- (B) rather old
- (C) ailment
- (D) young

186. A brazen-faced fellow

- (A) cruel person
- (B) ugly person
- (C) dark-complexioned person
- (D) impudent fellow

187. To see pink elephants

- (A) to dream
- (B) to anticipate luck
- (C) to be afraid of
- (D) to have hallucination due to excessive alcoholic intake.

188. Elbow room

- (A) opportunity for freedom of action
 (B) special room for the guest
 (C) to give enough space to move or work in
 (D) to add a new room to the house

189. French leave

- (A) a person who does not take leave
 (B) leave without permission
 (C) to take long leave
 (D) to take a day off and have fun

190. To commit to memory

- (A) to learn by heart
 (B) to tax one's memory
 (C) to be forgetful
 (D) to commit oneself totally to a task

191. To burn a hole in the pocket

- (A) to steal from someone's pocket
 (B) to destroy other's belongings
 (C) to be very miserly
 (D) money that is spent quickly

192. To bury the hatchet

- (A) to have found a treasure
 (B) to make peace
 (C) to purchase something without discretion
 (D) to act in a suspicious manner

193. To beggar description

- (A) something of least importance
 (B) something beyond description
 (C) to describe a beggar
 (D) an accurate description

194. To beat the air

- (A) efforts that are vain or useless
 (B) to be satisfied with one's performance
 (C) to be extremely relieved
 (D) to be very happy

195. To provide against a rainy day

- (A) to provide plentiful
 (B) to provide for a possible future, in time of difficulty or need
 (C) to store for the family
 (D) to store for the rainy season

196. To be all eyes

- (A) to be cautious
 (B) watching closely and attentively
 (C) to be amazed
 (D) to be non-plussed

197. Swollen headed

- (A) to be suffering from illness
 (B) to be conceited
 (C) to be narrow-minded
 (D) to be dumb

198. To stir up a hornet's nest

- (A) to excite the hostility of people
 (B) to do some social service
 (C) to be totally at a loss in a situation
 (D) to be bankrupt

199. My hands are full

- (A) I am having a lot of things to carry
 (B) I am having lots of money
 (C) I am very busy
 (D) I am anxious

200. No love lost between them

- (A) to have a fight
 (B) to dislike each other
 (C) to be as friendly as ever
 (D) to be upset

201. To be hand and glove with someone

- (A) to be social
 (B) to be playful
 (C) to be annoyed
 (D) to be intimate

202. To play fast and loose

- (A) to deceive someone
 (B) to be agile
 (C) say one thing and do another
 (D) to be efficient

203. To take stock of

- (A) to imagine (B) to supply
 (C) to survey (D) to attract

204. A man of straw

- (A) a man of no substance
 (B) a man without means
 (C) a man of character
 (D) a generous man

205. **Wolf in sheep's clothing**
(A) to act on the sly
(B) to be a good actor
(C) to be a hypocrite
(D) to be money-minded or materialistic
206. **To cut someone short**
(A) to oblige someone
(B) to assist someone
(C) to interrupt someone
(D) to insult someone
207. **To stick to one's colours**
(A) to refuse to yield
(B) to be patriotic
(C) to be notorious
(D) to be straightforward
208. **An old head on young shoulders**
(A) to be old before one's age
(B) to be wise beyond one's age
(C) to be youthful in spite of one's old age
(D) to maintain good health
209. **To snap one's fingers at**
(A) to honour someone
(B) to greet someone
(C) to beckon someone
(D) to treat with contempt
210. **Falling foul of**
(A) quarrelling with
(B) becoming friends with
(C) being dishonest with
(D) being scared of
211. **Harp on the same string**
(A) to play music
(B) to dwell tediously on the same subject
(C) to beat someone
(D) to acknowledge
212. **Keep a good table**
(A) to have an artistic taste
(B) to throw a party
(C) to be a good host
(D) to be extravagant
213. **Take up the cudgels**
(A) to take notice
(B) to accept a present
(C) to defend someone vigorously
(D) to accept a challenge
214. **Splitting hairs**
(A) to be worried
(B) to be venturesome
(C) to trouble someone
(D) to dispute over petty points
215. **A great hand at**
(A) to be a good artist
(B) to be an expert
(C) to be a good player
(D) to be generous
216. **To make a pile**
(A) to make a fortune
(B) to make a mess
(C) to be absent-minded
(D) to be corrupt
217. **Under someone's wing**
(A) to work under someone
(B) to be under someone's protection
(C) to be alert
(D) to be in the army
218. **To sow one's wild oats**
(A) to swear
(B) to be at ease
(C) to engage in youthful excesses
(D) to till the land
219. **An olive branch**
(A) an offer of peace
(B) an idea
(C) a lady
(D) a wicked person
220. **Not worth a rap**
(A) worth nothing
(B) very expensive
(C) worth a lot
(D) modestly priced
221. **In merry pin**
(A) perplexed
(B) merry making
(C) embarrassed
(D) in a cheerful mood
222. **To leap the pale**
(A) to throw a bucket
(B) to get into debt, to spend more than one's income
(C) to have much of fear
(D) to become pale

IDIOMS & PHRASES (PRACTICE SET)

223. To cut the Gordian knot

- (A) to perform the opening ceremony
- (B) to be present at the opening ceremony
- (C) to solve a difficult problem
- (D) to get a sharp cut

224. To sow the wind and reap the whirlwind

- (A) to enjoy the fruits of hard work
- (B) to be deprived of one's reward
- (C) to act wisely
- (D) to suffer for one's foolish conduct

225. To play possum

- (A) to play hide and seek
- (B) to feign ignorance or pretend to be sleeping or dead
- (C) to cheat somebody
- (D) to play seriously

226. A grass widow

- (A) a young widow
- (B) widow who has illicit relations with men
- (C) a woman whose husband is temporarily away from her
- (D) a working old woman

227. Mad as a March hare

- (A) sane
- (B) intoxicated
- (C) as mad as a hare in spring
- (D) slightly touched in the brain

228. Halcyon days

- (A) long days
- (B) short days
- (C) happy and peaceful days
- (D) disturbed days

229. Mother wit

- (A) to have an intelligent mother
- (B) university
- (C) silly
- (D) common sense

230. A blind date

- (A) a cloudy day
- (B) unknown future
- (C) meeting with someone you do not know
- (D) death-day

231. Much ado about nothing

- (A) to take something seriously
- (B) to play false
- (C) to make a fuss
- (D) to add

232. Judas' kiss

- (A) wooing
- (B) a narrow escape
- (C) hypocritical affection
- (D) a religious person

233. To have no truck with

- (A) have no means of conveyance
- (B) scientifically backward
- (C) to have no trade with
- (D) to have no dealings with

234. To clean the Augean stables

- (A) to purge/ clean the administration of its abuses
- (B) to buy horses
- (C) to sell horses
- (D) to improve working conditions

235. A fly in the ointment

- (A) to clean a thing
- (B) to sterilise
- (C) Small annoyance that spoils a pleasant experience.
- (D) an unsuccessful attempt

236. Of the deepest dye

- (A) of the worst/ extreme type
- (B) of the best type
- (C) of the most colourless type
- (D) of the colourless type

237. To throw up the sponge

- (A) to accept the challenge
- (B) to forget the past offences
- (C) to admit defeat
- (D) to send message

238. To rule the roost

- (A) to measure the height of something
- (B) to measure the depth
- (C) to strike with a stick
- (D) to dominate

- 239. Bats in the belfry**
 (A) to be mad
 (B) something needed cleanliness
 (C) an impending danger
 (D) to be deceived
- 240. To have a jaundice eye**
 (A) to have jaundice
 (B) to have fever
 (C) to be prejudiced
 (D) to lose colour
- 241. Rank and file**
 (A) Common people
 (B) Officers
 (C) People of high rank
 (D) Army personnel
- 242. To egg on**
 (A) to egg on slowly
 (B) to destroy slowly
 (C) to give a walk over
 (D) to instigate/ cause to proceed further
- 243. To haul over the coals**
 (A) to walk over the fire
 (B) to burn
 (C) to scold for something done wrong
 (D) to throw into fire
- 244. To draw a bead on**
 (A) to say prayers
 (B) to count the beads
 (C) to do one's best
 (D) to take careful aim at
- 245. Fabian policy**
 (A) dictatorial policy
 (B) democratic policy
 (C) systematic policy
 (D) policy of cautious persistence
- 246. To play to the gallery**
 (A) to try to get the appreciation from the least intelligent people
 (B) to try to win appreciation of intelligent people
 (C) to play in the gallery
 (D) to disturb people sitting in the gallery
- 247. Pyrrhic victory**
 (A) Permanent victory
 (B) Defeat
 (C) Easy victory
 (D) Victory at high cost
- 248. Go the whole hog**
 (A) to do something thoroughly
 (B) sleep
 (C) to neglect duty
 (D) to mishandle the case
- 249. To bite one's lips**
 (A) to feel sorry
 (B) to repress one's anger or other emotions
 (C) laugh at others
 (D) to have doubt
- 250. To hold someone in leash**
 (A) to restrain
 (B) to be firm
 (C) to be unsure
 (D) to touch the exact point
- 251. To cool one's heels**
 (A) to give a cold treatment to somebody
 (B) to be kept waiting for sometime
 (C) a closed chapter
 (D) a hot issue
- 252. Bag of bones**
 (A) a bag full of bones
 (B) a dead person
 (C) a person about to die
 (D) an extremely weak person
- 253. All moonshine**
 (A) show
 (B) lighted only by moon
 (C) false
 (D) far from reality
- 254. To shake the dust off one's feet**
 (A) to wash feet
 (B) to walk fast
 (C) to leave a place with a sense of resentment
 (D) to rest after a long journey

IDIOMS & PHRASES (PRACTICE SET)

- 255. Off hand**
 (A) Without preparation
 (B) Out of hand
 (C) Rehearsed
 (D) In hand
- 256. A bird of passage**
 (A) a flying bird
 (B) an unreliable person
 (C) one who stays for a short time
 (D) bad time
- 257. Count on**
 (A) Depend on
 (B) as a result of
 (C) ceremonially
 (D) to wait for the benefactor
- 258. With a string**
 (A) not to give any aid
 (B) to give unconditional aid
 (C) gift or aid with condition
 (D) to accept aid
- 259. To set stores by**
 (A) to value highly
 (B) to hoard a large quantity of something
 (C) to set up store
 (D) fix a price
- 260. To draw the long bow**
 (A) to shoot
 (B) to exaggerate
 (C) to criticize
 (D) to admire
- 261. To know the ropes**
 (A) to recognize the lost things
 (B) to do rigging
 (C) to know the procedure of doing a job
 (D) to flog
- 262. To give the devil his due**
 (A) to be just to a person even though he does not deserve such treatment
 (B) to surrender oneself willingly when one's mistake is detected
 (C) to punish an innocent person
 (D) to punish a guilty person
- 263. In the swim**
 (A) knowing latest current things
 (B) to cross a river by a boat
 (C) to cross a river by swimming
 (D) to be in the river
- 264. To knuckle under**
 (A) to be in a crisis
 (B) to submit
 (C) to take rest
 (D) to go to bed
- 265. To have a dig at**
 (A) to criticise someone
 (B) to sow seeds
 (C) to weed out
 (D) to praise someone
- 266. In vogue**
 (A) in fashion
 (B) fair
 (C) smooth
 (D) total absence
- 267. Three R's**
 (A) radiogram, radiograph, radio telescope
 (B) rabble, rattle, razzle
 (C) reading, writing, arithmetic
 (D) rail, radar, raft
- 268. A wild goose chase**
 (A) foolish and useless enterprise
 (B) to hunt
 (C) a violent chase
 (D) to speak harshly
- 269. To rest on one's laurels**
 (A) to cease to strive for further glory
 (B) to be lazy
 (C) to be proud of one's victory
 (D) to die
- 270. Raw deal**
 (A) unjust treatment
 (B) unripe fruit
 (C) early stage of business
 (D) contract not yet finally decided
- 271. A forlorn hope**
 (A) a plan which has remote chances of success
 (B) hope about unforeseeable future
 (C) hope of a single person
 (D) hope of a silly person

272. Printer's devil

- (A) an apprentice in a printing office
- (B) blunder
- (C) low type of printed material
- (D) delay in printing

273. To call on the carpet

- (A) subject to criticism
- (B) to summon for a scolding
- (C) a heartfelt welcome
- (D) on the ground

274. To bring the house down

- (A) to appeal greatly to the audience
- (B) to pull down a building
- (C) to defame one's family
- (D) to pass a bill unanimously

275. To have an edge on

- (A) to cut with a knife
- (B) to threaten to wound
- (C) to be slightly better than
- (D) to be in a dangerous situation

276. In sackcloth and ashes

- (A) to cremate
- (B) in a state of great mourning
- (C) dirty clothes
- (D) cheap clothes

277. To put two and two together

- (A) to progress steadily
- (B) to compare the debit and credit
- (C) to conclude keeping in view the merits and demerits
- (D) to oppose as a last resort

278. To weather the storm

- (A) to face a crisis
- (B) to survive a crisis
- (C) to be the victim of a crisis
- (D) to create crisis

279. Lump in the throat

- (A) to be hoarse
- (B) a highly emotional state
- (C) food of low type
- (D) wind-pipe

280. To fight shy of

- (A) to keep aloof from
- (B) to fight social evils
- (C) to be bold
- (D) to fight and win

281. Hobson's choice

- (A) lion's share
- (B) the best choice
- (C) option of taking the one offered or nothing
- (D) the last chance

282. To hit it off

- (A) to quarrel
- (B) to be hostile
- (C) to agree or be congenial
- (D) to threaten

283. To whitewash

- (A) to clean a place
- (B) to work hard
- (C) to retrieve damaged reputation
- (D) to use cosmetics

284. Within an ace of

- (A) very close
- (B) within one's means
- (C) within a narrow circle
- (D) near centre

285. To keep an open mind

- (A) to remember
- (B) to forget
- (C) to come to no decision on a subject until one knows all the facts
- (D) to be clear-headed

286. Open question

- (A) a question put to all
- (B) a question without any generally agreed answer
- (C) a permanent problem
- (D) a clearly-written/expressed question

287. On one's mettle

- (A) roused to do one's best
- (B) to put on an overcoat
- (C) to safeguard against attack
- (D) to use one's own money properly

288. To keep the pot boiling

- (A) to maintain interest
- (B) to heat
- (C) to show anger
- (D) to do experiments

IDIOMS & PHRASES (PRACTICE SET)

289. **Grist to one's mill**

- (A) grain to be ground
- (B) useful for one's purpose
- (C) income from will
- (D) to work one's machine

290. **Kangaroo court**

- (A) a group of kangaroos
- (B) the young kangaroo
- (C) unofficial court
- (D) unofficial estimate

291. **Wool gathering**

- (A) to become a shepherd
- (B) to shear sheep
- (C) to engage in idle or aimless day dreaming
- (D) to live in the countryside

292. **Between Scylla and Charybdis**

- (A) between two hills
- (B) between two rivers
- (C) between two enemies
- (D) between two dangers

293. **Achilles' heel**

- (A) bare-foot
- (B) to run fast
- (C) to wait on somebody
- (D) one's vulnerable or susceptible spot

294. **To know which side the bread is buttered on**

- (A) to know where one's interest lies
- (B) to be a glutton
- (C) to be fond of rich diet
- (D) to know how to increase one's income

295. **To eke out**

- (A) to subtract
- (B) to supplement
- (C) to etch
- (D) to oust

296. **To be in the doldrums**

- (A) to be in low spirits
- (B) to be within doors
- (C) to praise loudly
- (D) to be in a crisis

297. **Wild cat strike**

- (A) a furious attack
- (B) strike not approved by the trade union
- (C) a strike in which violence is committed
- (D) to face a strong enemy

298. **Blind alley**

- (A) blindness due to old age
- (B) a dark room
- (C) unprofitable action
- (D) to continue to make efforts in spite of confusion

299. **Tied to the apron strings of**

- (A) be independent
- (B) to be dominated by
- (C) to live together
- (D) to fall in love with

300. **Our school is within a stone's throw from the railway station**

- (A) Very far-off
- (B) with a certain radius
- (C) at a short distance
- (D) within a definite circumference

ANSWER KEY

1. (A) 31. (D) 61. (D) 91. (D) 121. (B) 151. (D) 181. (A) 211. (B) 241. (A) 271. (A)
2. (B) 32. (C) 62. (A) 92. (C) 122. (A) 152. (B) 182. (C) 212. (C) 242. (D) 272. (A)
3. (B) 33. (C) 63. (B) 93. (A) 123. (B) 153. (B) 183. (C) 213. (C) 243. (C) 273. (B)
4. (C) 34. (C) 64. (B) 94. (C) 124. (C) 154. (B) 184. (C) 214. (D) 244. (D) 274. (A)
5. (C) 35. (B) 65. (A) 95. (D) 125. (B) 155. (D) 185. (B) 215. (B) 245. (D) 275. (C)
6. (D) 36. (A) 66. (C) 96. (D) 126. (D) 156. (A) 186. (D) 216. (A) 246. (A) 276. (B)
7. (A) 37. (B) 67. (C) 97. (C) 127. (D) 157. (C) 187. (D) 217. (B) 247. (D) 277. (C)
8. (C) 38. (B) 68. (A) 98. (C) 128. (C) 158. (C) 188. (C) 218. (C) 248. (A) 278. (B)
9. (B) 39. (D) 69. (B) 99. (A) 129. (A) 159. (C) 189. (B) 219. (A) 249. (B) 279. (B)
10. (C) 40. (C) 70. (A) 100. (B) 130. (B) 160. (A) 190. (A) 220. (A) 250. (A) 280. (A)
11. (B) 41. (A) 71. (B) 101. (A) 131. (A) 161. (A) 191. (D) 221. (D) 251. (B) 281. (C)
12. (B) 42. (B) 72. (C) 102. (B) 132. (B) 162. (C) 192. (B) 222. (B) 252. (D) 282. (C)
13. (D) 43. (B) 73. (C) 103. (D) 133. (C) 163. (D) 193. (B) 223. (C) 253. (D) 283. (C)
14. (D) 44. (B) 74. (C) 104. (A) 134. (D) 164. (C) 194. (A) 224. (D) 254. (C) 284. (A)
15. (C) 45. (B) 75. (B) 105. (D) 135. (A) 165. (A) 195. (B) 225. (B) 255. (A) 285. (C)
16. (C) 46. (D) 76. (C) 106. (B) 136. (C) 166. (C) 196. (B) 226. (C) 256. (C) 286. (B)
17. (C) 47. (A) 77. (C) 107. (C) 137. (A) 167. (D) 197. (B) 227. (C) 257. (A) 287. (A)
18. (D) 48. (A) 78. (A) 108. (A) 138. (C) 168. (D) 198. (A) 228. (C) 258. (C) 288. (A)
19. (C) 49. (C) 79. (A) 109. (D) 139. (B) 169. (A) 199. (C) 229. (D) 259. (A) 289. (B)
20. (B) 50. (C) 80. (A) 110. (B) 140. (A) 170. (B) 200. (B) 230. (C) 260. (B) 290. (C)
21. (C) 51. (D) 81. (B) 111. (B) 141. (B) 171. (B) 201. (D) 231. (C) 261. (C) 291. (C)
22. (D) 52. (A) 82. (B) 112. (C) 142. (D) 172. (A) 202. (C) 232. (C) 262. (A) 292. (D)
23. (C) 53. (C) 83. (C) 113. (B) 143. (D) 173. (C) 203. (C) 233. (D) 263. (A) 293. (D)
24. (B) 54. (C) 84. (C) 114. (D) 144. (C) 174. (B) 204. (A) 234. (A) 264. (B) 294. (A)
25. (C) 55. (D) 85. (C) 115. (D) 145. (C) 175. (D) 205. (C) 235. (C) 265. (A) 295. (B)
26. (B) 56. (C) 86. (B) 116. (A) 146. (A) 176. (C) 206. (C) 236. (A) 266. (A) 296. (A)
27. (C) 57. (B) 87. (D) 117. (D) 147. (D) 177. (A) 207. (A) 237. (C) 267. (C) 297. (B)
28. (B) 58. (C) 88. (B) 118. (D) 148. (B) 178. (C) 208. (B) 238. (D) 268. (A) 298. (C)
29. (A) 59. (A) 89. (D) 119. (B) 149. (C) 179. (B) 209. (D) 239. (A) 269. (A) 299. (B)
30. (A) 60. (D) 90. (A) 120. (A) 150. (C) 180. (D) 210. (A) 240. (C) 270. (A) 300. (C)

DOWNLOAD PDF



SSCPOT.COM

Study Material



FREE
